



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Exodus**

**Version 27**

# Copyrights & Licensing

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 27

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 10

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 10

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 12

**Published by:** unfoldingWord®

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 14

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament**

**Date:** 2020-02-20

**Version:** 0.12

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible**

**Date:** 2020-02-20

**Version:** 2.1.11

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

*unfoldingWord® Translation Notes*

*Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord*

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from [unfoldingword.org/utn](http://unfoldingword.org/utn)". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at [unfoldingword.org/contact/](http://unfoldingword.org/contact/).

# Table of Contents

<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Notes</b>	<b>12</b>
Exodus	12
Introduction to Exodus	13
Exodus 1	15
Exodus 2	38
Exodus 3	64
Exodus 4	87
Exodus 5	119
Exodus 6	143
Exodus 7	174
Exodus 8	200
Exodus 9	233
Exodus 10	269
Exodus 11	299
Exodus 12	310
Exodus 13	362
Exodus 14	385
Exodus 15	417
Exodus 16	445
Exodus 17	482
Exodus 18	499
Exodus 19	527
Exodus 20	553
Exodus 21	580
Exodus 22	617
Exodus 23	649
Exodus 24	683
Exodus 25	702
Exodus 26	743
Exodus 27	781
Exodus 28	803
Exodus 29	847
Exodus 30	894
Exodus 31	933
Exodus 32	952
Exodus 33	988
Exodus 34	1012
Exodus 35	1049
Exodus 36	1085
Exodus 37	1124
Exodus 38	1154
Exodus 39	1186
Exodus 40	1230



<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Academy</b>	<b>1269</b>
Abstract Nouns	1270
Active or Passive	1272
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	1275
Biblical Distance	1278
Biblical Money	1281
Biblical Volume	1283
Biblical Weight	1287
Direct and Indirect Quotations	1289
Double Negatives	1291
Doublet	1293
Ellipsis	1295
Euphemism	1297
Exclamations	1299
First, Second or Third Person	1301
Forms of You	1303
Fractions	1304
Generic Noun Phrases	1307
Go and Come	1309
Hebrew Months	1311
How to Translate Names	1314
Hyperbole	1318
Hypothetical Situations	1322
Idiom	1325
Imperatives - Other Uses	1327
Inclusive and Exclusive "We"	1330
Introduction of a New Event	1332
Merism	1335
Metaphor	1337
Metonymy	1343
Numbers	1345
Ordinal Numbers	1348
Parallelism	1350
Personification	1353
Poetry	1355
Predictive Past	1358
Reflexive Pronouns	1360
Rhetorical Question	1363
Simile	1366
Symbolic Action	1369
Synecdoche	1371
Translate Unknowns	1373
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Words</b>	<b>1376</b>
Aaron	1377
Abraham, Abram	1378
adversary, enemy	1379

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels	1380
afflict, affliction, distress	1381
alien, foreign, foreigner	1382
Almighty	1383
altar	1384
Amorite	1385
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	1386
appoint, appointed	1387
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting	1388
atonement, atone, atoned	1389
avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance	1390
barley	1391
beast	1392
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief	1393
Benjamin, Benjamite	1395
bind, bond, bound	1396
bless, blessed, blessing	1397
blood	1399
blot out, wipe out	1400
bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee	1401
bread	1402
bridegroom	1403
bronze	1404
brother	1405
burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances	1406
burnt offering, offering by fire	1407
call, call out	1408
Canaan, Canaanite	1410
captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured	1411
chariot, charioteers	1412
children, child, offspring	1413
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect	1415
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision	1416
clan	1418
clean, wash	1419
column, pillar	1421
comfort, comforts, comforter, un comforted	1422
command, commandment	1423
consecrate, consecrated, consecration	1424
consume, devour	1425
court, courtyard	1426
covenant	1427
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love	1429
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox	1430
cry, cry out, outcry	1431
curse, cursed, cursing	1432

cut off	1433
darkness	1434
declare, proclaim, announce	1435
deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, ...	1436
desert, wilderness	1437
desolate, desolation, alone, deserted	1438
destroy, destruction, annihilate	1439
devour	1440
die, dead, deadly, death,	1441
dominion	1443
donkey, mule	1444
drink offering	1445
earth, earthen, earthly	1446
Egypt, Egyptian	1447
elder, older, old	1448
evil, wicked, unpleasant	1449
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins	1451
exalt, exalted, exaltation	1452
exile, exiled	1453
face, facial	1454
faith	1455
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy	1456
family, household	1458
famine	1459
favor, favorable, favoritism	1460
fear, afraid, dread	1461
feast, feasting	1462
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot	1463
firstborn	1464
firstfruits	1465
flesh	1466
flock, herd	1467
forsake, forsaken, leave	1468
found, founder, foundation	1469
freewill offering	1470
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful	1471
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out	1473
Gad	1474
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway	1475
generation	1476
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt ...	1477
glean, gleanings	1478
glory, glorious, glorify	1479
God	1481
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness	1483
gold, golden	1484

good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best	1485
grace, gracious	1487
grain offering	1488
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place	1489
hand	1490
harvest, reap	1492
head	1493
heart	1494
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	1495
Hittite	1496
Hivite	1497
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	1498
honey, honeycomb	1500
horse, warhorse, horseback	1501
horseman	1502
house	1503
humble, humbled, humility	1504
inherit, inheritance, heir	1505
iniquity	1506
innocent	1507
Israel, Israelite, Jacob	1508
Israel, Israelites	1509
Jebus, Jebusite	1511
Joseph (OT)	1512
Joshua	1513
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing	1514
Judah	1516
Judea	1517
judge, judgment	1518
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification	1520
king, kingdom, kingship	1522
kingdom	1523
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	1525
lamb, Lamb of God	1527
law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law	1529
Levi, Levite, Levitical	1531
life, live, living, alive	1532
light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten	1534
livestock, animals	1535
locust	1536
lord, Lord, master, sir	1537
love, beloved	1539
manna	1541
messenger	1542
might, mighty, mighty works	1543
miracle, wonder, sign	1544

Moab, Moabite	1546
Moses	1547
mourn, mourner, weeping	1549
name	1550
nation	1551
new moon	1552
noble, nobleman, royal official	1553
oath, swear, swearing, swear by	1554
oil	1555
olive	1556
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs	1557
palm	1558
Passover	1559
people of God	1560
people, people group,	1561
perish	1563
Perizzite	1564
persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue	1565
Pharaoh, king of Egypt	1566
Philistia	1567
Philistines	1568
pomegranate	1569
praise, praised, praiseworthy	1570
pray, prayer	1571
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation	1572
priest, priesthood	1574
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, ...	1576
profane, profaned	1577
promise, promised	1578
Promised Land	1579
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1580
prosper, prosperity, prosperous	1582
prostrate, worship	1583
proud, pride, prideful	1584
purple	1585
rebuke	1586
redeem, redeemer, redemption	1587
repent, repentance	1588
rest, rested, restless	1589
restore, restoration	1590
return	1591
Reuben	1592
reveal, revealed, revelation	1593
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ...	1594
robe, robed	1596
Sabbath	1597

sacrifice, sacrifices, offering	1598
sandal	1600
seed, semen	1601
seek, search, look for	1602
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women	1603
set apart	1605
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach	1606
sign, proof, reminder	1608
silver	1609
sin offering	1610
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	1611
slaughter, slaughtered	1613
son	1614
spirit, spiritual	1616
statute	1618
strength, strengthen, strong	1619
sword, swordsmen	1621
tabernacle	1622
temple	1623
terror, terrorize, terrify, frightened, panic	1625
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness	1626
throne, enthroned	1628
tongue, language	1629
tremble, stagger	1630
tribe, tribal, tribesmen	1631
tribute, contribution, fined	1632
trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, ...	1633
true, truth	1634
trumpet, trumpeters	1636
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	1637
understand, understanding, thinking	1638
unleavened bread	1639
vineyard	1640
virgin, virginity	1641
voice	1642
walk, walked	1643
watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out	1644
wheat	1645
wine, wineskin, new wine	1646
wise men, advisor	1647
Yahweh	1648
<b>Contributors</b>	<b>1650</b>
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	1650
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	1656
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors	1657
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	1657





# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

## **Exodus**



## Introduction to Exodus

### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of Exodus

1. Israel in Egypt; preparing to depart from slavery (1–12)
2. First genealogy (1:1–6)
3. Israel as slaves in Egypt (1:7–22)
4. Moses' history to the time of the Exodus (2:1–4:26)
5. Israel suffers in Egypt (4:27–6:13)
6. Second genealogy (6:14–27)
7. Moses and Aaron go to Pharaoh (6:28–7:25)
8. The plagues (8:1–11:10)
9. Instructions for celebrating the Passover (12:1–30)
10. From Egypt to Mount Sinai (12:31–18:27)
11. The Passover; preparing to leave Egypt; leaving Egypt (12:31–50, 13:1–22)
12. Journey from Egypt to Mount Sinai (14:1–18:27)
13. Mount Sinai and the Law (19–40)
14. Preparing for the covenant (19:1–25)
15. The Ten Commandments (20:1–17)
16. The covenant described (20:18–23:33)
17. The people agree to the covenant; Moses returns to Mount Sinai (24:1–18)
18. Design of the tabernacle and its furnishings; what was required of those who serve in it; tabernacle functions (25:1–31:18)
19. The golden calf; Moses prays for the people (32:1–33:22)
20. The covenant described again (34:1–35)
21. Making of the ark and its furnishings (35:1–38:31) and priestly garments (39:1–43, 40:1–33)
22. The cloud (40:34–38)

#### What is the Book of Exodus about?

Exodus continues the story of the previous book, Genesis. The first half of Exodus is about how Yahweh made Abraham's descendants into a nation. This nation, which would be called "Israel," was meant to belong to Yahweh and worship him. The second half of Exodus describes how God gave the Israelites his law through Moses. The law of Moses told the Israelites how to obey and worship Yahweh properly.

The Book of Exodus tells how the Israelites were to build the tabernacle. The tabernacle was a tent where Yahweh would be among his people. The Israelites worshiped and sacrificed animals to Yahweh at the tabernacle. (See: [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [the law](#) and [tabernacle](#))

#### How should the title of this book be translated?

"Exodus" means "exit" or "departure." Translators may translate this title in a way that can communicate its subject clearly, for example, "About the Israelites Leaving Egypt" or "How the Israelites Left the Land of Egypt." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Who wrote the Book of Exodus?

The writers of both the Old and New Testaments present Moses as being very involved with writing the book of Exodus. Since ancient times, both Jews and Christians have thought that Moses wrote Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy.

**Why did Moses write so much about God delivering or rescuing the people of Israel?**

Moses wrote much about God rescuing his people from the Egyptians to show that Yahweh is very powerful. Egypt was the most powerful nation at that time. And Yahweh was still able to free the Israelites from the Egyptians. Also, by rescuing the Israelites, Yahweh showed that he had chosen them as his people and they should worship him.

**How does the Book of Exodus show the fulfillment of the promises given to Abraham?**

The Book of Exodus shows God beginning to fulfill his promise to Abraham. In Genesis, God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants and that they would become a large nation. When God rescued the Israelites from the Egyptians, he took them to Mount Sinai. There he made a covenant with them, and they became the nation that belonged to Yahweh.

**Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts****What was the Jewish Passover?**

The Jewish Passover was a religious festival. Yahweh commanded the Israelites to celebrate it every year. Passover was a time to remember how God rescued them from the Egyptians. The first Passover meal was eaten in the evening just before they left Egypt.

**What was the law of Moses to the people of Israel?**

The law of Moses instructed the people of Israel what Yahweh required them to do as his people. In the law, God told the people how they should live so that they honor him. He also instructed them about their need to offer animal sacrifices. God required these sacrifices so that he could forgive their sins and continue living among them. The law also described the duties of the priests and told how to build the tabernacle.

**What did it mean that Israel was to be a “kingdom of priests and a holy nation” (19:6 ULT)?**

Israel was a holy nation because Yahweh separated them from all other nations to belong to him. They were to honor and worship him only. This made them different than all the other nations of the world. These other nations worshiped many false gods.

**Part 3: Important Translation Issues****Why are the details of the construction of the tabernacle in Exodus 25–32 repeated in Exodus 35–40?**

In Exodus 25-32, God describes exactly how the tabernacle was to be built. The details were repeated in Exodus 35-40. This showed that the people were to be careful to do exactly as God commanded.

**Are the events in the order that they actually happened?**

Most but not all of the events in the Book of Exodus are told in the order that they actually happened. Translators may need to make it clear when the events are in an unusual order.

**What does it mean that God “lived” among his people?**

The Book of Exodus presents God as living in the tabernacle among the nation of Israel. God is everywhere, but he lived among the Israelites in a special way. God dwelled with Israelites because they belonged to him. He promised to lead them and bless them. In return, the people were to worship him and honor him.

## Exodus 1

### Exodus 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter is intended to form a smooth transition with the last chapter of the book of Genesis.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Israel's growth

Israel grew in number. This was in fulfillment of the covenant God made with Abraham. It also caused the Egyptians great concern that there would be more Israelites than Egyptians because they would be unable to defend themselves against such a large number of people. Pharaoh also tried to kill all of the male babies so they would not become soldiers who fought against him. (See: [fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#), [carried out](#) and [covenant](#))

#### End of the famine

It is obvious that some time has passed since the beginning of the famine which brought the Israelites into Egypt. Yahweh appears to be punishing the Hebrews for not returning back to the Promised Land instead choosing to stay in Egypt. No return attempt is recorded to have been made. (See: [Promised Land](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### “All of the descendants of Jacob were seventy in number”

This number included both Jacob's children and grandchildren. It may cause confusion, but it is important to remember Jacob only had 12 sons.

## Exodus 1:1

### household

This refers to all the people who live in a house together, usually a large family with servants. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> These are the names of the sons of Israel who came into Egypt with Jacob, each with his household:

### UST

<sup>1</sup> These were the sons of Jacob (they all went to the land of Egypt with Jacob, their father, and with their own households). The sons' names were:

## Exodus 1:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- Reuben
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

### Translation Words - UST

- Judah
- Reuben
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Reuben, Simeon, Levi, and Judah,

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah,

## Exodus 1:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Benjamin, Benjamite

### Translation Words - UST

- Benjamin, Benjamite

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Issachar, Zebulun, and Benjamin,

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> Issachar, Zebulun, Benjamin,

## Exodus 1:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Gad

### Translation Words - UST

- Gad

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Dan, Naphtali, Gad, and Asher.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> Dan, Naphtali, Gad, and Asher.

## Exodus 1:5

### seventy in number

“70 in number” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Joseph was already in Egypt

“Joseph lived in Egypt before his brothers”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelite](#), [Jacob](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelite](#), [Jacob](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> All the people who were descendants of Jacob were seventy in number. Joseph was already in Egypt.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> In all, there were seventy people who went with Jacob. His son Joseph was already in Egypt.



## Exodus 1:6

### all his brothers

This includes 10 older brothers and 1 younger brother.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- die, dead, deadly, death,

#### Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- die, dead, deadly, death,

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then Joseph, all his brothers, and all that generation died.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> After some time, Joseph and his brothers and everyone else in their family who lived in that generation died.

## Exodus 1:7

### were fruitful

The birth of children to the Israelites is spoken of as if they were plants that were producing fruit. Alternate translation: “had many children” or “gave birth to many children” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the land was filled with them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “They filled the land” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### with them

The word “them” refers to the Israelites.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> The Israelites were fruitful, increased greatly in numbers, and became very strong; the land was filled with them.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> But Jacob’s descendants gave birth to many children. The number of his descendants grew very large. As a result, there were so many of them that they were everywhere in Egypt.

## Exodus 1:8

### arose over Egypt

Here “Egypt” refers to the people of Egypt. Alternate translation: “began to rule over the people of Egypt” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Now then a new king arose over Egypt, one who did not know about Joseph.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> However, many years later, a new king began to rule in Egypt. He did not know about all the good things Joseph had done for the people of Egypt long ago.

## Exodus 1:9

### He said to his people

"The king said to his people"

### his people

These were the people who lived in Egypt, the Egyptians.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> He said to his people, "Look, the Israelites are more numerous and stronger than we are.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> He said to his people, "Look at what has happened! The Israelite people have become so many and so powerful that they are dangerous to us!

## Exodus 1:10

### let us

The word “us” is inclusive and refers to the king and his people, the Egyptians. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

### war breaks out

Here war is spoken of as a person that is able to act. (See: [Personification](#))

### leave the land

“leave Egypt”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

### ULT

**10** Come, let us deal with them wisely, otherwise they will continue to grow in numbers, and if war breaks out, they will join our enemies, fight against us, and leave the land.”

### UST

**10** We must find a way to control them! If we do not do that, there will be more of them. Then, if enemies attack us, the Israelites will join with our enemies and fight against us, and they will escape from our land.”

## Exodus 1:11

### taskmasters

Egyptians whose job was to force the Israelites to do hard work

### to oppress them with hard labor

“to force the Israelites to do hard work for the Egyptians”

### store cities

These were places where the leaders put food and other important things to keep them safe.

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- tribute, contribution, fined
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- tribute, contribution, fined
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### ULT

**11** So they put taskmasters over them to oppress them with hard labor. The Israelites built store cities for Pharaoh: Pithom and Rameses.

### UST

**11** So the king and his leaders put masters over the Israelites to cause them to suffer very much by making them work very hard. They made the Israelite people build two cities to store goods for the king. Those cities were named Pithom and Rameses.

## Exodus 1:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> But the more the Egyptians oppressed them, the more the Israelites increased in numbers and spread. So the Egyptians began to dread the Israelites.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> But the more they treated the Israelite people badly, the more the number of Israelites grew, and they became so many that they filled the land. So the Egyptian people began to fear the Israelite people.

## Exodus 1:13

### made...work rigorously

“made...work very hard” or “harshly made...work”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> The Egyptians made the Israelites work rigorously.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> They made the Israelite people work very hard.



## Exodus 1:14

### made their lives bitter

The difficult lives of the Israelites are spoken of as if they were bitter food that was difficult to eat. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### mortar

This was a wet glue or mud put between bricks or stones that held them together when it dried.

### All their required work was hard

“The Egyptians made them work very hard” or “The Egyptians forced them to work very hard”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

### ULT

**14** They made their lives bitter with hard service with mortar and brick, and with all kinds of work in the fields. All their required work was hard.

### UST

**14** Because the Israelites were slaves, their lives were very sad. They had to build many buildings with cement and bricks. They also had to do work in the fields. In making the Israelites do all this work, the Egyptian masters treated them very badly.

## Exodus 1:15

### king of Egypt

The king of Egypt is called Pharaoh.

### midwives

These were women who helped a woman give birth to a baby.

### Shiphrah...Puah

These are Hebrew women's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Then the king of Egypt spoke to the Hebrew midwives; the name of the one was Shiphrah, and the other Puah.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Now there were two Hebrew midwives. Their names were Shiphrah and Puah. The king of Egypt said to those two women,

## Exodus 1:16

### on the birthstool

Women sat on this short stool as they gave birth. Therefore, it is associated with birth. Alternate translation: “as they give birth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### ULT

**16** He said, “When you assist the Hebrew women on the birthstool, observe when they give birth. If it is a son, then you must kill him; but if it is a daughter, then she may live.”

### UST

**16** “When you help the Hebrew women give birth to their children, if the baby is a boy, you must kill him. If the baby is a girl, you may let her live.”

## Exodus 1:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- children, child, offspring
- Egypt, Egyptian
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- children, child, offspring
- Egypt, Egyptian
- king, kingdom, kingship

### ULT

**17** But the midwives feared God and did not do as the king of Egypt ordered them; instead, they let the baby boys live.

### UST

**17** But the midwives feared that God would punish them if they obeyed the king. So they did not do what the king told them to do. They allowed the baby boys to live.

## Exodus 1:18

### midwives

These were women who helped a woman give birth to a baby. See how you translated this in [Exodus 1:16](#).

### Why have you done this, and let the baby boys live?

Pharaoh asked this question to rebuke the midwives for allowing the male children to live. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You have disobeyed my order by not killing the male babies!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- children, child, offspring
- Egypt, Egyptian
- king, kingdom, kingship
- declare, proclaim, announce

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- children, child, offspring
- Egypt, Egyptian
- king, kingdom, kingship
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

**18** The king of Egypt summoned the midwives and said to them, “Why have you done this, and let the baby boys live?”

### UST

**18** So the king called the two midwives and said to them, “Why are you doing this? Why are you letting the baby boys live?”

## Exodus 1:19

### The Hebrew women are not like the Egyptian women

The midwives answered wisely to appease Pharaoh's anger.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian

#### Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian

#### ULT

**19** The midwives answered Pharaoh, "The Hebrew women are not like the Egyptian women. They are vigorous and have finished giving birth before a midwife comes to them."

#### UST

**19** One of the midwives said to the king, "The Hebrew women are not like the Egyptian women. The Hebrew women are very strong. They give birth to their babies before we can get to them to help them."

## Exodus 1:20

### God protected these midwives

God kept Pharaoh from killing these midwives.

### midwives

These were women who helped a woman give birth to a baby. See how you translated this in [Exodus 1:16](#).

### The people increased in numbers

"The Israelites increased in numbers"

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- people, people group,

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> God protected these midwives. The people increased in numbers and became very strong.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> So God acted kindly toward the midwives, and the Hebrew people became very numerous and strong.

## Exodus 1:21

### feared God

“revered God” or “had reverence for God”

### he gave them families

“the enabled them to have children”

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- house

### ULT

**21** Because the midwives feared God, he gave them families.

### UST

**21** Because the midwives feared God, God gave them children of their own.



## Exodus 1:22

### You must throw every son...into the river

This order was given in order to drown the male children. The full meaning of this may be made explicit. Alternate translation: "You must...into the river so they will drown" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- command, commandment
- son
- people, people group,

#### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- command, commandment
- son
- people, people group,

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Pharaoh ordered all his people, "You must throw every son that is born into the river, but every daughter you will let live."

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> Then the king commanded all the Egyptian people, saying, "You must throw into the Nile River every Hebrew baby boy that is born! However, you can allow the baby girls to live."

## **Exodus 2**

### **Exodus 2 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Moses' heritage**

In the first part of this chapter, Pharaoh's daughter recognizes Moses as being a Hebrew, but in the last part of this chapter, the Midianites believe him to be an Egyptian.

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **Ironic situations**

While Pharaoh tried to diminish the power of the Israelites by killing all of their baby boys, Yahweh used Pharaoh's own daughter to save Moses. Moses was the one who would ultimately be used by Yahweh to deliver Israel.

## Exodus 2:1

### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main event. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the narrative. If you have a way of doing this in your language, consider using it here. (See:

[Introduction of a New Event](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now a man of the tribe of Levi married a woman of Levi.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Now there was a man who was a descendant of Jacob's son Levi. He married a woman who was also a descendant of Levi.

## Exodus 2:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> The woman became pregnant and gave birth to a son. When she saw that he was a healthy boy, she hid him for three months.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> She became pregnant and gave birth to a baby boy. When she saw that he was a healthy baby, she hid him for three months because she was not willing to do what the king commanded.

## Exodus 2:3

### papyrus basket

This is a basket made from a tall grass that grows by the Nile River in Egypt.

### sealed it with bitumen and pitch

You could explicitly state that this was to keep out water. Alternate translation: “spread tar on it to keep water from getting into it” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### sealed

Here “sealed” means that she applied a waterproof coating.

### bitumen

This is a sticky black paste made from petroleum. It can be used to keep out water. Alternate translation: “tar” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### pitch

This is a sticky brown or black paste that can be made from tree sap or from petroleum. Therefore, “pitch” would include not only “bitumen” but also plant-based resins. It too can be used to keep out water. Alternate translation: “tar” or “resin” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### reeds

These “reeds” were a type of tall grass that grew in flat, wet areas.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [children](#), [child](#), [offspring](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [children](#), [child](#), [offspring](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But when she could no longer hide him, she took a papyrus basket and sealed it with bitumen and pitch. Then she put the child in it and placed it among the reeds in the water along the side of the river.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> When she was unable to hide him any longer, she got a basket made from tall reeds. She covered the basket with tar so it would float in water. Then she put the baby in the basket and put the basket in the water. It was at the edge of the Nile River in the middle of the tall reeds.

## Exodus 2:4

### at a distance

This means she stood far enough away so that she would not be noticed, but close enough to see the basket.

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> His sister stood at a distance to see what would happen to him.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> His older sister was standing close by, watching to see what would happen to him.

## Exodus 2:5

### her attendants

the young women whose job was to be with her and make sure nothing bad happened to her

### Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- hand
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Pharaoh's daughter came down to bathe at the river while her attendants walked along by the riverside. She saw the basket among the reeds and sent her attendant to get it.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Soon the king's daughter went down to the river to take a bath. Her female servants walked along the riverbank. She saw the basket in the tall reeds in the river, so she sent one of her servants to get it.

## Exodus 2:6

### Behold

The word “behold” signals the surprising information that follows.

### Translation Words - ULT

- children, child, offspring
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- children, child, offspring
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> When she opened it, she saw the child. Behold, the baby was crying. She had compassion on him and said, “This is certainly one of the Hebrews’ children.”

### UST

<sup>6</sup> When the servant brought the basket to her, she opened it, and was surprised to see a baby inside that was crying. She felt sad for him, and said, “This must be a Hebrew baby.”



## Exodus 2:7

### nurse

feed with milk from the breast

### Translation Words - ULT

- children, child, offspring
- declare, proclaim, announce

### Translation Words - UST

- children, child, offspring
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then the baby's sister said to Pharaoh's daughter, "Should I go and find you a Hebrew woman to nurse the child for you?"

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Then the baby's older sister walked up to the king's daughter and said, "Do you want me to go and find a Hebrew woman who will be able to nurse the baby for you?"

## Exodus 2:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- children, child, offspring
- walk, walked
- declare, proclaim, announce

### Translation Words - UST

- children, child, offspring
- walk, walked
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Pharaoh's daughter said to her, "Go."  
So the young girl went and got the  
child's mother.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> The king's daughter said to her, "Yes,  
go and find one." So the girl went and  
found the baby's mother.

## Exodus 2:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- children, child, offspring
- children, child, offspring
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- children, child, offspring
- children, child, offspring
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Pharaoh's daughter said to the baby's mother, "Take this child and nurse him for me, and I will pay you wages." So the woman took the child and nursed him.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> The king's daughter said to the mother, "Please take this baby and nurse him for me. I will pay you for doing that." So the baby's mother took him and nursed him.

## Exodus 2:10

### she brought him

"the Hebrew woman brought him"

### he became her son

"he became the adopted son of Pharaoh's daughter"

### Because I drew him from the water

Translators may add a footnote that says "The name Moses sounds like the Hebrew word that means 'pull.'"

### drew him

"pulled him"

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- children, child, offspring
- Moses
- declare, proclaim, announce

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- name
- children, child, offspring
- Moses
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> When the child grew older, she brought him to Pharaoh's daughter, and he became her son. She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water."

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Several years later, his mother brought the boy to the king's daughter. She adopted him as though he were her own son. She named him Moses, which sounds like the Hebrew words 'pull out' because she said, "I pulled him out of the water."

## Exodus 2:11

### striking a Hebrew

“hitting a Hebrew” or “beating a Hebrew”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [brother](#)
- [brother](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [brother](#)
- [brother](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

**11** When Moses had grown up, he went out to his people and observed their hard work. He saw an Egyptian striking a Hebrew, one of his own people.

#### UST

**11** One day, after Moses had grown up, he went out of the palace area to see his people, the Hebrews. He saw how they had to work very hard. He also saw an Egyptian man beating a Hebrew person.

## Exodus 2:12

### He looked this way and that way

These two opposite directions have the combined meaning of “everywhere.” Alternate translation: “He looked all around” (See: [Merism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> He looked this way and that way, and when he saw that there was no one there, he killed the Egyptian and hid his body in the sand.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> He looked around to see if anyone was watching. Seeing no one, he killed the Egyptian man and buried his body in the sand.

## Exodus 2:13

### He went out

"Moses went out"

### behold

The word "behold" here shows that Moses was surprised by what he saw. You can use a word in your language that will give this meaning.

### the one who was in the wrong

This was a customary way of saying "the one who started the fight." Alternate translation: "the one who was guilty of starting the fight" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)

### ULT

**13** He went out the next day, and, behold, two Hebrew men were fighting. He said to the one who was in the wrong, "Why are you hitting your companion?"

### UST

**13** The next day he returned to the same place. He was surprised to see two Hebrew men fighting each other. He said to the man who started the fight, "Why are you hitting your fellow Hebrew?"

## Exodus 2:14

### Who made you a leader and judge over us?

The man used this question to rebuke Moses for intervening in the fight. Alternate translation: "You are not our leader and have no right to judge us!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Are you planning to kill me as you killed that Egyptian?

The man used a question here to be sarcastic. Alternate translation: "We know that you killed an Egyptian yesterday. You had better not kill me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- judge, judgment
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- judge, judgment
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**14** But the man said, "Who made you a leader and judge over us? Are you planning to kill me as you killed that Egyptian?" Then Moses became afraid and said, "What I did has certainly become known to others."

#### UST

**14** The man replied, "Who made you our ruler and judge? Are you going to kill me just like you killed that Egyptian man yesterday?" Then Moses was afraid, because he thought, "Since this man knows what I did, other people will know, too."



## Exodus 2:15

### Now when Pharaoh heard about it

The word “now” is used here to mark a break in the event. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the incident.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Moses
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- seek, search, look for

#### Translation Words - UST

- Moses
- Moses
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- seek, search, look for

#### ULT

**15** Now when Pharaoh heard about it, he tried to kill Moses. But Moses fled from Pharaoh and stayed in the land of Midian. There he sat down by a well.

#### UST

**15-16** When the king heard that Moses killed an Egyptian, he ordered his soldiers to kill Moses. But Moses ran away from the king and left Egypt. He traveled east to the region of Midian and started to live there. Now the man who was the priest for the Midian people, whose name was Jethro, had seven daughters. One day as Moses sat down beside a well, the seven daughters came to the well, got water, and filled the troughs in order to give water to their father's sheep.

## Exodus 2:16

### Now the priest of Midian had seven daughters

The word “now” is used here to mark a break in the event. Here the author tells about new people in the narrative.

#### drew water

This means that they brought up water from a well.

#### troughs

a long, narrow, open container for animals to eat or drink out of

#### Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- flock, herd

#### Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- flock, herd

#### ULT

**16** Now the priest of Midian had seven daughters. They came, drew water, and filled the troughs to water their father's flock.

#### UST

**15-16** When the king heard that Moses killed an Egyptian, he ordered his soldiers to kill Moses. But Moses ran away from the king and left Egypt. He traveled east to the region of Midian and started to live there. Now the man who was the priest for the Midian people, whose name was Jethro, had seven daughters. One day as Moses sat down beside a well, the seven daughters came to the well, got water, and filled the troughs in order to give water to their father's sheep.

## Exodus 2:17

### drive them away

“chase them away”

### helped them

“rescued them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- flock, herd
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### Translation Words - UST

- Moses
- flock, herd
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### ULT

**17** The shepherds came and tried to drive them away, but Moses went and helped them. Then he watered their flock.

### UST

**17** Some shepherds came and started to chase away the girls. But Moses helped the girls and got water for their sheep.

## Exodus 2:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> When the girls went to Reuel their father, he said, "Why are you home so early today?"

### UST

<sup>18</sup> When the girls returned to their father Jethro, who was also called Reuel, he asked them, "How is it that you were able to give water to the sheep and come home so quickly today?"

## Exodus 2:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- hand
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> They said, "An Egyptian rescued us from the shepherds. He even drew water for us and watered the flock."

### UST

<sup>19</sup> They replied, "A man from Egypt kept other shepherds from chasing us away. He also got water for us from the well and gave water to the sheep."

## Exodus 2:20

### Why did you leave the man?

This question is a mild rebuke to the daughters for not inviting Moses into their home according to the normal hospitality of that culture. Alternate translation: "You should not have left this man at the well!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [call](#), [call out](#)
- [forsake](#), [forsaken](#), [leave](#)
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [call](#), [call out](#)
- [forsake](#), [forsaken](#), [leave](#)
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> He said to his daughters, "So where is he? Why did you leave the man? Call him so he can eat a meal with us."

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> He said to his daughters, "Where is he? Why did you leave him out there? Invite him in so that he can have something to eat!"

## Exodus 2:21

### Moses agreed to stay with the man

“Moses agreed to live with Reuel”

### Zipporah

This is Reuel’s daughter. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Moses agreed to stay with the man, who also gave him his daughter Zipporah in marriage.

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> So they did, and Moses ate with them. Moses decided to live there. Later, Jethro gave Moses his daughter Zipporah to be his wife.

## Exodus 2:22

### Gershom

This is Moses's son. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### resident in a foreign land

"stranger in a foreign land"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [alien, foreign, foreigner](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [alien, foreign, foreigner](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> She bore a son, and Moses called his name Gershom; he said, "I have been a resident in a foreign land."

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Later she gave birth to a son, and Moses named him Gershom, which sounds like the Hebrew word that means "foreigner" because he said, "I am a foreigner living in this land."



## Exodus 2:23

### groaned

They did this because of their sorrow and misery. Alternate translation: “sighed deeply”

### their pleas went up to God

The cries of the Israelites are spoken of as if they were a person and were able to travel up to where God is. Alternate translation: “God heard their pleas” (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [cry, cry out, outcry](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [cry, cry out, outcry](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> A long time later, the king of Egypt died. The Israelites groaned because of the slave labor. They cried out for help, and their pleas went up to God because of their bondage.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Many years later the king of Egypt died. The Israelite people in Egypt were still crying out because of the hard work they had to do as slaves. They called out for someone to help them, and God heard them.

## Exodus 2:24

### God called to mind his covenant

This was a customary way of saying God thought about what He had promised. Alternate translation: "God remembered his covenant" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

#### ULT

**24** When God heard their groaning, God called to mind his covenant with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob.

#### UST

**24** When he heard them crying out, he thought about his promise to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.

## Exodus 2:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> God saw the Israelites, and he understood their situation.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> God saw how the Israelite people were being badly treated, and he wanted to help them.

## Exodus 3

### Exodus 3 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter records one of the most important events in the history of the Israelite people: the revelation of the name Yahweh at the burning bush. (See: [reveal](#), [revealed](#), [revelation](#))

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### God's holiness

God is so holy that people could not look upon him without dying. This is why Moses covered his eyes. It is also why he took off his shoes. (See: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Yahweh

The name Yahweh is sacred in the Hebrew religion. It is the personal name of God, which he revealed to Moses. It is by this name, he is known. Yahweh means "I am." Some translations use all capitals to set this apart, "I AM." Great care must be taken in translating the phrase "I am that I am." (See: [Yahweh](#))

## Exodus 3:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- priest, priesthood
- flock, herd
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- priest, priesthood
- flock, herd
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now Moses was still shepherding the flock of Jethro his father-in-law, the priest of Midian. Moses led the flock to the far side of the wilderness and arrived at Horeb, the mountain of God.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> One day, Moses took the flock of Jethro his father in law, priest of Midian, to the far side of the wilderness. He came to Mount Horeb, the mountain of God.

## Exodus 3:2

### angel of Yahweh

This was Yahweh himself appearing as an angel, and not just an angel that Yahweh sent. “Yahweh appeared as an angel” .

### Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

### behold

The word “behold” here shows that Moses saw something that was very different from what he expected.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> There the angel of Yahweh appeared to him in a flame of fire in a bush. Moses looked, and behold, the bush was burning, but the bush was not burned up.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> When he was on the mountain, Yahweh appeared as an angel to Moses from inside a burning bush. As Moses looked at the bush, it was not destroyed by the fire.

## Exodus 3:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Moses said, "I will turn aside and see this amazing thing, why the bush is not burned up."

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> Moses thought, "I will go closer to see this strange sight! Why is the bush not burning up?"

## Exodus 3:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Moses
- declare, proclaim, announce

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Moses
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> When Yahweh saw that he had turned aside to look, God called to him out of the bush and said, "Moses, Moses." Moses said, "Here I am."

### UST

<sup>4</sup> When Yahweh saw Moses come close to the bush, he called out to Moses, "Moses, Moses!" Moses said to God, "Here I am."



## Exodus 3:5

### set apart

“made holy”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- appoint, appointed
- sandal

#### Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- appoint, appointed
- sandal

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> God said, “Do not come any closer! Take off your shoes from your feet, for the place where you are standing is ground that is set apart to me.”

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> God said, “Do not come close to the bush! Because I am God, the ground on which you are standing belongs to me. So take off your sandals to show respect to me.”

## Exodus 3:6

### the God of your father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob

All of these men worshiped the same God. Alternate translation: “the God of your father, of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Jacob”

#### your father

Possible meanings are 1) “your ancestor” or 2) “your father.” If it means “your ancestor,” then the phrases following it clarify who “your father” refers to: it refers to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. If it means “your father,” then it refers to Moses’s own father.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- God
- God
- God
- God
- pray, prayer
- Abraham, Abram
- Moses
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- face, facial

#### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- God
- God
- God
- God
- pray, prayer
- Abraham, Abram
- Moses
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- face, facial

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> He added, “I am the God of your father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob.” Then Moses covered his face, for he was afraid to look at God.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> He said, “I am God, the one your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob worshiped.” Moses was afraid that God would kill him if he looked at him, so he turned his head away.

## Exodus 3:7

### taskmasters

Egyptians whose job was to force the Israelites to do hard work. See how you translated this in [Exodus 1:11](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- afflict, affliction, distress
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- afflict, affliction, distress
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Yahweh said, "I have certainly seen the suffering of my people who are in Egypt. I have heard their shouts because of their taskmasters, for I know about their suffering.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Then Yahweh said, "I have seen how badly the Egyptians are treating my people in Egypt. I have heard my people shouting in despair because of what the slave drivers are making them do. I know how my people are suffering.

## Exodus 3:8

### a land flowing with milk and honey

“a land where milk and honey flow.” God spoke of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants were flowing through the land. Alternate translation: “a land that is excellent for raising livestock and growing crops” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### flowing with

“full of” or “with an abundance of”

### milk

Since milk comes from cows and goats, this represents food produced by livestock. Alternate translation: “food from livestock” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### honey

Since honey is produced from flowers, this represents food from crops. Alternate translation: “food from crops” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> I have come down to free them from the Egyptians' power and to bring them up from that land to a good, large land, to a land flowing with milk and honey; to the region of the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> So I have come down from heaven to rescue them from the Egyptians. I will lead them to a good and large land, a land where they can grow many crops and raise much livestock, where the descendants of Canaan, Heth, Amor, Periz, Hiv, and Jebus live.

### Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Amorite
- Jebus, Jebusite
- Perizzite
- hand
- honey, honeycomb
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Amorite
- Jebus, Jebusite
- Perizzite
- hand
- honey, honeycomb
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

## Exodus 3:9

### the shouts of the people of Israel have come to me

Here the word “shouts” are spoken of as if they were persons who are capable of moving on their own. Alternate translation: “I have heard the cries of the people of Israel” (See: [Personification](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Now the shouts of the people of Israel have come to me. Moreover, I have seen the oppression caused by the Egyptians.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Truly I have now heard my Israelite people crying. I have seen how badly the Egyptians treat them.

## Exodus 3:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- walk, walked

### ULT

**10** Now then, I will send you to Pharaoh so that you may bring my people, the Israelites, out of Egypt."

### UST

**10** So I am sending you back to Egypt to the king because you will lead my people, the Israelites, out of Egypt."

## Exodus 3:11

### Who am I, that I should go to Pharaoh...Egypt?

Moses uses this question to tell God that Moses is a nobody and no one will listen to him. Alternate translation: "I am not important enough to go to Pharaoh...Egypt!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- pray, prayer
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- walk, walked
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- pray, prayer
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- walk, walked
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**11** But Moses said to God, "Who am I, that I should go to Pharaoh and bring the Israelites from Egypt?"

#### UST

**11** But Moses said to God, "I am not important enough to go to the king in order to bring your people out of Egypt."

## Exodus 3:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- pray, prayer
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- pray, prayer
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> God replied, "I will certainly be with you. This will be a sign to you that I have sent you. When you have brought the people out of Egypt, you will worship me on this mountain."

### UST

<sup>12</sup> God said, "I will be with you. When you bring my people out of Egypt, all of you will worship me right here on this mountain. That will prove to you that I am the one who sent you to them."



## Exodus 3:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- God
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- pray, prayer
- Moses
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- God
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- pray, prayer
- Moses
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### ULT

**13** Moses said to God, “When I go to the Israelites and tell them, ‘The God of your ancestors has sent me to you,’ and when they say to me, ‘What is his name?’ what should I say to them?”

### UST

**13** Moses said to God, “If I go to the Israelite people and say to them, ‘God, the one your ancestors worshiped, has sent me to you,’ they will ask me, ‘What is his name?’ Then what should I say to them?”

## Exodus 3:14

### God said to Moses, "I AM THAT I AM."

This is God's response to Moses' question about God's name. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "God said to Moses, 'Tell them that God says his name is, "I AM THAT I AM."'"

### I AM THAT I AM

Possible meanings are 1) this whole sentence is God's name or 2) God is not telling his name but something about himself. By saying this, God is teaching that he is eternal; he has always lived and always will live.

### I AM

Languages that do not have an equivalent to the verb "am" may need to render this as "I LIVE" or "I EXIST."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

**14** God said to Moses, "I AM THAT I AM." God said, "You must say to the Israelites, 'I AM has sent me to you.'"

### UST

**14** God replied to Moses, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell the Israelite people that the one named 'I AM' has sent you to them."

## Exodus 3:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- God
- God
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Abraham, Abram
- Moses
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- generation
- generation

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- God
- God
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Abraham, Abram
- Moses
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- generation
- generation

### ULT

**15** God also said to Moses, “You must say to the Israelites, ‘Yahweh, the God of your ancestors, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, has sent me to you. This is my name forever, and this is how I will be kept in mind for all generations.’

### UST

**15** God also said to Moses, “You must say to the Israelites, ‘Yahweh, the God of your fathers, the God whom Abraham worshiped, whom Isaac worshiped, and whom Jacob worshiped, has sent me to you. Yahweh is my name forever, and this is what all generations should call me.’

## Exodus 3:16

### General Information:

God continues speaking to Moses.

### the God of your ancestors, the God of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Jacob

Abraham, Isaac and Jacob were three of Moses's ancestors. They all worshiped the same God.

### I have indeed observed you

The word "you" refers to the people of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Abraham, Abram
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- elder, older, old
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Abraham, Abram
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- elder, older, old
- walk, walked

### ULT

**16** Go and gather the elders of Israel together. Say to them, 'Yahweh, the God of your ancestors, the God of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Jacob, has appeared to me and said, "I have indeed observed you and have seen what has been done to you in Egypt.'

### UST

**16** Go to Egypt and gather together the elders. Say to them, 'Yahweh, the God whom Abraham worshiped, whom Isaac worshiped, and whom Jacob worshiped, has appeared to me and said: I have seen what the Egyptian people have done to you.'

## Exodus 3:17

### a land flowing with milk and honey

“a land where milk and honey flow.” God spoke of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants were flowing through the land. See how you translated this in [Exodus 3:8](#). Alternate translation: “a land that is excellent for raising livestock and growing crops” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### flowing with

“full of” or “with an abundance of”

### milk

Since milk comes from cows and goats, this represents food produced by livestock. Alternate translation: “food from livestock” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### honey

Since honey is produced from flowers, this represents food from crops. Alternate translation: “food from crops” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Amorite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Jebus, Jebusite
- Perizzite
- honey, honeycomb
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Amorite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Jebus, Jebusite
- Perizzite
- honey, honeycomb
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

**17** I have promised to bring you up from the oppression in Egypt to the land of the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites, a land flowing with milk and honey.”

### UST

**17** I promise that I will rescue you from being treated badly in Egypt, and I will take you to the land where the descendants of Canaan, Heth, Amor, Periz, Hiv, and Jebus live. It is a good land where you can grow many crops and raise much livestock.’

## Exodus 3:18

### They will listen to you

The word “you” refers to Moses. Alternate translation: “The elders will listen to you”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- desert, wilderness
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- desert, wilderness
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

#### ULT

**18** They will listen to you. You and the elders of Israel must go to the king of Egypt, and you must tell him, ‘Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews, has met with us. So now let us go three days’ journey into the wilderness, in order that we may sacrifice to Yahweh, our God.’

#### UST

**18** The elders will do what you say. Then you and the elders will go to the king of Egypt, and you will say to him, ‘Yahweh, whom we Hebrews worship as God, has met with us. So now we ask you to allow us to travel for three days to a place in the wilderness in order that there we may offer sacrifices to Yahweh, our God.’

## Exodus 3:19

### General Information:

God continues speaking to Moses.

### unless his hand is forced

This can be stated in active form. The word "hand" is a metonym for the power of the owner of the hand. Possible meanings are 1) "only if he sees that he has no power to do anything else," where the "hand" belongs to Pharaoh; where the "hand" belongs to Yahweh, 2) "only if I force him to let you go" or 3) "not even if I force him to let you go." (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**19** But I know that the king of Egypt will not let you go, unless his hand is forced.

### UST

**19** But I know that the king of Egypt will allow you to go only if he sees that he has no other choice.

## Exodus 3:20

### I will reach out with my hand and attack

Here “hand” refers to God’s power. Alternate translation: “I will powerfully attack” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [miracle, wonder, sign](#)
- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [miracle, wonder, sign](#)
- [hand](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> I will reach out with my hand and attack the Egyptians with all the miracles that I will do among them. After that, he will let you go.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> So I will use my power by performing many miracles there. Then he will allow you to leave.



## Exodus 3:21

### will not go empty-handed

The word here “empty-handed” is used to emphasize the opposite meaning. Alternate translation: “will go with your hands full of good things” or “will go with many valuable things” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- people, people group,
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

#### Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- people, people group,
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> I will grant this people favor from the Egyptians, so when you leave, you will not go empty-handed.

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> When this happens, I will cause the people of Egypt to honor the Hebrew people so that when you leave Egypt, they will give you what you need for the journey.

## Exodus 3:22

### any women staying in her neighbors' houses

"any Egyptian woman staying in the houses of her Egyptian neighbors"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- appoint, appointed
- silver
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- gold, golden
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- appoint, appointed
- silver
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- gold, golden
- house

#### ULT

**22** Every woman will ask for silver and gold jewels and for clothing from her Egyptian neighbors and any women staying in her neighbors' houses. You will put them on your sons and daughters. In this way you will plunder the Egyptians."

#### UST

**22** At that time, each Hebrew woman will ask for what belongs to the Egyptian women living nearby. The Egyptians will give you all they have—silver and gold jewelry and clothing. You will put these things on your children. In this way, you will take everything from the Egyptians."

## Exodus 4

### Exodus 4 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Moses does not understand

Although Moses believes in Yahweh, he does not trust in him. This is because Moses lacks understanding. Moses tries to believe the things he is asked to do are done by his own power. Yahweh is trying to get Moses to trust that these are Yahweh's doing. (See: [believe](#), [believer](#), [belief](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#) and [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

#### Children of God

This chapter really introduces the concept that the people group Israel is the chosen people of God and God's children, possibly God's firstborn children. (See: [chosen](#), [choose](#), [chosen people](#), [Chosen One](#), [elect](#) and [people of God](#) and [firstborn](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart

Scholars are divided over how to understand this statement. There is debate over whether Pharaoh plays an active or passive role in the hardening of his own heart. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Exodus 4:1

### if they do not believe

"if the Israelites do not believe"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- Moses
- voice

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- Moses
- voice

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Moses answered, "But what if they do not believe me or listen to me but say instead, 'Yahweh has not appeared to you'?"

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Moses said to God, "What should I do if they do not believe me or listen to me? What should I do if they say, 'Yahweh did not appear to you'?"

## Exodus 4:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- hand

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- hand

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Yahweh said to him, "What is that in your hand?" Moses said, "A staff."

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> Yahweh said to him, "What is that in your hand?" Moses answered, "A staff."

## Exodus 4:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Moses
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Yahweh said, "Throw it on the ground." Moses threw it on the ground, and it became a snake. Moses ran back from it.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Yahweh said, "Throw it down on the ground!" So, Moses threw the staff on the ground and it became a snake, and Moses ran away from it.

## Exodus 4:4

### take it by the tail

“pick it up by the tail” or “grasp it by the tail”

### became a staff

“turned into a rod” or “changed into a staff”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- hand
- hand
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- hand
- hand
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, “Reach out and take it by the tail.” So he reached out and took hold of the snake. It became a staff in his hand again.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> But Yahweh said to Moses, “Pick up the snake by its tail.” So Moses picked up the snake by the tail, and it became a staff in his hand again.

## Exodus 4:5

### the God of their ancestors, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob

Abraham, Isaac and Jacob were three of their ancestors. They all worshiped the same God.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- Abraham, Abram
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- Abraham, Abram
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> "This is so they may believe that Yahweh, the God of their ancestors, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, has appeared to you."

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Yahweh said, "Do the same thing in front of the Israelite people in order that they may believe that I, Yahweh, the God whom Abraham worshiped, whom Isaac worshiped, and whom Jacob worshiped, truly appeared to you."



## Exodus 4:6

### behold

This word is used to create an exclamation, showing surprise. (See: [Exclamations](#))

### as white as snow

The word “as” here is used to compare what Moses’ hand looked like. Leprosy causes the skin to look white. You may not have a word for snow in your language. If so, consider an alternative that describes something white. Alternate translation: “as white as wool or as white as the sand on the beach” (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#) (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#) (2)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Yahweh also said to him, “Now put your hand inside your robe.” So Moses put his hand inside his robe. When he brought it out, behold, his hand was leprous, as white as snow.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, “Put your hand in your robe.” Moses put his hand in his robe. When he brought his hand out, it had a disease that made the skin look white as snow.

## Exodus 4:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [return](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [return](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Yahweh said, "Put your hand inside your robe again." So Moses put his hand inside his robe, and when he brought it out, he saw that it was made healthy again, like the rest of his flesh.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Then Yahweh said, "Put your hand in your robe again." Moses put his hand back inside his robe. This time when he brought it out, the disease was healed, and it looked like his other hand.

## Exodus 4:8

### pay attention

“acknowledge” or “accept”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

#### Translation Words - UST

- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Yahweh said, “If they do not believe you—if they do not pay attention to the first sign of my power or believe in it, then they will believe the second sign.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Yahweh said, “You can do that in front of the Israelite people, too. If they do not believe you or listen to you after seeing the first miracle, they will believe you when you perform the second miracle.

## Exodus 4:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

### Translation Words - UST

- blood
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> If they do not believe even these two signs of my power, or listen to you, then take some water from the river and pour it on the dry land. The water that you take will become blood on the dry land."

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> But if they do not believe you or listen to what you say even after you show them these two miracles, get some water from the Nile River and pour it on the dry ground. When you do that, the water that you pour on the dry ground will become blood."

## Exodus 4:10

### have never been eloquent

“have never been an excellent speaker”

### I am slow of speech and slow of tongue

The phrases “slow of speech” and “slow of tongue” mean basically the same thing. Moses uses them to emphasize that he is not a good speaker. (See: [Doublet](#))

### slow of tongue

Here “tongue” refers to Moses’ ability to speak. Alternate translation: “unable to speak well” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- pray, prayer
- Moses
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- pray, prayer
- Moses
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

**10** Then Moses said to Yahweh, “Lord, I have never been eloquent, neither in the past nor since you spoke to your servant. I am slow of speech and slow of tongue.”

### UST

**10** Then Moses said to Yahweh, “Oh Lord, I have never been good at speaking to people. I am still that way even after you began talking to me. I speak slowly and never know what to say.”

## Exodus 4:11

### Who is it who made man's mouth?

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he is the Creator who makes it possible for people to speak. Alternate translation: "I Yahweh am the one who created the human mouth and the ability to speak!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Who makes a man mute or deaf or seeing or blind?

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he is the one who decides if people can speak and hear, and if they can see. Alternate translation: "I Yahweh make people able to speak, or hear, or to see, or to be blind!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Is it not I, Yahweh?

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he alone makes these decisions. Alternate translation: "I, Yahweh, am the one who does this!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Yahweh said to him, "Who is it who made man's mouth? Who makes a man mute or deaf or seeing or blind? Is it not I, Yahweh?"

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> Then Yahweh said to him, "Who made a man's mouth? Who is it who makes a man able to speak, hear, see, or not see? Is it not I, Yahweh?"

## Exodus 4:12

### I will be with your mouth

Here “mouth” refers to Moses’ ability to speak. Alternate translation: “I will give you the ability to speak” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked

#### Translation Words - UST

- walk, walked

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> So now go, and I will be with your mouth and teach you what to say.”

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> So now go, and I will help you speak, and I will tell you what to say.”

## Exodus 4:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- hand

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- hand

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> But Moses said, “Lord, please send anyone else, anyone whom you wish to send.”

### UST

<sup>13</sup> But Moses replied, “Oh Lord, I ask you, please send someone else in my place!”



## Exodus 4:14

### he will be glad in his heart

Here “heart” refers to inner thoughts and emotions. Alternate translation: “he will be very happy” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- heart
- Yahweh
- Aaron
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- brother
- heart
- Yahweh
- Aaron
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**14** Then Yahweh became angry with Moses. He said, “What about Aaron, your brother, the Levite? I know that he can speak well. Moreover, he is coming to meet you, and when he sees you, he will be glad in his heart.

#### UST

**14** Then Yahweh became angry with Moses and said to him, “What about Aaron, your brother, the Levite? He is a good speaker. He is on his way here right now, and he will be very happy to see you.

## Exodus 4:15

### put the words to say into his mouth

Words here are spoken of as if they were something that can be physically placed in a person's mouth. Alternate translation: "give him the message that he is to repeat" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I will be with your mouth

The word "mouth" here represents Moses choice of words. Alternate translation: "I will give you the right words to speak" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### with his mouth

The word "mouth" here represents Aaron's choice of words. Alternate translation: "I will give him the right words to speak" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### ULT

**15** You will speak to him and put the words to say into his mouth. I will be with your mouth and with his mouth, and I will show you both what to do.

#### UST

**15** You can talk to him and tell him what to say. I will tell you both what you should do.

## Exodus 4:16

### He will be your mouth

The word “mouth” here represents Aaron repeating what Moses told him. Alternate translation: “He will say what you tell him to say” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### you will be to him like me, God

The word “like” here means Moses would represent the same authority to Aaron as God did to Moses. Alternate translation: “you will speak to Aaron with the same authority with which I spoke to you” (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### ULT

**16** He will speak to the people for you. He will be your mouth, and you will be to him like me, God.

### UST

**16** He will speak for you to the Israelite people. He will be your spokesman, and he will think of you as if you were me.

## Exodus 4:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- hand

### Translation Words - UST

- hand

#### ULT

**17** You will take in your hand this staff.  
With it you will do the signs.”

#### UST

**17** Be sure to take with you the staff that  
is in your hand because you will  
perform miracles with it.”

## Exodus 4:18

### father-in-law

This refers to the father of Moses' wife.

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- walk, walked
- walk, walked
- return
- return

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- walk, walked
- walk, walked
- return
- return

### ULT

**18** So Moses went back to Jethro his father-in-law and said to him, "Let me go so I may return to my relatives who are in Egypt and see if they are still alive." Jethro said to Moses, "Go in peace."

### UST

**18** Moses went back to his father-in-law, Jethro, and said to him, "Let me go back to my people in Egypt to see if they are still alive." Jethro said to Moses, "Go, and may God give you peace."

## Exodus 4:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Yahweh said to Moses in Midian, "Go, return to Egypt, for all the men who were trying to take your life are dead."

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Yahweh said to Moses in Midian, "Go back to Egypt, for the men who were looking for you are now dead."

## Exodus 4:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Moses
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- donkey, mule
- earth, earthen, earthly
- return
- horse, warhorse, horseback

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- Moses
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- donkey, mule
- earth, earthen, earthly
- return
- horse, warhorse, horseback

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Moses took his wife and his sons and put them on a donkey. He returned to the land of Egypt, and he took the staff of God in his hand.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> So Moses took his wife and sons and set them on a donkey and walked back to Egypt, and he took the staff in his hand as God had told him to do.

## Exodus 4:21

### will harden his heart

Here “heart” refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. Alternate translation: “will cause Pharaoh to be stubborn” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- people, people group,
- strength, strengthen, strong

### Translation Words - UST

- heart
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- people, people group,
- strength, strengthen, strong

### ULT

**21** Yahweh said to Moses, “When you go back to Egypt, see that you do before Pharaoh all the wonders that I have put in your power. But I will harden his heart, and he will not let the people go.

### UST

**21** Yahweh said to Moses, “When you return to Egypt, be sure to do all the miracles that I have given you power to do in front of the king. But I will make him reject you, and he will not let the Israelite people leave Egypt.



## Exodus 4:22

### Israel is my son

The word “Israel” here represents all the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “The people of Israel are my own children” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### is my son, my firstborn

Here the people of Israel are spoken of as if they were a firstborn son who causes joy and pride. Alternate translation: “is like my own firstborn son” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [firstborn](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [firstborn](#)

### ULT

**22** You must say to Pharaoh, ‘This is what Yahweh says: Israel is my son, my firstborn,

### UST

**22** Then say to him, ‘This is what Yahweh says: Israel is like my first born son,

**Exodus 4:23****you have refused to let him go**

The word “him” refers to the people of Israel as God’s son. Alternate translation: “you have refused to let my son go” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I will certainly kill your son, your firstborn**

The word “son” here refers to the actual son of Pharaoh.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [firstborn](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [firstborn](#)

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> and I say to you, “Let my son go, so he may worship me.” But since you have refused to let him go, I will certainly kill your son, your firstborn.”

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> and I say to you, “Let my son go, so that he may worship me.” But you did not let my son go and because of this, I will kill your firstborn son!”

## Exodus 4:24

### Yahweh met Moses and tried to kill him

This may have been because Moses had not circumcised his son.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- seek, search, look for

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- seek, search, look for

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Now on the way, when they stopped for the night, Yahweh met Moses and tried to kill him.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> One night, as they were on the way to Egypt, Yahweh appeared to Moses in order to kill him.

## Exodus 4:25

### Zipporah

This is the name of Moses's wife. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### flint knife

This was a knife with a sharpened stone blade.

### to his feet

It is possible that the word "feet" here may have been a more respectful way to refer to the genital area of the body. (See: [Euphemism](#))

### you are a bridegroom to me by blood

The meaning of this metaphor is unclear. It was probably a known saying in that culture. Alternate translation: "you are related to me by this blood" or "you are my husband because of blood" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [blood](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [bridegroom](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [blood](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [bridegroom](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Then Zipporah took a flint knife and cut off the foreskin of her son, and touched it to his feet. Then she said, "Surely you are a bridegroom to me by blood."

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> Then Moses' wife, Zipporah, took a knife and cut off the foreskin of their firstborn son. Then she touched the foreskin to Moses' feet and said, "You are a bridegroom of blood to me."

## Exodus 4:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- bridegroom

### Translation Words - UST

- blood
- bridegroom

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> So Yahweh let him alone. She said, "You are a bridegroom of blood" because of the circumcision.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> Yahweh did not kill Moses. Zipporah said, "You are a bridegroom of blood to me" because of the circumcision.

## Exodus 4:27

### Yahweh said to Aaron

You may want to add a word that marks the beginning of a new part of the story, as the UST does with the word "Meanwhile."

### at the mountain of God

This may have been the mountain at Sinai, but the text does not include that information.

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron
- walk, walked

### ULT

**27** Yahweh said to Aaron, "Go into the wilderness to meet Moses." Aaron went, met him at the mountain of God, and kissed him.

### UST

**27** Meanwhile, Yahweh said to Aaron, "Go into the desert to meet Moses." So Aaron went and met Moses at the mountain of God and kissed him on the cheek.

## Exodus 4:28

### he had sent him to say

The word “he” refers to Yahweh, and “him” refers to Moses.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Moses told Aaron all the words of Yahweh that he had sent him to say and about all the signs of Yahweh's power that he had commanded him to do.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> Moses told Aaron everything that Yahweh had said to him and all the miracles that he had instructed him to do.

## Exodus 4:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- elder, older, old

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- elder, older, old

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Then Moses and Aaron went and gathered together all the elders of the Israelites.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> So Aaron and Moses went and gathered together all of the elders of the Israelites.



## Exodus 4:30

### in the sight of the people

“before the people” or “in the presence of the people”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron
- people, people group,

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron
- people, people group,

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Aaron spoke all the words that Yahweh had spoken to Moses. He also displayed the signs of Yahweh's power in the sight of the people.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> Aaron told them everything that Yahweh had told Moses, and Moses performed all the miracles as the people watched.

## Exodus 4:31

### had observed the Israelites

“saw the Israelites” or “was concerned about the Israelites”

### they bowed their heads

Possible meanings are 1) “they bowed their heads in awe” or 2) “they bowed down low in reverence.” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [afflict, affliction, distress](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [afflict, affliction, distress](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

### ULT

**31** The people believed. When they heard that Yahweh had observed the Israelites and that he had seen their oppression, then they bowed their heads and worshiped him.

### UST

**31** The Israelites believed Aaron and Moses. When they heard that Yahweh had seen how the Israelite people were being badly treated and that he was going to help them, they bowed down and worshiped him.

## **Exodus 5**

### **Exodus 5 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **A slave's work**

The Egyptians were known for making their slaves do a lot of work. They were forced to make a specific number of bricks every day. In this chapter, they were required to not only make these bricks, but also to gather the straw in order to make these bricks.

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **“Let my people go”**

This is a very important statement. Moses does not ask Pharaoh for permission to “let go” of the Hebrew people. Instead, he is demanding that Pharaoh free the Hebrew people.

#### **Titles**

The leaders are given different titles in this chapter. The ULT uses “taskmasters” and “foremen.” Many cultures will not have these types of titles. Generic expressions like “Egyptian leaders” and “Hebrew leaders” may be necessary.

## Exodus 5:1

### After these things happened

It is unclear how long Moses and Aaron waited until they went to see Pharaoh.

### festival for me

This is a celebration to worship Yahweh.

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- desert, wilderness
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- desert, wilderness
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> After these things happened, Moses and Aaron went to Pharaoh and said, "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: 'Let my people go, so they can have a festival for me in the wilderness.'"

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then Moses and Aaron went to the king. They said to him, "Yahweh God, whom we Israelite people worship, says this to you: 'Let my people go to the desert in order that they may have a festival to honor me!'"

## Exodus 5:2

### Who is Yahweh?

Pharaoh uses this question to show that he does not recognize Yahweh as a legitimate god. Alternate translation: "I do not know Yahweh" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Why should I...let Israel go?

Pharaoh uses this question to state that he has no interest in obeying Yahweh or in letting the Israelites go to worship him. Alternate translation: "He is nothing to me and I will not let Israel go!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### listen to his voice

The words "his voice" represent the words God spoke. Alternate translation: "listen to what he says" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- voice
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- voice
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh? Why should I listen to his voice and let Israel go? I do not know Yahweh; moreover, I will not let Israel go."

### UST

<sup>2</sup> But the king said, "Yahweh is no one important. I do not need to pay attention to what he says, or let the Israelite people go. I do not know this Yahweh! Furthermore, I will not let the Israelite people go!"

## Exodus 5:3

### God of the Hebrews

This is a term also used for the Israelites' God or Yahweh.

### or with the sword

Here "sword" represents war or an attack by enemies. Alternate translation: "or cause our enemies to attack us" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> They said, "The God of the Hebrews has met with us. Let us go on a three-day journey into the wilderness and sacrifice to Yahweh our God so that he does not attack us with plague or with the sword."

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Moses and Aaron replied, "Yahweh God, the one we Hebrews worship, has revealed himself to us and told us what to tell you. So we ask you to let us go for three days into the wilderness. We must offer sacrifices to Yahweh God there. If we do not do that, he will cause us to die from diseases or from attacks by our enemies."

## Exodus 5:4

### why are you taking the people from their work?

Pharaoh uses this question to express his anger towards Moses and Aaron for taking the Israelites away from their work. Alternate translation: "stop distracting the people from doing their work!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But the king of Egypt said to them, "Moses and Aaron, why are you taking the people from their work? Go back to your work."

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> But the king of Egypt said to them, "Moses and Aaron, why are you preventing the Israelite people from working? Tell those slaves to return to work!"

## Exodus 5:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> He also said, "There are now many people in our land, and you are making them stop their work."

### UST

<sup>5</sup> The king also said, "Listen to me! You people who now live in this land are more numerous than we Egyptians. Why are you stopping them from working?"



## Exodus 5:6

### taskmasters

Egyptians whose job was to force the Israelites to do hard work. See how you translated this in [Exodus 1:11](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> On that same day, Pharaoh gave a command to the people's taskmasters and foremen. He said,

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> That same day the king commanded the Egyptian slave bosses and the Israelite assistants who directed the slaves,

## Exodus 5:7

### you must no longer give

The word “you” in these verses is plural and refers to the taskmasters and foremen. (See: [Forms of You](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- walk, walked

#### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- walk, walked

#### ULT

7 “Unlike before, you must no longer give the people straw to make bricks. Let them go and gather straw for themselves.

#### UST

7 “Do not continue to give straw to Israelite people for making bricks. Make them go into the fields and gather straw for themselves.

## Exodus 5:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- cry, cry out, outcry
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- cry, cry out, outcry
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> However, you must still demand from them the same number of bricks as they made before. Do not accept any fewer, because they are lazy. That is why they are calling out and saying, 'Allow us to go and sacrifice to our God.'

### UST

<sup>8</sup> However, still force them to make the same number of bricks that they did before. Do not lower the number at all. They do not want to work. That is the reason they are asking me to let them go into the wilderness to worship their god.

## Exodus 5:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [burden](#), [burdened](#), [burdensome](#), [heavy](#), [hard work](#), [hard labor](#), [utterances](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [burden](#), [burdened](#), [burdensome](#), [heavy](#), [hard work](#), [hard labor](#), [utterances](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Increase the workload for the men so that they keep at it and pay no more attention to deceptive words.”

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Make the men work harder so that they will not have time to listen to lies from their leaders!”

## Exodus 5:10

### taskmasters

Egyptians whose job was to force the Israelites to do hard work. See how you translated this in [Exodus 1:11](#).

### I will no longer give you

The word “you” is plural and refers to the Israelite people. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [people](#), [people group](#),

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [people](#), [people group](#),

### ULT

**10** So the people’s taskmasters and foremen went out and informed the people. They said, “This is what Pharaoh says: ‘I will no longer give you any straw.

### UST

**10** So the slave bosses and Israelite assistants went to where the Israelite people were and said to them, “The king has said that he will no longer give you any straw.

## Exodus 5:11

### you can find...your workload

The word “you” is plural and refers to the Israelite people. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### You yourselves must go

Here “yourselves” emphasizes that the Egyptians will no longer help them. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

### your workload will not be reduced

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “you must continue to make the same number of bricks as before”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [walk, walked](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [walk, walked](#)

#### ULT

**11** You yourselves must go and get straw wherever you can find it, but your workload will not be reduced.”

#### UST

**11** So you must go and get straw where you can find it. But you must keep working to make the same number of bricks.”

## Exodus 5:12

### throughout all the land of Egypt

This is an generalization used to show the extra effort Israel made to meet Pharaoh's demands. Alternate translation: "to many places throughout Egypt" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### stubble

the part of a plant that is left over after harvest

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> So the people scattered throughout all the land of Egypt to gather stubble for straw.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> So the Israelite people went all over Egypt to find straw.

## Exodus 5:13

### taskmasters

Egyptians whose job was to force the Israelites to do hard work. See how you translated this in [Exodus 1:11](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [consume](#), [devour](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [consume](#), [devour](#)

#### ULT

**13** The taskmasters kept urging them and saying, "Finish your work, just as when straw was given to you."

#### UST

**13** The slave bosses kept telling them, "Do all the work you are assigned each day. Make the same number of bricks as you did before when we gave you straw!"



## Exodus 5:14

### Why have you not produced all the bricks required of you...in the past?

The taskmasters used this question to show they were angry with the lack of bricks. Alternate translation: "You are not producing enough bricks, either yesterday or today, as you did in the past!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- statute
- consume, devour

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- statute
- consume, devour

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Pharaoh's taskmasters beat the Israelite foremen, those same men whom they had put in charge of the workers. The taskmasters kept asking them, "Why have you not produced all the bricks required of you, either yesterday and today, as you used to do in the past?"

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> When they were not able to make enough bricks, the slave bosses working for Pharaoh beat the Israelite assistants with sticks. They asked them, "Why have all the men you are in charge of not been able to make the same number of bricks today as they did before?"

## Exodus 5:15

### cried out

“complained”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

**15** So the Israelite foremen came to Pharaoh and cried out to him. They said, “Why are you treating your servants this way?”

#### UST

**15** Then the Israelite assistants went to the king and cried out, “Your Majesty, why are you treating us this way?”

## Exodus 5:16

### they are still telling us, 'Make bricks!'

Here "they" refers to the Egyptian taskmasters.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

**16** No straw is being given to your servants anymore, but they are still telling us, 'Make bricks!' We, your servants, are even beaten now, but it is the fault of your own people."

#### UST

**16** Now they are not giving us any straw for making bricks, but they keep telling us to make more bricks. And they beat us. But it is because of your own slave bosses that we cannot make as many bricks as before!"

## Exodus 5:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- walk, walked

### ULT

**17** But Pharaoh said, “You are lazy! You are lazy! You say, ‘Allow us to go sacrifice to Yahweh.’

### UST

**17** But the king said, “You are lazy and do not want to work! That is why you keep saying, ‘Allow us to go to the desert to worship Yahweh.’

## Exodus 5:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

**18** So now go back to work. No more straw will be given to you, but you must still make the same number of bricks.”

### UST

**18** So get back to work! We are not going to give you any straw, but you must keep making the same number of bricks!”

## Exodus 5:19

### when they were told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “when Pharaoh told them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites

### ULT

**19** The Israelite foremen saw that they were in trouble when they were told, “You must not reduce the daily number of bricks.”

### UST

**19** The Israelite assistants knew that they were having a bad time because they had been told, “We are not going to lower the number of bricks you must make each day.”

## Exodus 5:20

### palace

This is a very large house that a king lives in.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> They met Moses and Aaron, who were standing outside the palace, as they went away from Pharaoh.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> As they left the king's palace, they met Aaron and Moses, who were waiting for them there.

## Exodus 5:21

### you have made us offensive

The Egyptians responded to the Israelites the same way they would respond to a foul odor. Alternate translation: “you have caused them to hate us” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### have put a sword in their hand to kill us

Here “a sword” represents an opportunity to destroy enemies. Alternate translation: “have given them a reason to kill us” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [hand](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [hand](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**21** They said to Moses and Aaron, “May Yahweh look at you and punish you, because you have made us offensive in the sight of Pharaoh and his servants. You have put a sword in their hand to kill us.”

### UST

**21** They said to Aaron and Moses, “May Yahweh see what you two have done! May he punish you because you have caused the king and his officials to hate us! You have given them a reason to kill us!”



## Exodus 5:22

### Lord, why have you caused trouble for this people?

This question shows how disappointed he was that the Egyptians were treating the Israelites even more harshly now. Alternate translation: "Lord, I am sorry that you have caused this trouble for this people." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Why did you send me in the first place?

This question shows how disappointed Moses was that God had sent him to Egypt. Alternate translation: "I wish you had never sent me here!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,
- afflict, affliction, distress
- return

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,
- afflict, affliction, distress
- return

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Moses went back to Yahweh and said, "Lord, why have you caused trouble for this people? Why did you send me in the first place?"

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Moses left them and prayed to Yahweh again, saying, "O Yahweh, why have you caused all these evil things to happen to your people? And why did you send me here?"

## Exodus 5:23

### to speak to him in your name

The word “name” here represents the message of God. Alternate translation: “to give him your message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- name
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- afflict, affliction, distress
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

#### Translation Words - UST

- name
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- afflict, affliction, distress
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Ever since I came to Pharaoh to speak to him in your name, he has caused trouble for this people, and you have not set your people free at all.”

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> Ever since I went to the king and told him what you told me to say, he has treated your people very badly, and you have not done anything to help them!”

## **Exodus 6**

### **Exodus 6 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Promised Land**

According to the covenant Yahweh made with Abraham, Egypt is not the home of the Hebrew people. It is the Promised Land in Canaan. The people are to return home to their land. (See: [covenant](#) and [Promised Land](#))

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **Let my people go**

This is a very important statement. Moses does not ask Pharaoh for permission to “let go” of the Hebrew people. Instead, he is demanding that Pharaoh free the Hebrew people.

## Exodus 6:1

### my strong hand

The word “hand” here represents God’s actions or works. Alternate translation: “the power I show in my works” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Now you will see what I will do to Pharaoh. You will see this, for he will let them go because of my strong hand. Because of my strong hand, he will drive them out of his land.”

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Now you will see what I will do to the king and his people. I will make him let my people go. In fact, by my power I will force him to chase them from his land!”

## Exodus 6:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Moses

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> God spoke to Moses and said to him,  
"I am Yahweh.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> God also said to Moses, "I am Yahweh.

## Exodus 6:3

### I appeared to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob

"I showed myself to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob"

### I was not known to them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They did not know me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Almighty](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Almighty](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> I appeared to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob as God Almighty; but by my name, Yahweh, I was not known to them.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> I am the one who appeared to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob and told them that I was God Almighty, but I did not tell them that my name was Yahweh.

## Exodus 6:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- Canaan, Canaanite
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- Canaan, Canaanite
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> I also established my covenant with them, in order to give them the land of Canaan, the land where they lived as non-citizens, the land in which they wandered about.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> I also made my covenant with them, promising to give them the land of Canaan. That was the land in which they were living as foreigners.

## Exodus 6:5

### groaning

This means making sad sounds because of pain and suffering.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- covenant
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- covenant
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Moreover, I have heard the groaning of the Israelites whom the Egyptians have enslaved, and I have called to mind my covenant.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Furthermore, I have heard the Israelite people groan because of the hard work that the Egyptians have been making them do as their slaves. I have thought about the covenant that I made.



## Exodus 6:6

### say to the Israelites

This is a command from Yahweh to Moses. "Yahweh told Moses to say to the Israelites"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

#### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- son
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Therefore, say to the Israelites, 'I am Yahweh. I will bring you out from slavery under the Egyptians, and I will free you from their power. I will rescue you with a display of my power, and with mighty acts of judgment.'

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> So tell the Israelite people that I said this: 'I am Yahweh. I will free you from the burdens of heavy work that the Egyptians have forced upon you. I will free you from being their slaves. With my great power and by punishing them very harshly, I will save you.'

## Exodus 6:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> I will take you to myself as my people, and I will be your God. You will know that I am Yahweh your God, who brought you out from slavery under the Egyptians.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> I will cause you to become my own people, and I will be your God, the one you worship. You will truly know that I am Yahweh God, the one who has freed you from the burdens of work as slaves of the Egyptians.

## Exodus 6:8

### I swore

"I promised" or "I said I would"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- hand
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- hand
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> I will bring you into the land that I swore to give to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob. I will give it to you as a possession. I am Yahweh."

### UST

<sup>8</sup> I will bring you to the land that I swore to give to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob. You will live in it forever. I, Yahweh, am promising this."

## Exodus 6:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- spirit, spiritual
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- spirit, spiritual
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Moses

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> When Moses told this to the Israelites, they would not listen to him because of their discouragement about their harsh slavery.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Moses told that to the Israelite people, but they did not believe what he said. They were very sad because of the hard work they were made to do as slaves.

## Exodus 6:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses,

## Exodus 6:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- king, kingdom, kingship

### ULT

**11** "Go tell Pharaoh, king of Egypt, to let the people of Israel go from his land."

### UST

**11** "Go and tell the king of Egypt again that he must allow the Israelite people to leave his land!"

## Exodus 6:12

### If the Israelites have not listened to me, why will Pharaoh listen to me, since I am not good at speaking?

Moses asked this question hoping God would change His mind about using Moses. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Since the Israelites did not listen to me, neither will Pharaoh, because I am not good at speaking!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Moses said to Yahweh, "If the Israelites have not listened to me, why will Pharaoh listen to me, since I am not good at speaking?"

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> But Moses said to Yahweh, "Please listen to me. Even the Israelite people have not paid attention to what I told them. I am a poor speaker. So why should the king pay attention to what I tell him?"

## Exodus 6:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- king, kingdom, kingship

### ULT

**13** Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron. He gave them a command for the Israelites and for Pharaoh, king of Egypt, to bring the Israelites out of the land of Egypt.

### UST

**13** But Yahweh spoke to Aaron and Moses, "Tell the Israelite people and the king of Egypt that I have called you two to lead the Israelite people out of Egypt."



## Exodus 6:14

### the heads of their fathers' houses

Here “heads” refers to the original ancestors of the clan. Alternate translation: “the ancestors of the clans”

### Hanok, Pallu, Hezron, and Karmi

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Reuben
- Reuben
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- family, household
- head
- firstborn
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Reuben
- Reuben
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- family, household
- head
- firstborn
- house

#### ULT

**14** These were the heads of their fathers' houses: The sons of Reuben, the firstborn of Israel, were Hanok, Pallu, Hezron, and Karmi. These were the clan ancestors of Reuben.

#### UST

**14** Now here is a list of the ancestors of Moses and Aaron. The sons of Reuben, who was Jacob's oldest son, were: Hanok, Pallu, Hezron, and Carmi. They were ancestors of the clans that have those same names.

## Exodus 6:15

### Jemuel, Jamin, Ohad, Jakin, Zohar, and Shaul

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [family, household](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [family, household](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> The sons of Simeon were Jemuel, Jamin, Ohad, Jakin, Zohar, and Shaul—the son of a Canaanite woman. These were the clan ancestors of Simeon.

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> The sons of Simeon were: Jemuel, Jamin, Ohad, Jakin, Zohar, and Shaul. Shaul's mother was a woman from the land of Canaan. They also were ancestors of clans that have those same names.

## Exodus 6:16

### Gershon...Merari

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### 137 years old

“one hundred and thirty-seven years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)

### ULT

**16** Here are listed the names of the sons of Levi, together with their descendants. They were Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. Levi lived until he was 137 years old.

### UST

**16** These are the names of the sons of Levi, in the order in which they were born: Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. Levi was 137 years old when he died.

## Exodus 6:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- clan

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- clan

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> The sons of Gershon were Libni and Shimei.

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> The sons of Gershon were Libni and Shimei. They were ancestors of clans that have those names.

## Exodus 6:18

### Amram...Uzziel

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### 133 years old

“one hundred and thirty-three years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> The sons of Kohath were Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. Kohath lived until he was 133 years old.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> The sons of Kohath were Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. Kohath was 133 years old when he died.

## Exodus 6:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- family, household

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- family, household

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> The sons of Merari were Mahli and Mushi. These became the clan ancestors of the Levites, together with their descendants.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> The sons of Merari were Mahli and Mushi. All these were the ancestors of the clans that descended from Levi, in the order in which his sons were born.

## Exodus 6:20

### 137 years

“one hundred and thirty-seven years” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Amram married Jochebed, his father's sister. She bore him Aaron and Moses. Amram lived 137 years and then died.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> Amram married his father's sister, Jochebed. She was the mother of Aaron and Moses. Amram lived 137 years.

## Exodus 6:21

### Izhar...Korah...Zichri

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> The sons of Izhar were Korah, Nepheg, and Zichri.

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> The sons of Izhar were Korah, Nepheg, and Zichri.



## Exodus 6:22

### Uzziel...Mishael...Sithri

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> The sons of Uzziel were Mishael, Elzaphan, and Sithri.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> The sons of Uzziel were Mishael, Elzaphan, and Sithri.

## Exodus 6:23

### Nadab...Ithamar

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Aaron](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Aaron](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Aaron married Elisheba, daughter of Amminadab, sister of Nahshon. She bore him Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> Aaron married Elisheba. She was the daughter of Amminadab and sister of Nahshon. Elisheba gave birth to four sons, Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.

## Exodus 6:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- family, household

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- family, household

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> The sons of Korah were Assir, Elkanah, and Abiasaph. These were the clan ancestors of the Korahites.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> The sons of Korah were Assir, Elkanah, and Abiasaph. They were the ancestors of the Korahite people.

## Exodus 6:25

### Phinehas

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### These were the heads of the fathers' houses

The word “heads” here represents family leaders. Alternate translation: “These were the leaders of the families” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Aaron
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- head

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Aaron
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- head

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Eleazar, Aaron's son, married one of the daughters of Putiel. She bore him Phinehas. These were the heads of the fathers' houses among the Levites, together with their descendants.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> Aaron's son Eleazar married one of the daughters of Putiel, and she gave birth to Phinehas. That ends the list of the families and clans that were descended from Levi.

## Exodus 6:26

### by their groups of fighting men

“one tribe at a time” or “one family group after another”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> These two men were the Aaron and Moses to whom Yahweh said, “Bring out the Israelites from the land of Egypt, by their groups of fighting men.”

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> Aaron and Moses were the ones to whom Yahweh said, “Lead all the tribes of the Israelite people out of Egypt.”

## Exodus 6:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- king, kingdom, kingship

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Aaron and Moses spoke to Pharaoh, king of Egypt, to allow them bring out the Israelites from Egypt. These were the same Moses and Aaron.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> They were the ones who spoke to the king of Egypt in order to bring the Israelite people out of Egypt.

## Exodus 6:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> When Yahweh spoke to Moses in the land of Egypt,

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> On the day that Yahweh spoke to Moses in Egypt,

## Exodus 6:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- king, kingdom, kingship

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> he said to him, "I am Yahweh. Say to Pharaoh, king of Egypt, everything that I will tell you."

### UST

<sup>29</sup> he said, "I am Yahweh. You must tell the king everything that I say to you."



## Exodus 6:30

### I am not good...why will Pharaoh listen to me?

Moses asks this question hoping to change God's mind. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am not good...Pharaoh will certainly not listen to me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> But Moses said to Yahweh, "I am not good at speaking, so why will Pharaoh listen to me?"

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> But Moses said to Yahweh, "Please listen to me. I am not a good speaker. So why should the king listen to what I tell him?"

## **Exodus 7**

### **Exodus 7 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Miracles**

When Yahweh had Moses perform miracles, Pharaoh's men were able to copy these miracles. It is unknown how they were able to do this, but since it was not from Yahweh, they were probably done under some evil power. (See: [miracle, wonder, sign](#) and [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#))

#### **Pharaoh's hard heart**

Pharaoh's heart is often described as hard in this chapter. This means that his heart was not open or willing to understand Yahweh's instructions. When his heart was hardened, it became less and less receptive to Yahweh.

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **Let my people go**

This is a very important statement. Moses does not ask Pharaoh for permission to "let go" of the Hebrew people. Instead, he is demanding that Pharaoh free the Hebrew people.

## Exodus 7:1

### I have made you like a god

"I will cause Pharaoh to consider you as a god"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- Yahweh
- Moses

#### Translation Words - UST

- brother
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- Yahweh
- Moses

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, "See, I have made you like a god to Pharaoh. Aaron your brother will be your prophet.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Listen to me. I will cause the king to see you as a god, and Aaron will be like a prophet because he will speak for you.

## Exodus 7:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> You will say everything that I command you to say. Aaron your brother will speak to Pharaoh so that he will let the people of Israel go from his land.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> You must tell everything I command you to your older brother Aaron, and he will tell it all to the king. He must tell the king to let the Israelite people leave his land.

## Exodus 7:3

### harden Pharaoh's heart

Here “heart” refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated this in [Exodus 4:21](#).

Alternate translation: “will cause Pharaoh to be stubborn” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### many signs...many wonders

The words “signs” and “wonders” mean basically the same thing. God uses them to emphasize the greatness of what he will do in Egypt. (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#)
- [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#)
- [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But I will harden Pharaoh's heart, and I will display many signs of my power, many wonders, in the land of Egypt.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> But I will make the king stubborn. Because of this, even though I will do many kinds of miracles here in Egypt,

## Exodus 7:4

### put my hand on

The words “my hand” represent God’s great power. Alternate translation: “use my power against” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But Pharaoh will not listen to you, so I will put my hand on Egypt and bring out my groups of fighting men, my people, the descendants of Israel, out of the land of Egypt by great acts of punishment.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> the king will not believe what you say. Then I will punish the people of Egypt very severely, and I will lead the tribes of my Israelite people out of Egypt.

## Exodus 7:5

### reach out with my hand on

The words “my hand” represent God’s great power. Alternate translation: “show my powerful acts against” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> The Egyptians will know that I am Yahweh when I reach out with my hand on Egypt and bring out the Israelites from among them.”

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Then, when I show my great power to the Egyptian people and bring the Israelite people out from among them, they will know that I am Yahweh, the all-powerful God.”

## Exodus 7:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Moses and Aaron did so; they did just as Yahweh commanded them.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Aaron and Moses did everything that Yahweh told them to do.



## Exodus 7:7

### Aaron eighty-three years old

"Aaron was eighty-three years old" (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Moses was eighty years old, and Aaron eighty-three years old when they spoke to Pharaoh.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> At that time, Moses was 80 years old, and Aaron was 83 years old.

## Exodus 7:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Yahweh said to Moses and to Aaron,

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron,

## Exodus 7:9

**When Pharaoh says to you, 'Do a miracle,' then you will say to Aaron, 'Take your staff and throw it down before Pharaoh, so that it may become a snake.'**

This could be stated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "When Pharaoh tells you to do a miracle, then you will tell Aaron to take his staff and throw it down before Pharaoh, so that it may become a snake" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [miracle, wonder, sign](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [miracle, wonder, sign](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> "When Pharaoh says to you, 'Do a miracle,' then you will say to Aaron, 'Take your staff and throw it down before Pharaoh, so that it may become a snake.'"

### UST

<sup>9</sup> "If the king says to you, 'Show me that God sent you by performing a miracle,' then say to Aaron, 'Throw your staff down in front of the king in order that it may become a snake.'"

## Exodus 7:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Then Moses and Aaron went to Pharaoh, and they did just as Yahweh had commanded. Aaron threw down his staff before Pharaoh and his servants, and it became a snake.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> So Aaron and Moses went to the king and did what Yahweh told them to do. Aaron threw his staff down in front of the king and his officials, and it became a snake.

## Exodus 7:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- wise men, advisor
- declare, proclaim, announce

### Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- wise men, advisor
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

**11** Then Pharaoh also called for his wise men and sorcerers. They did the same thing by their magic.

### UST

**11** Then the king called his sorcerers and men who did magic. They did the same thing, using their magic.

## Exodus 7:12

### swallowed up

“ate up” or “devoured”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Aaron](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Aaron](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Each man threw down his staff, and the staffs became snakes. But Aaron's staff swallowed up their snakes.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> They all threw down their staffs, and the staffs became snakes. But Aaron's staff, which had become a snake, swallowed up all their snakes!

## Exodus 7:13

### Pharaoh's heart was hardened

Here "heart" refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. Alternate translation: "Pharaoh became more defiant" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

**13** Pharaoh's heart was hardened, and he did not listen, just as Yahweh had foretold.

#### UST

**13** But the king continued to be stubborn, just as Yahweh had said he would, and he would not believe what Aaron and Moses said.

## Exodus 7:14

### Pharaoh's heart is hard

Here "heart" refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated this in [Exodus 7:13](#). Alternate translation: "Pharaoh is stubborn" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),

#### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),

#### ULT

**14** Yahweh said to Moses, "Pharaoh's heart is hard, and he refuses to let the people go.

#### UST

**14** Then Yahweh said to Moses, "The king is very stubborn. He refuses to allow my people to go.



## Exodus 7:15

### when he goes out to the water

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “when he goes down to the Nile River to bathe” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- walk, walked
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- hand
- walk, walked
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**15** Go to Pharaoh in the morning when he goes out to the water. Stand on the riverbank to meet him, and take in your hand the staff that had turned into a snake.

#### UST

**15** So tomorrow morning, go to him as he is going down to the Nile River to bathe. Wait for him on the riverbank. When he comes out of the water, show him the staff, the one that had become a snake.

## Exodus 7:16

### Say to him

“Say to Pharaoh”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- desert, wilderness
- people, people group,

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- desert, wilderness
- people, people group,

#### ULT

**16** Say to him, ‘Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews, has sent me to you to say, “Let my people go, so that they may worship me in the wilderness. Until now you have not listened.”

#### UST

**16** Say to him, ‘Yahweh God, the one we Hebrews worship, sent me to you to tell you to let my people go in order that they may worship him in the desert. We told you that, but you have not listened to us.

## Exodus 7:17

### strike the water

“hit the water”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- hand
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- blood
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- hand
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**17** Yahweh says this: “By this you will know that I am Yahweh. I am going to strike the water of the Nile River with the staff that is in my hand, and the river will be turned to blood.

#### UST

**17** So now Yahweh says this: “This is the way you will know that I am Yahweh, the all-powerful God. I am going to strike the water that is in the Nile River with the staff that is in my hand. When I do that, the water will become blood.

## Exodus 7:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**18** The fish that are in the river will die, and the river will stink. The Egyptians will not be able to drink water from the river.'""

### UST

**18** Then the fish in the Nile River will die, and the water in the river will smell bad. The Egyptians will not be able to drink water from the river.'""

## Exodus 7:19

### throughout all

“in every part of”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- blood
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- hand
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### Translation Words - UST

- blood
- blood
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- hand
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### ULT

**19** Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Say to Aaron, ‘Take your staff and reach out with your hand over the waters of Egypt, and over their rivers, streams, pools, and all their ponds, so that their water may become blood. Do this so that there will be blood throughout all the land of Egypt, even in containers of wood and stone.’”

#### UST

**19** Yahweh said to Moses, “When you are talking to the king, say to Aaron, ‘Hold your staff out as though you were holding it over all the water in Egypt—over the rivers, the canals, the ponds, and over the pools of water, in order that all of it may become blood.’ When Aaron does that, there will be blood throughout Egypt, even in wooden jars and in stone jars.”

## Exodus 7:20

### in the river

The name of the river may be made explicit. Alternate translation: “in the Nile River” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [blood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [exalt, exalted, exaltation](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [blood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [exalt, exalted, exaltation](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### ULT

**20** Moses and Aaron did as Yahweh commanded. Aaron raised the staff and struck the water in the river, in the sight of Pharaoh and his servants. All the water in the river turned to blood.

#### UST

**20** So Aaron and Moses did what Yahweh told them to do. As the king and his officials were watching, Aaron lifted up his staff and then struck the water in the Nile River with it. All the water in the river turned to blood.

## Exodus 7:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

**21** The fish in the river died, and the river began to stink. The Egyptians could not drink water from the river, and the blood was everywhere in the land of Egypt.

### UST

**21** Then all the fish died. The water smelled bad, with the result that the Egyptians could not drink water from the river. Everywhere in Egypt the water became red like blood.

## Exodus 7:22

### Pharaoh's heart was hardened

Here "heart" refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated this in [Exodus 7:13](#).

Alternate translation: "Pharaoh became more defiant" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

#### ULT

**22** But the magicians of Egypt did the same thing with their magic. So Pharaoh's heart was hardened, and he refused to listen to Moses and Aaron, just as Yahweh had said would happen.

#### UST

**22** But the Egyptian men who did magic did the same thing using their magic. So the king remained stubborn, and he would not listen to what Aaron and Moses said, just as Yahweh said would happen.



## Exodus 7:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- heart
- house

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Then Pharaoh turned and went into his house. He did not even pay attention to this.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Then the king turned and went back to his palace, and he did not think any more about it.

## Exodus 7:24

### All the Egyptians

The word “all” here is a generalization that means “many.” Alternate translation: “Many of the Egyptians” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> All the Egyptians dug around the river for water to drink, but they could not drink the water of the river itself.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> All the Egyptians dug into the ground near the Nile River to get water to drink because they could not drink the water from the river.

## Exodus 7:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Seven days passed after Yahweh had attacked the river.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> Then one week passed after Yahweh turned the water in the Nile River into blood.

## **Exodus 8**

### **Exodus 8 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Pharaoh's hard heart**

Pharaoh's heart is often described as hard in this chapter. This means that his heart was not open or willing to understand Yahweh's instructions. When his heart was hardened, it became less and less receptive to Yahweh.

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **Let my people go**

This is a very important statement. Moses does not ask Pharaoh for permission to “let go” of the Hebrew people. Instead, he is demanding that Pharaoh free the Hebrew people.

## Exodus 8:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses, "Go to Pharaoh and tell him, 'Yahweh says this: "Let my people go so that they may worship me.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Go back to the king and tell him, 'Yahweh says that you must let my people go in order that they can worship me in the desert.

## Exodus 8:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer

### Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> If you refuse to let them go, I will afflict all your country with frogs.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> But if you do not let them go, I will punish you by sending frogs to cover your country.

## Exodus 8:3

### The river

“the Nile River” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### kneading bowls

These are bowls in which bread is made.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The river will swarm with frogs. They will come up and go into your house, your bedroom, and your bed. They will go into your servants' houses. They will go onto your people, into your ovens, and into your kneading bowls.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Not only will the Nile River be full of frogs, but also the frogs will come up out of the river into your house. They will come into your bedroom and onto your bed. They will be in the houses of your leaders and all the rest of your people. They will even get into your ovens and your pans for mixing the materials for baking bread.

## Exodus 8:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> The frogs will attack you, your people, and all your servants.'"

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> The frogs will jump up on you, your officials, and on all the rest of your people.'"



## Exodus 8:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- hand
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- hand
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, "Say to Aaron, 'Reach out with your hand and your staff over the rivers, the streams, and the pools, and bring the frogs up over the land of Egypt.'"

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Yahweh also said to Moses, "Say this to Aaron: 'Hold your staff in your hand and stretch it out as though you were stretching it over the river, the canals, and the pools, and cause frogs to come up from all this water and to cover the land of Egypt.'"

## Exodus 8:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- hand
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- hand
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Aaron reached out with his hand over Egypt's waters, and the frogs came up and covered the land of Egypt.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> After Moses told that to him, Aaron stretched out his hand as though he were stretching it over all the water in Egypt. Then the frogs came up from the water and covered Egypt.

## Exodus 8:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But the magicians did the same with their magic; they brought up frogs over the land of Egypt.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> But the men who did magic did the same thing, and they caused more frogs to come up from the water onto the land.

## Exodus 8:8

### Then Pharaoh called for Moses and Aaron

"Then Pharaoh sent for Moses and Aaron"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then Pharaoh called for Moses and Aaron and said, "Pray to Yahweh for him to take away the frogs from me and my people. Then I will let the people go, that they may sacrifice to him."

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then the king called Moses and said, "Ask Yahweh to take away these frogs from me and my people. After that happens, I will allow your people to go to worship Yahweh."

## Exodus 8:9

### You can have the privilege of telling me when I should pray for you

"You can choose when I will pray for you" or "You can choose the time I should pray for you"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [cut off](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [cut off](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Moses said to Pharaoh, "You can have the privilege of telling me when I should pray for you, your servants, and your people, so that the frogs may be removed from you and your houses and stay only in the river."

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Moses said to the king, "I will be glad to pray for you, for your officials, and for the rest of your people. I will ask Yahweh to get rid of the frogs from all your houses. The only frogs left will be those in the Nile River. Just tell me when I should pray."

## Exodus 8:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Pharaoh said, "Tomorrow." Moses said, "Let it be as you say, so that you may know that there is no one like Yahweh, our God.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> The king replied, "Tomorrow." So Moses said, "I will do what you say, and then you will know that Yahweh God, the one we worship, is the only true god, and that there is no other god like him.

## Exodus 8:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**11** The frogs will go from you, your houses, your servants, and your people. They will stay only in the river."

### UST

**11** The frogs will leave you, your officials, and all the rest of your people. The only ones left will be in the Nile River."

## Exodus 8:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Moses and Aaron went out from Pharaoh. Then Moses cried out to Yahweh concerning the frogs that he had brought on Pharaoh.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Then Moses and Aaron left the king. Moses prayed to Yahweh, asking him to take away all the frogs he had brought to the king's land.



## Exodus 8:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- house

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Yahweh did as Moses asked: The frogs died in the houses, courts, and fields.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Yahweh did just what Moses asked him to do. As a result, all the frogs in the houses, in their courtyards, and in their fields died.

## Exodus 8:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- earth, earthen, earthly

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> The people gathered them together in heaps, and the land stank.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> The people gathered together all the dead frogs into big piles, and the land smelled very bad.

## Exodus 8:15

### he hardened his heart

“Pharaoh hardened his heart.” Here “hardened” means that he became stubborn. (See: [Idiom](#))

### just as Yahweh had said that he would do

“just as Yahweh had said Pharaoh would do”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**15** But when Pharaoh saw that there was relief, he hardened his heart and did not listen to Moses and Aaron, just as Yahweh had said that he would do.

### UST

**15** But when the king saw that the problem was ended, he became stubborn again. Just as Yahweh had said would happen, the king did not do what Aaron and Moses told him.

## Exodus 8:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

**16** Yahweh said to Moses, "Say to Aaron, 'Reach out with your staff and strike the dust on the ground, that it may become gnats throughout all the land of Egypt.'"

### UST

**16** Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Tell Aaron to strike the ground with his staff. When he does that, all the fine particles of earth will become gnats all over the land of Egypt."

## Exodus 8:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- hand
- livestock, animals
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- hand
- livestock, animals
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

**17** They did so: Aaron reached out with his hand and his staff. He struck the dust on the ground. Gnats came onto man and beast. All the dust on the ground became gnats throughout the whole land of Egypt.

### UST

**17** Moses and Aaron obeyed Yahweh. Aaron struck the ground with his staff, and all over Egypt the fine particles of earth became gnats. The gnats covered the people and all their animals.

## Exodus 8:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [livestock, animals](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [livestock, animals](#)

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> The magicians tried with their magic to produce gnats, but they could not. There were gnats on man and beast.

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> The men who worked magic tried to cause gnats to appear, but they could not do it. So the gnats stayed on the people and on their animals.

## Exodus 8:19

### This is the finger of God

The words “finger of God” represent the power of God. Alternate translation: “This is the powerful work of God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Pharaoh’s heart was hardened

Here “heart” refers to Pharaoh. See how you translated this in [Exodus 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “Pharaoh became more defiant” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**19** Then the magicians said to Pharaoh, “This is the finger of God.” But Pharaoh’s heart was hardened, so he refused to listen to them. It was just as Yahweh had said Pharaoh would do.

### UST

**19** The men who worked magic said to the king, “It is God who has done this with his power!” But the king continued to be stubborn, and he would not pay attention to what Aaron and Moses said, just as Yahweh had said.

## Exodus 8:20

### stand in front of Pharaoh

“present yourself to Pharaoh”

### Let my people go

“set my people free”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, “Get up early in the morning and stand in front of Pharaoh as he goes out to the river. Say to him, ‘Yahweh says this: “Let my people go so that they may worship me.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Get up early tomorrow morning. Go down to the river and wait for the king. When he comes to bathe, say to him, ‘This is what Yahweh says to you: “Let my people go, in order that they may worship me in the desert.



## Exodus 8:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- house

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> But if you do not let my people go, I will send swarms of flies on you, your servants, and your people, and into your houses. The Egyptians' houses will be full of swarms of flies, and even the ground on which they stand will be full of flies.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> I warn you that if you do not let my people go, I will send swarms of flies to you. They will come on you, on your officials, and on the rest of your people. The houses of all you Egyptians will be full of flies. They will even cover the ground on which you will be standing.

## Exodus 8:22

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak to Pharaoh through Moses.

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**22** But on that day I will treat the land of Goshen differently, the land in which my people are living, so that no swarms of flies will be there. This will happen so that you may know that I am Yahweh in the midst of this land.

### UST

**22** But when that happens, I will treat the region of Goshen differently, because my people live there. There will be no swarms of flies there. In that way, you will know that I, Yahweh, am doing these things here in this land.

## Exodus 8:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> I will make a distinction between my people and your people. This sign of my power will take place tomorrow.'""

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> I will show you how I act toward my people and how I act toward your people. This miracle is going to happen tomorrow!'""

## Exodus 8:24

### the land was ruined because of the swarms of flies

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "the swarms of flies devastated the land" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- house

#### ULT

**24** Yahweh did so, and thick swarms of flies came into Pharaoh's house and into his servants' houses. Throughout the whole land of Egypt, the land was ruined because of the swarms of flies.

#### UST

**24** Early the next morning, Moses told that to the king, but the king would not listen. So Yahweh did what he said he would do. He sent great swarms of flies into the palace of the king and into the houses of his officials. The whole country of Egypt was ruined by the flies.

## Exodus 8:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Moses
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- walk, walked
- declare, proclaim, announce

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Moses
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- walk, walked
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Pharaoh called for Moses and for Aaron and said, "Go, sacrifice to your God in our own land."

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Then the king called Aaron and Moses and said, "You Israelite people can go and worship your god, but you must do it here in this land."

## Exodus 8:26

### right before their eyes

This was a customary way of saying “in the presence of someone.”  
Alternate translation: “in their presence” (See: [Idiom](#))

### will they not stone us?

Moses asks this question to show Pharaoh the Egyptians would allow the Israelites to worship Yahweh. Alternate translation: “they will certainly stone us!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### ULT

**26** Moses said, “It is not right for us to do so, for the sacrifices we make to Yahweh our God are something disgusting to the Egyptians. If we make sacrifices right before their eyes that are disgusting to the Egyptians, will they not stone us?”

### UST

**26** But Moses replied, “It would not be right for us to do that because we will offer sacrifices that are very offensive to the Egyptian people. If we offer sacrifices that the Egyptian people do not like, they will kill us by throwing stones at us!”

## Exodus 8:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- desert, wilderness
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- desert, wilderness
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> No, it is a three days' journey into the wilderness that we must make, in order to sacrifice to Yahweh our God, as he commands us."

### UST

<sup>27</sup> We need to travel for three days into the wilderness. There we will offer sacrifices to Yahweh, the God we worship, just as he commands us."

## Exodus 8:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- desert, wilderness

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- desert, wilderness

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Pharaoh said, "I will allow you to go and sacrifice to Yahweh your God in the wilderness. Only you must not go very far away. Pray for me."

### UST

<sup>28</sup> So the king said, "I will let your people go to offer sacrifices to Yahweh, your god, in the desert. But you must not go very far. Now pray for me!"



## Exodus 8:29

### you must not deal deceitfully any more by not letting our people go

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “you must begin to deal truthfully with us and let our people go” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### But you must not deal deceitfully

“But you must not deceive us” or “But you must not lie to us”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- Moses
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- Moses
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Moses said, “As soon as I go out from you, I will pray to Yahweh that the swarms of flies may leave you, Pharaoh, and your servants and people tomorrow. But you must not deal deceitfully any more by not letting our people go to sacrifice to Yahweh.”

### UST

<sup>29</sup> Moses said, “Listen to me! After I leave you, I will pray to Yahweh, asking that tomorrow he will cause the swarms of flies to leave you, your officials, and the rest of your people. But do not lie to us again by refusing to let our people go to offer sacrifices to Yahweh!”

## Exodus 8:30

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Moses went out from Pharaoh and prayed to Yahweh.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> Then Moses left the king and prayed to Yahweh.

## Exodus 8:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Yahweh did as Moses asked; and he removed the swarms of flies from Pharaoh, his servants, and his people. Not one remained.

#### UST

<sup>31</sup> Yahweh did what Moses asked. He got rid of the swarms of flies from around the king, his officials, and the rest of his people. No flies remained.

## Exodus 8:32

### Pharaoh hardened his heart

Here “heart” refers to Pharaoh. See how you translated this in [Exodus 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “Pharaoh became more defiant” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> But Pharaoh hardened his heart this time also, and he did not let the people go.

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> But the king was stubborn this time also, and he did not allow the Israelite people to go.

## **Exodus 9**

### **Exodus 9 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Pharaoh's hard heart**

Pharaoh's heart is often described as hard in this chapter. This means that his heart was not open or willing to understand Yahweh's instructions. When his heart was hardened, it became less and less receptive to Yahweh.

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **Let my people go**

This is a very important statement. Moses does not ask Pharaoh for permission to “let go” of the Hebrew people. Instead, he is demanding that Pharaoh free the Hebrew people.

## Exodus 9:1

### General Information:

Yahweh continues talking with Moses about dealing with Pharaoh and bringing the Hebrew people out of Egypt.

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- Moses
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- Moses
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Go to Pharaoh and tell him, 'Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews, says this: "Let my people go so that they may worship me."

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Go to the king and say to him, 'This is what Yahweh, the one we Hebrews worship, says: "Allow my people to go, in order that they may worship me."

## Exodus 9:2

### if you refuse to let them go, if you still keep them back

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. They will emphasize to Pharaoh what will happen if Pharaoh does this. Alternate translation: “if you continue refusing to let them go” (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> But if you refuse to let them go, if you still keep them back,

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> If you still refuse to let them go,

## Exodus 9:3

### then Yahweh's hand will be on your cattle

The word “hand” here represents Yahweh's power to afflict their animals with disease. Alternate translation: “then the power of Yahweh will afflict your cattle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### on your cattle

The word “your” here refers to all the people of Egypt who owned cattle.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> then Yahweh's hand will be on your cattle in the fields and on the horses, donkeys, camels, herds, and flocks, and it will cause a terrible disease.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> I warn you that I will punish you with my power by sending a terrible disease on all your livestock to make them sick and die—on your horses, on your donkeys, on your camels, on your cattle, and on your flocks of sheep and goats.



## Exodus 9:4

### Israel's cattle

Here "Israel" refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "the cattle belonging to the people of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Egypt's cattle

Here "Egypt" refers to the people of Egypt. Alternate translation: "the cattle belonging to the people of Egypt" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Yahweh will treat Israel's cattle and Egypt's cattle differently and no animal that belongs to the Israelites will die.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> But I, Yahweh, will not treat the livestock that belongs to the Israelite people the same as yours. You will see that none of the livestock that belongs to the Israelite people will die."

## Exodus 9:5

### fixed a time

“set a time” or “appointed a time”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- feast, feasting

#### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- feast, feasting

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Yahweh has fixed a time; he has said,  
“It is tomorrow that I will do this thing in  
the land.””

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Tell Pharaoh that I will do this thing in  
the land tomorrow.””

## Exodus 9:6

### All the cattle of Egypt died

This is exaggerated to emphasize the seriousness of the event. There were still some animals alive that were afflicted by later plagues. However, it may be best to translate this with the word “All.” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### cattle of Egypt

Here “Egypt” refers to the people of Egypt. Alternate translation: “the cattle belonging to the people of Egypt” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Yahweh did this the next day: All the cattle of Egypt died, but none of the Israelites' animals died, not one animal.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> The next day Yahweh did what he said that he would do. A terrible disease came upon all of the Egyptians' livestock, and all of the livestock died. But none of the Israelite livestock died.

## Exodus 9:7

### Pharaoh investigated

Pharaoh collected facts about the situation.

### behold

The word “behold” here shows that Pharaoh was surprised by what he saw.

### his heart was stubborn

Here “heart” refers to Pharaoh. Alternate translation: “he refused to change his mind” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Pharaoh investigated, and, behold, not even one animal of the Israelites died. But his heart was stubborn, so he did not let the people go.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> The king sent men to look at what happened, and they were surprised to see that none of the Israelite animals had died. But after they told that to the king, he continued to be stubborn, and he did not let the Israelite people go.

## Exodus 9:8

### kiln

a furnace

#### Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Moses
- Aaron

#### Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Moses
- Aaron

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses and to Aaron, "Take some handfuls of ashes from a kiln. You, Moses, must throw the ashes up into the air while Pharaoh is watching.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then Yahweh said to Aaron and Moses, "Take a few handfuls of ashes from a furnace. Moses will throw them up into the air in front of the king.

## Exodus 9:9

### fine

very small

### to break out on

“to quickly appear on”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> They will become fine dust over all the land of Egypt. They will cause blisters and sores to break out on people and animals throughout all the land of Egypt.”

### UST

<sup>9</sup> The ashes will spread all over the country of Egypt like fine dust. Everywhere in the land, the ashes will cause boils to be upon both the Egyptian people and their animals.”

## Exodus 9:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Moses
- livestock, animals

### Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Moses
- livestock, animals

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> So Moses and Aaron took ashes from a kiln and stood in front of Pharaoh. Then Moses threw the ashes up into the air. The ashes caused blisters and sores to break out on people and animals.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> So they got some ashes and went and stood in front of the king. Moses threw the ashes up into the air. The ashes spread all over, causing boils to be upon both the Egyptian people and their animals. All the boils became open sores.

## Exodus 9:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

**11** The magicians could not resist Moses because of the blisters, because the blisters were on them and on all the other Egyptians.

#### UST

**11** Even the men who worked magic had boils. Because of this, they were not able to face Moses because the men who worked magic had boils just like all the rest of the Egyptian people.



## Exodus 9:12

### Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart

Here "heart" refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 7:13](#). Alternate translation: "Yahweh caused Pharaoh to become more defiant"(See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

**12** Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart, so Pharaoh did not listen to Moses and Aaron. This was just as Yahweh had said to Moses that Pharaoh would do.

#### UST

**12** But Yahweh caused the king to continue to be stubborn. He did not pay any attention to what Moses and Aaron said, just as Yahweh had told Moses would happen.

## Exodus 9:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- Moses
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- Moses
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Get up early in the morning, stand in front of Pharaoh, and say to him, 'Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews, says this: "Let my people go so that they may worship me.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Get up early tomorrow morning. Go and stand in front of the king and tell him that Yahweh God, the one whom the Hebrew people worship, says this: 'Let my people go in order that they may worship me in the wilderness.

## Exodus 9:14

### on you yourself

This means that even Pharaoh will be hurt by the plagues. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

### I will do this so that you may know

The word “this” refers to the plagues that Moses had just told Pharaoh about.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**14** For this time I will send all my plagues on you yourself, on your servants and your people. I will do this so that you may know that there is no one like me in all the earth.

### UST

**14** If you do not let them go, this time I will punish with disasters, not only your officials and the rest of your people, but also you yourself in order that you might know there is no god like me anywhere in the world.

## Exodus 9:15

### reached out with my hand and attacked you

Here “my hand” refers to God’s power. Alternate translation: “used my power to strike you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### Translation Words - UST

- hand
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### ULT

**15** By now I could have reached out with my hand and attacked you and your people with disease, and you would have been eradicated from the land.

#### UST

**15** By this time I could have used my power to strike you and your people with terrible diseases that would have killed you all.

## Exodus 9:16

**so that my name may be proclaimed throughout all the earth**

Here “my name” represents Yahweh’s reputation. Alternate translation: “so that people everywhere will know I am great” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [name](#)
- [strength](#), [strengthen](#), [strong](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [name](#)
- [strength](#), [strengthen](#), [strong](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

### ULT

**16** But it was for this reason I allowed you to survive: In order to show you my power, so that my name may be proclaimed throughout all the earth.

### UST

**16** But I have let you live. The reason I have let you live is to show you my power so that people all over the earth will know how great I am.

## Exodus 9:17

### lifting yourself up against my people

Pharaoh's opposition to letting Israel go to worship Yahweh is spoken of as if he was raising himself up as a barrier to them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),

#### Translation Words - UST

- [people](#), [people group](#),

#### ULT

**17** You are still lifting yourself up against my people by not letting them go.

#### UST

**17** You are still acting proudly and refusing to let my people go.

## Exodus 9:18

### Listen!

“Pay attention to the important thing I am about to tell you”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- found, founder, foundation

### Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- found, founder, foundation

### ULT

**18** Listen! Tomorrow about this time I will bring a very strong hail storm, such as has not been seen in Egypt since the day it was begun until now.

### UST

**18** So listen to this: About this time tomorrow I will cause large balls of ice to fall in Egypt. From the time Egypt first became a nation, there has never been an ice storm as bad as this one will be.

## Exodus 9:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- house

### ULT

**19** Now then, send men and gather your cattle and everything you have in the fields to a safe place. Every man and animal that is in the field and is not brought home—the hail will come down on them, and they will die.”

### UST

**19** So you should send a message to all people to put under shelter their cattle and everything else that they own that is out in the fields. The ice will fall on every person and every animal that is out in the fields and that is not brought under a shelter, and they will all die.” So Moses did what Yahweh said.



## Exodus 9:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Then those of Pharaoh's servants who believed in Yahweh's message hurried to bring their slaves and cattle into the houses.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Some of the king's officials who heard what Yahweh had said became very afraid. So they brought all their animals and their slaves under shelters.

## Exodus 9:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- heart
- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> But those who did not take Yahweh's message seriously left their slaves and cattle in the fields.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> But those who did not listen to what Yahweh had said left their slaves and their animals in the fields.

## Exodus 9:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Reach out with your hand toward the sky so that there will be hail in all the land of Egypt, on people, on animals, and on all the plants in the fields throughout the land of Egypt.”

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Raise your hand up toward the sky, in order that balls of ice may fall all over the land of Egypt—on the people, on their animals, and on all the plants in the fields.”

## Exodus 9:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Moses reached out with his staff toward the sky, and Yahweh sent thunder, hail, and lightning to the ground. He also rained hail on the land of Egypt.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> So Moses lifted his staff up toward the sky. And Yahweh sent down balls of ice all over the land of Egypt. There was also thunder and lightning.

## Exodus 9:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- nation
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- nation
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> So there were hail and lightning mixed with hail, very severe, such as had not been in all the land of Egypt since it became a nation.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> While large balls of ice were falling, there was thunder, and lightning struck the ground. There had never been an ice storm like that since Egypt first became a country.

## Exodus 9:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- beast
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- beast
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Throughout all the land of Egypt, the hail struck everything in the fields, both people and animals. It struck every plant in the fields and broke every tree.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> The ice struck everything that was in the fields all over Egypt—every person and every animal. The ice destroyed the plants in the fields and stripped the leaves off the trees.

## Exodus 9:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Only in the land of Goshen, where the Israelites lived, was there no hail.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> Only in the region of Goshen, where the Israelite people were living, was there no ice.

## Exodus 9:27

### to summon

“to call”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Then Pharaoh sent men to summon Moses and Aaron. He said to them, “I have sinned this time. Yahweh is righteous, and I and my people are wicked.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> Then the king sent someone to summon Aaron and Moses. He said to them, “This time I admit that I have sinned. What Yahweh has done is right, and what I and my people have done is wrong.



## Exodus 9:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Pray to Yahweh, because the mighty thunderbolts and hail are too much. I will let you go, and you will stay here no longer."

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> Pray to Yahweh! We cannot take any more of this thunder and ice! I will let your people go; they do not have to stay in Egypt any longer."

## Exodus 9:29

### Moses said to him

"Moses said to Pharaoh"

### spread my hands out to Yahweh

This symbolic gesture accompanies prayer. Alternate translation: "lift up my hands and pray to Yahweh" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Moses said to him, "As soon as I leave the city, I will spread my hands out to Yahweh. The thunder will stop, and there will not be any more hail. In this way you will know that the earth belongs to Yahweh."

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> Moses replied, "As soon as I go out of this city, I will lift up my hands and pray to Yahweh. Then the thunder will cease, and no more ice will fall. This will happen in order that you will know that Yahweh, not your gods, controls everything that happens on the earth."

## Exodus 9:30

### honor Yahweh God

Honoring God involves obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**30** But as for you and your servants, I know that you do not yet really honor Yahweh God.”

#### UST

**30** But as for you and your officials, I know that you do not yet fear Yahweh God.”

## Exodus 9:31

### flax

This is a plant that produces fibers that can be made into linen cloth.

### barley

This is a type of grain used for making bread; also used for cattle feed.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [barley](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [barley](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Now the flax and the barley were ruined, for the barley was maturing in the ear, and the flax was in bloom.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> When the ice fell, the flax was ruined because the blossoms were forming, and the barley was ruined because its grain was ripe.

## Exodus 9:32

### spelt

This is a kind of wheat.

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> But the wheat and the spelt were not harmed because they were later crops.

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> But none of the wheat was ruined, because its shoots were still very small.

## Exodus 9:33

### spread out his hands to Yahweh

This symbolic gesture accompanies prayer. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 9:29](#). Alternate translation: “lifted up his hands toward Yahweh and prayed” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

#### ULT

**33** When Moses had left Pharaoh and the city, he spread out his hands to Yahweh; the thunder and hail stopped, and the rain came down no more.

#### UST

**33** So Moses left the king and went outside the city. He lifted up his hands toward Yahweh and prayed. Then the thunder and the ice storm stopped, and the rain also stopped falling on the land of Egypt.

## Exodus 9:34

### hardened his heart

Here “heart” refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. Alternate translation: “became more defiant” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> When Pharaoh saw that the rain, hail, and thunder had ceased, he sinned again and hardened his heart, together with his servants.

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> But when the king saw that the rain, the ice storm, and the thunder had stopped, he sinned again. He and his officials continued to be stubborn.

## Exodus 9:35

### The heart of Pharaoh was hardened

Here “heart” refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated this in [Exodus 7:13](#).

Alternate translation: “Pharaoh became more defiant” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> The heart of Pharaoh was hardened, and so he did not let the people of Israel go, just as Yahweh had spoken by the hand of Moses.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> So, just as Yahweh had predicted by what he told Moses, the king did not allow the Israelite people to leave.



## **Exodus 10**

### **Exodus 10 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Pharaoh's hard heart**

Pharaoh's heart is often described as hard in this chapter. This means that his heart was not open or willing to understand Yahweh's instructions. When his heart was hardened, it became less and less receptive to Yahweh.

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **Let my people go**

This is a very important statement. Moses does not ask Pharaoh for permission to “let go” of the Hebrew people. Instead, he is demanding that Pharaoh free the Hebrew people.

## Exodus 10:1

### for I have hardened his heart and the hearts of his servants

Yahweh speaks of making Pharaoh and his servants stubborn as if he were making their hearts hard. See how you translated “Yahweh hardened Pharaoh’s heart” in [Exodus 9:12](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sign, proof, reminder](#)
- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [sign, proof, reminder](#)
- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, “Go to Pharaoh, for I have hardened his heart and the hearts of his servants. I have done this to show these signs of my power among them.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Go to the king again. I have made him and his officials stubborn. I have done so in order that I may have a good reason to do all these miracles among them.

## Exodus 10:2

### various signs

“many different signs”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- sign, proof, reminder
- son
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- sign, proof, reminder
- son
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> I have also done this so that you may tell your children and grandchildren the things I have done, how I have harshly treated Egypt, and how I have given various signs of my power among them. In this way you will know that I am Yahweh.”

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> I have also done so in order that you would be able to tell your children and your grandchildren how I caused the Egyptians to act very foolishly when I performed all these miracles. Then all of you will know that I am Yahweh God.”

## Exodus 10:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- humble, humbled, humility
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- humble, humbled, humility
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> So Moses and Aaron went to Pharaoh and said to him, “Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews, says this: ‘How long will you refuse to humble yourself before me? Let my people go so that they may worship me.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> So Aaron and Moses went to the king and said to him, “Yahweh God, the one whom we Hebrews worship, says this, ‘How long will you stubbornly refuse to do what I tell you? Let my people go in order that they may worship me in the wilderness!

## Exodus 10:4

### listen

This word adds emphasis to what is said next. Alternate translation: “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you” (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),

### Translation Words - UST

- [people](#), [people group](#),

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But if you refuse to let my people go, listen, tomorrow I will bring locusts into your land.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> If you do not let them go, I warn you that tomorrow I will bring locusts into your country.

## Exodus 10:5

### hail

Hail is raindrops that freeze while falling from the clouds.

### Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- devour
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- devour
- devour
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> They will cover the surface of the ground so that no one will be able to see the earth. They will eat the remains of whatever escaped from the hail. They will also eat every tree that grows for you in the fields.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> They will cover the ground so that you will not even be able to see it. They will eat everything that the ice storm did not destroy. They will eat everything that is left on the trees that is still growing.

## Exodus 10:6

### nothing ever seen

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “nothing anyone has ever seen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- house
- house (2)

#### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- house
- house (2)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> They will fill your houses, those of all your servants, and those of all the Egyptians—something neither your father nor your grandfather ever saw, nothing ever seen since the day that they were on the earth to this present day.” Then Moses left and went out from Pharaoh.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> They will fill your houses and the houses of all your officials and of all the rest of the Egyptians. There will be more locusts than you or your parents or your grandparents have ever seen from the time your ancestors first came to this land until now!” Then Moses, along with Aaron, turned and left the king.

## Exodus 10:7

### menace

A “menace” is someone who brings trouble or harm.

### How long will this man be a menace to us?

Pharaoh’s servants ask this question to show Pharaoh the extent of destruction in Egypt. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “We cannot allow this man to continue to bring trouble to us!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Do you not yet realize that Egypt is destroyed?

Pharaoh’s servants ask this question to bring Pharaoh to recognize what he refuses to see. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You should realize that Egypt is destroyed!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### that Egypt is destroyed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that these plagues have destroyed Egypt” or “that their God has destroyed Egypt” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [perish](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [perish](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

7 Pharaoh’s servants said to him, “How long will this man be a menace to us? Let the Israelites go so that they may worship Yahweh their God. Do you not yet realize that Egypt is destroyed?”

### UST

7 The king’s officials said to him, “How long is this man going to bring bad things upon us? Let the Israelites go in order that they may worship Yahweh, their god. Do you not yet understand that this man has ruined Egypt?”



## Exodus 10:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron
- walk, walked
- return
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron
- walk, walked
- return
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Moses and Aaron were brought again to Pharaoh, who said to them, “Go worship Yahweh your God. But what people will go?”

### UST

<sup>8</sup> So they brought Aaron and Moses back to the king. He said to them, “All right, you can go and worship Yahweh, your god. But who are the ones who will go?”

## Exodus 10:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Moses
- feast, feasting
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Moses
- feast, feasting
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Moses said, "We will go with our young and with our old, with our sons and our daughters. We will go with our flocks and herds, for we must hold a festival for Yahweh."

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Moses replied, "We all need to go, everyone, including those who are young and those who are old. We need to take our sons, our daughters, and our flocks of sheep, goats, and herds of livestock because we must have a festival to honor Yahweh."

## Exodus 10:10

### if I ever let you go and your little ones go

Pharaoh says this to emphasize that he would not let Moses take the children with them to worship Yahweh. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- face, facial

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- face, facial

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Pharaoh said to them, "May Yahweh indeed be with you, if I ever let you go and your little ones go. Look, you have some evil in mind.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> So the king replied, "I never want Yahweh to help you, and I myself will never let you take your children and your wives with you! It is clear that you are planning not to return.

## Exodus 10:11

### Then Moses and Aaron were driven out from Pharaoh's presence

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then Pharaoh drove Moses and Aaron out from his presence" or "Then Pharaoh had his servants drive Moses and Aaron out from his presence" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- face, facial
- walk, walked
- seek, search, look for

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- face, facial
- walk, walked
- seek, search, look for

#### ULT

**11** No! Go, just the men among you, and worship Yahweh, for that is what you want." Then Moses and Aaron were driven out from Pharaoh's presence.

#### UST

**11** So, no, I will not let you all go. The Israelite men may go and worship Yahweh if that is what you want." Then the king drove Moses and Aaron from his palace.

## Exodus 10:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- devour
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- devour
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Reach out with your hand over the land of Egypt to the locusts, that they may attack the land of Egypt and eat every plant in it, everything that the hail has left."

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Reach out your hand as though you were stretching it over the land to welcome the locusts. They will come to the country of Egypt and eat every plant that is left in the land, every plant that the ice storm did not destroy."

## Exodus 10:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- spirit, spiritual
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly
- locust

### Translation Words - UST

- spirit, spiritual
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly
- locust

### ULT

**13** Moses reached out with his staff over the land of Egypt, and Yahweh brought an east wind over the land all that day and night. When it was morning, the east wind had brought the locusts.

### UST

**13** So Moses held out his staff as though he were stretching it over the whole land of Egypt. Then Yahweh caused a strong wind to blow from the east, and it blew over the land all that day and all that night. By the next morning, it had brought the locusts.

## Exodus 10:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly
- rest, rested, restless
- locust

### Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly
- rest, rested, restless
- locust

### ULT

**14** The locusts went through all the land of Egypt and infested all parts of it. Never before had there been such a swarm of locusts in the land, and nothing like this will come after it.

### UST

**14** The locusts swarmed all over Egypt. The swarm of locusts was larger than any that had ever been seen in Egypt, and there will never be a swarm of locusts like that again in the land.

## Exodus 10:15

### so that it was darkened

There were so many locusts that the land appeared to be dark. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that they darkened the land” or “so that the land appeared dark” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- devour
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- devour
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

**15** They covered the surface of the whole land so that it was darkened. They ate every plant in the land and all the fruit of the trees that the hail had left. Throughout all the land of Egypt, no living green plant remained, nor any tree or plant in the fields.

### UST

**15** They covered the surface of the ground and made it appear black. They ate all the plants in the land and everything on the trees that had not been destroyed by the ice storm. Nothing that was green was left on any plant or on any tree anywhere in Egypt.



## Exodus 10:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- God
- Yahweh

### Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- God
- Yahweh

### ULT

**16** Then Pharaoh quickly summoned Moses and Aaron and said, "I have sinned against Yahweh your God and against you.

### UST

**16** The king quickly called Aaron and Moses and said, "I have sinned against Yahweh, your god, and against you two.

## Exodus 10:17

### this time

“once again”

### take this death away from me

The word “death” here refers to the destruction by the locusts of all plants in Egypt, which would eventually lead to the deaths of people because there were no crops. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “stop this destruction that will lead to our deaths” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),

### Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),

### ULT

**17** Now then, forgive my sin this time, and pray to Yahweh your God that he will take this death away from me.”

### UST

**17** So now I ask you to forgive me this one time for having sinned. Please pray to Yahweh, your god, to take away this terrible disaster that will cause us all to die.”

## Exodus 10:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> So Moses went out from Pharaoh and prayed to Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> So Moses and Aaron left the king, and Moses prayed to Yahweh.

## Exodus 10:19

### picked up the locusts

“moved the locusts upwards”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- strength, strengthen, strong
- locust

#### Translation Words - UST

- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- strength, strengthen, strong
- locust

#### ULT

**19** Yahweh brought a very strong west wind that picked up the locusts and drove them into the Sea of Reeds; not a single locust remained in all the territory of Egypt.

#### UST

**19** Then Yahweh changed the wind so that it blew strongly from the west, and it blew all the locusts into the Sea of Reeds. There was not one locust left anywhere in the country of Egypt.

## Exodus 10:20

### Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart

Here "heart" refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated this phrase in [Exodus 9:12](#). Alternate translation: "caused Pharaoh to become more defiant" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> But Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart, and Pharaoh did not let the Israelites go.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> But Yahweh made the king stubborn again, and the king did not let the Israelite people go.

## Exodus 10:21

### darkness that may be felt

Yahweh speaks of extreme darkness as if it is so thick that people can grasp it in their hands. This can be stated in active form.

Alternate translation: "dense darkness that people can grasp with their hands" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### ULT

**21** Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Reach out with your hand toward the sky, so that there may be darkness over the land of Egypt, darkness that may be felt."

### UST

**21** Yahweh said to Moses, "Reach your hand up toward the sky in order that there may be darkness over all the land of Egypt, a darkness so complete that people will have to feel around to know where to walk."

## Exodus 10:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- darkness
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- darkness
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Moses reached out with his hand toward the sky, and there was a thick darkness in all the land of Egypt for three days.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> So Moses reached his hand toward the sky, and it became very dark all over Egypt for three days and nights.

## Exodus 10:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- Israel, Israelites

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> No one could see anyone else; no one left his home for three days. However, all the Israelites had light in the place where they lived.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> People could not see each other. No one left his house during that whole time. But there was light in the area where the Israelite people lived.



## Exodus 10:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- flock, herd
- walk, walked
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- flock, herd
- walk, walked
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Pharaoh summoned Moses and said, "Go worship Yahweh. Even your families may go with you, but your flocks and herds must remain behind."

### UST

<sup>24</sup> The king called Moses and said, "All right, you may go and worship Yahweh. Your wives and your children may go with you. But your flocks of sheep and goats and your herds of cattle must remain here."

## Exodus 10:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Moses
- hand
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- burnt offering, offering by fire

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Moses
- hand
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- burnt offering, offering by fire

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But Moses said, “You must also give us animals for sacrifices and burnt offerings so that we may sacrifice them to Yahweh our God.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> But Moses replied, “No, you must let us take along the sheep and goats in order that we may have some of them to sacrifice and give as burnt offerings to Yahweh, our God.

## Exodus 10:26

### not a hoof of them may be left behind

Here the word "hoof" refers to the entire animal. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "we cannot leave behind a single animal" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**26** Our cattle must also go with us; not a hoof of them may be left behind, for we must take them to worship Yahweh our God. For we do not know with what we must worship Yahweh until we arrive there."

#### UST

**26** Our livestock must also go with us; we are not going to leave one animal behind. We must take them to worship Yahweh. We will not know which animals to sacrifice until we get to where we are going."

**Exodus 10:27****Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart**

Here "heart" refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated this phrase in [Exodus 9:12](#). Alternate translation: "caused Pharaoh to become more defiant" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**he would not let them go**

"Pharaoh would not let them go"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**ULT**

<sup>27</sup> But Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart, and he would not let them go.

**UST**

<sup>27</sup> But Yahweh made the king continue to be stubborn. The king would not let the Israelite people go.

## Exodus 10:28

### Be careful about one thing

“Make sure of one thing” or “Be certain of one thing”

### you see my face

Here the word “face” refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: “you see me” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [face](#), [facial](#)
- [face](#), [facial](#)
- [walk](#), [walked](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [face](#), [facial](#)
- [face](#), [facial](#)
- [walk](#), [walked](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)

### ULT

**28** Pharaoh said to Moses, “Go from me! Be careful about one thing, that you do not see me again, for on the day you see my face, you will die.”

### UST

**28** The king said to Moses and Aaron, “Get out of here! Make sure that you never come to see me again! The day you see me again, I will have you killed!”

## Exodus 10:29

### You yourself have spoken

With these words, Moses emphasizes that Pharaoh has spoken the truth. Alternate translation: “What you have said is true” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [face](#), [facial](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [face](#), [facial](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Moses said, “You yourself have spoken. I will not see your face again.”

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> Moses replied, “You are correct! You will never see me again!”

## **Exodus 11**

### **Exodus 11 General Notes**

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Pharaoh's hard heart**

Pharaoh's heart is often described as hard in this chapter. This means that his heart was not open or willing to understand Yahweh's instructions. When his heart was hardened, it became less and less receptive to Yahweh.

#### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

##### **Let my people go**

In the previous chapters, Moses does not ask Pharaoh for permission to “let go” of the Hebrew people. Instead, he demanded that Pharaoh free the Hebrew people. In this chapter, the same wording is used to refer to Pharaoh “allowing” the Hebrew people to leave Egypt.

## Exodus 11:1

### he will let you go from here

Each occurrence of the word “you” in this verse is plural and refers to Moses and the rest of the Israelites. (See: [Forms of You](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, “There is still one more plague that I will bring on Pharaoh and Egypt. After that, he will let you go from here. When he finally lets you go, he will drive you away completely.”

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, “I will bring one more disaster on the king of Egypt and on all his people. After that, he will let you leave. In fact, he will chase you out of Egypt.”



## Exodus 11:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- people, people group,
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- silver
- people, people group,
- gold, golden

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Instruct the people that every man and woman is to ask of his or her neighbor for articles of silver and articles of gold."

### UST

<sup>2</sup> So now, speak to all the Israelite people. Tell them to ask all their Egyptian neighbors, both men and women, to give them their silver and gold jewelry."

## Exodus 11:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Now Yahweh had made the Egyptians eager to please the Israelites. Moreover, the man Moses was very impressive in the sight of Pharaoh's servants and the people of Egypt.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Yahweh made the Egyptians highly respect the Israelite people. In fact, the king's officials and all the rest of the people thought that Moses was a very great man.

## Exodus 11:4

### midnight

This is the time of 12 am (at night) or 2400 hours.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Moses said, "Yahweh says this: 'About midnight I will go throughout Egypt.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Then Moses went to the king and said, "This is what Yahweh says: 'About midnight tonight I will go through Egypt,

## Exodus 11:5

### All the firstborn...the firstborn of Pharaoh...the firstborn of the slave girl...the firstborn of the cattle

The “firstborn” always refers to the oldest male offspring.

#### who sits on his throne

This phrase refers to Pharaoh.

#### who is behind the handmill grinding it

“who is grinding at the handmill” or “who is behind the handmill grinding grain”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- beast
- throne, enthroned
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- firstborn
- firstborn
- firstborn

#### Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- beast
- throne, enthroned
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- firstborn
- firstborn
- firstborn

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> All the firstborn in the land of Egypt will die, from the firstborn of Pharaoh, who sits on his throne, to the firstborn of the slave girl who is behind the handmill grinding it, and to all the firstborn of the cattle.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> and I will cause all the firstborn sons to die. From the king's oldest son to the oldest son of the slave woman who grinds grain, and the oldest son of everyone else. I will also kill the oldest males of your livestock.

## Exodus 11:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then there will be a great wailing throughout all the land of Egypt, such as has never been nor ever will be again.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> When that happens, people all over Egypt will lament loudly. They will lament more loudly than they ever have lamented before and more than they ever will again.

## Exodus 11:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- beast
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- beast
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But not even a dog will bark against any of the people of Israel, against either man or beast. In this way you will know that I am treating the Egyptians and the Israelites differently.'

### UST

<sup>7</sup> But among the Israelite people it will be so quiet that not even a dog will bark! Then you will know for sure that I, Yahweh, am treating the Egyptians differently from the Israelites.'

## Exodus 11:8

### After that I will go out

This means that Moses and the people of Israel will leave Egypt.  
Alternate translation: "After that I will leave here" or "After that I will go out from Egypt" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- prostrate, worship
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- prostrate, worship
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> All these servants of yours, Pharaoh, will come down to me and bow down to me. They will say, 'Go, you and all the people who follow you!' After that I will go out." Then he went out from Pharaoh in great anger.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then all these officials of yours will come and bow down before me and will say, 'Please get out of Egypt, you and all the Israelite people!' After that, we will leave Egypt!" When Moses had said that, he left the king very angrily.

## Exodus 11:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- miracle, wonder, sign
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian

### Translation Words - UST

- miracle, wonder, sign
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, “Pharaoh will not listen to you. This is so that I will do many amazing things in the land of Egypt.”

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, “The king will not listen to what you say. So I will perform more miracles in the land of Egypt.”



## Exodus 11:10

### Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart

Here "heart" refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated this phrase in [Exodus 9:12](#). Alternate translation: "Yahweh caused Pharaoh to become more defiant" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### ULT

**10** Moses and Aaron did all these wonders before Pharaoh. But Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart, and Pharaoh did not let the people of Israel go out of his land.

#### UST

**10** Aaron and Moses did all these miracles in front of the king, but Yahweh made the king stubborn. The king did not let the Israelite people leave his land.

## **Exodus 12**

### **Exodus 12 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

The events of this chapter are known as the Passover. They are remembered in the celebration of Passover. (See: [Passover](#))

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Unleavened bread**

The concept of unleavened bread is introduced in this chapter. Its significance stems from its connection to the events in this chapter. (See: [unleavened bread](#))

#### **Ethnic segregation**

The Hebrew people were to be separate from the rest of the world. Because of this, they separated themselves from other people groups. At this time, these foreigners were looked upon as unholy. (See: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#))

## Exodus 12:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses and Aaron in the land of Egypt. He said,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh said to Aaron and Moses in Egypt,

## Exodus 12:2

### **For you, this month will be the start of months, the first month of the year to you**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the month in which the events of this chapter take place will be the beginning of their calendar year. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### **the first month of the year**

The first month of the Hebrew calendar includes the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. It marks when Yahweh rescued the Israelites from the Egyptians. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [head](#)
- [new moon](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [head](#)
- [new moon](#)

### **ULT**

<sup>2</sup> “For you, this month will be the start of months, the first month of the year to you.

### **UST**

<sup>2</sup> “From now on, this month will be the first month of the year for you Israelites.

## Exodus 12:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house
- house

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Tell the assembly of Israel, 'On the tenth day of this month they must each take a lamb or young goat for themselves, each family doing this, a lamb for each household.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Tell all the Israelite people that in each family, the man who heads the family must take a lamb or a young goat for his household.

## Exodus 12:4

### If the household is too small for a lamb

This means that there are not enough people in the family to eat an entire lamb. Alternate translation: “If there are not enough people in the household to eat an entire lamb” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the man and his next door neighbor

Here “the man” refers to the man who is the leader of the household.

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- house
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- house
- house

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> If the household is too small for a lamb, the man and his next door neighbor are to take lamb or young goat meat that will be enough for the number of the people. It should be enough for everyone to eat, so they must take enough meat to feed them all.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> If there are not enough people in his family to eat a whole cooked lamb, then his family and the family that lives next door may share one animal. Decide how many lambs you need according to the number of people in each family and according to how much each person can eat.

## Exodus 12:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son

### Translation Words - UST

- son

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Your lamb or young goat must be without blemish, a one-year-old male. You may take one of the sheep or goats.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> The lambs or goats that you choose must be males, one year olds, and they must not have any defects.

## Exodus 12:6

### twilight

This refers to the time of evening after the sun has set but while there is still some light.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- slaughter, slaughtered

#### Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- slaughter, slaughtered

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> You must keep it until the fourteenth day of that month. Then the whole assembly of Israel must kill these animals at twilight.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> You must take special care of these animals until the fourteenth day of the month. On that day, all the Israelite people must kill the lambs or goats in the evening.



## Exodus 12:7

**on the two side doorposts and on the tops of the doorframes of the houses**

“on the sides and top of the way into the house”

### Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- devour
- house

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> You must take some of the blood and put it on the two side doorposts and on the tops of the doorframes of the houses in which you will eat the meat.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Then they must take some of the blood from the lambs or goats, and they must smear it on the two doorposts and on the tops of the doorframes of the houses in which they will eat the meat.

## Exodus 12:8

### Eat it with bread made without yeast

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Eat it with bread which you have made without yeast" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### bitter herbs

These are small plants that have a strong and usually bad taste.

### Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- devour
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### Translation Words - UST

- devour
- devour
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> You must eat the meat that night, after first roasting it over a fire. Eat it with bread made without yeast, along with bitter herbs.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> They must roast the animals immediately and eat the meat that night. They must eat it with bitter herbs and with bread that is baked without yeast.

## Exodus 12:9

### Do not eat it raw

"Do not eat the lamb or goat uncooked"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- head
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

#### Translation Words - UST

- devour
- head
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Do not eat it raw or boiled in water. Instead, roast it over fire with its head, legs and inner parts.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> You must not eat any of the meat raw, and you must not boil the meat. You must roast it whole without cutting off the head or the legs or without removing the internal parts.

## Exodus 12:10

### You must not let any of it be left over until morning

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Do not leave any of it until the morning" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

#### Translation Words - UST

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

#### ULT

**10** You must not let any of it be left over until morning. You must burn whatever is left over in the morning.

#### UST

**10** You must eat all the meat that evening; do not let any of the meat remain to be eaten the next morning. If any of the meat is left the next morning, you must burn it all.

## Exodus 12:11

### belt

This refers to a strip of leather or fabric for tying around the waist.

### eat it hurriedly

“eat it quickly”

### It is Yahweh’s Passover

Here the word “it” refers to eating the animal on the tenth day of the month. Alternate translation: “This observance is Yahweh’s Passover” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- hand
- devour
- devour
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- sandal

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- hand
- devour
- devour
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- sandal

### ULT

**11** This is how you must eat it: with your belt fastened, your shoes on your feet, and your staff in your hand. You must eat it hurriedly. It is Yahweh’s Passover.

### UST

**11** When you eat it, you must be dressed ready to travel. You must have your sandals on your feet and your walking staff in your hands. You must eat it hurriedly. It will be a festival called Passover to honor me, Yahweh.

## Exodus 12:12

### I will bring punishment on all the gods of Egypt

This can be stated with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "I will punish all the gods of Egypt" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- beast
- firstborn

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- beast
- firstborn

#### ULT

**12** Yahweh says this: I will go through the land of Egypt in that night and attack all the firstborn of man and animal in the land of Egypt. I will bring punishment on all the gods of Egypt. I am Yahweh.

#### UST

**12** On that night I will go through all the land of Egypt, and I will kill all the oldest males in Egypt, both humans and animals. By doing this, I will punish all the gods in Egypt. It is I, Yahweh God, who am speaking to you!

## Exodus 12:13

### for my coming to you

This implies that Yahweh will see the blood which indicates an Israelite home. Alternate translation: “that I will see when I come to you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### I will pass over you

The words “pass over” were a customary way of saying to not visit or enter. Alternate translation: “I will not enter your house” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

**13** The blood will be a sign on your houses for my coming to you. When I see the blood, I will pass over you when I attack the land of Egypt. This plague will not come on you and destroy you.

### UST

**13** The blood that you smear on the doorways will be a mark to show me the houses in which you Israelites live. When I see the blood, I will pass over those houses, and I will not harm the people who live there when I come to punish the Egyptians.

## Exodus 12:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- feast, feasting
- generation

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- feast, feasting
- generation

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> This day will become a memorial day for you, which you must observe as a festival to Yahweh; for your generations—a statute that you must keep forever.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> Each year, you must celebrate this festival on this day to remember what I, Yahweh, have done for you. In all the generations to come, each year you must celebrate this festival. It must continue forever.



## Exodus 12:15

### that person must be cut off from Israel

The metaphor “cut off” has at least three possible meanings. They can be expressed in active form: 1) “the people of Israel must send him away” or 2) “I will no longer consider him to be one of the people of Israel” or 3) “the people of Israel must kill him.” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- unleavened bread
- Israel, Israelites
- devour
- devour
- cut off
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- unleavened bread
- Israel, Israelites
- devour
- devour
- cut off
- house

#### ULT

**15** You will eat bread without yeast during seven days. On the first day you will remove the yeast from your houses. Whoever eats leavened bread from the first day until the seventh day, that person must be cut off from Israel.

#### UST

**15** For seven days you must eat bread that has no yeast in it. On the first day of that week, you must get rid of all the yeast that is in your houses. During those seven days, if anyone eats bread that is baked with yeast in it, you must drive that person out from your people.

## Exodus 12:16

### an assembly that is set apart to me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “an assembly that you have set apart to me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### No work will be done on these days

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “You will do no work on these days” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### That must be the only work that may be done by you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “That must be the only work that you do” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- devour

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- devour

### ULT

**16** On the first day there will be an assembly that is set apart to me, and on the seventh day there will be another such gathering. No work will be done on these days, except the cooking for everyone to eat. That must be the only work that may be done by you.

### UST

**16** On the first day of that week, you must have a holy meeting. You must do the same thing on the seventh day. People must not work on those two days. The only work they may do is to prepare food for you to eat.

## Exodus 12:17

### armed group by armed group

The term used for these groups is a military term referring to a large number of soldiers. Alternate translation: “division by division” or “regiment by regiment”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- generation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- generation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**17** You must observe this Festival of Unleavened Bread because it is on this day that I will have brought your people, armed group by armed group, out of the land of Egypt. So you must observe this day throughout your people's generations. This will always be a law for you.

### UST

**17** Every year you must keep celebrating this Festival of Unleavened Bread because it will remind you that it was on this day that I brought your tribes out of the land of Egypt. So every year, in all the generations to come, you must celebrate this day as a festival. It must continue forever.

## Exodus 12:18

### twilight

This refers to the time of evening after the sun has set but while there is still some light. See how you translated this in [Exodus 12:6](#).

### the fourteenth day in the first month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The fourteenth day is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### the twenty-first day of the month

“the twenty-first day of the first month.” This is near the middle of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- unleavened bread
- devour

### Translation Words - UST

- unleavened bread
- devour

### ULT

**18** You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day in the first month of the year, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month.

### UST

**18** In the first month of the year, on the fourteenth day of that month, the only bread you may eat is bread that has no yeast in it. You must keep doing that each day until the twenty-first day of that month.

## Exodus 12:19

### no yeast must be found in your houses

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “there must not be any yeast in your houses” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### must be cut off from the community of Israel

The metaphor “cut off” has at least three possible meanings. They can be expressed in active form: 1) “the people of Israel must send him away” or 2) “I will no longer consider him to be one of the people of Israel” or 3) “the people of Israel must kill him.” See how you translated “must be cut off from Israel” in [Exodus 12:15](#). (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [temple](#)
- [devour](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [temple](#)
- [devour](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

#### ULT

**19** During these seven days, no yeast must be found in your houses. Whoever eats bread made with yeast must be cut off from the community of Israel, whether that person is a foreigner or someone born in your land.

#### UST

**19** For those seven days you must not have any yeast in your house. During that time, if anyone, either an Israelite or a foreigner, eats bread made with yeast, that person will no longer be an Israelite.

## Exodus 12:20

### bread made without yeast

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Exodus 12:8](#). Alternate translation: "bread which you have made without yeast" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- unleavened bread
- devour
- devour

#### Translation Words - UST

- unleavened bread
- devour
- devour

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> You must eat nothing made with yeast. Wherever you live, you must eat bread made without yeast."

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> In your houses, do not eat anything that has yeast in it during those seven days."

## Exodus 12:21

### summoned

officially called

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Passover](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [clan](#)
- [slaughter, slaughtered](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Passover](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [clan](#)
- [slaughter, slaughtered](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

#### ULT

**21** Then Moses summoned all the elders of Israel and said to them, "Go and select lambs or kids that will be enough to feed your families and kill the Passover lamb.

#### UST

**21** Then Moses summoned all the leaders of the Israelite people. He said to them, "Each family should select a lamb and kill it, in order that you may eat it to celebrate the festival that will be called 'Passover.'

## Exodus 12:22

### hyssop

a woody plant with small leaves that can be used for sprinkling liquids

### the top of the doorframe and the two doorposts

“on the sides and top of the way into the house.” See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 12:7](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**22** Then take a bunch of hyssop and dip it in the blood that will be in a basin. Apply the blood in the basin to the top of the doorframe and the two doorposts. None of you is to go out of the door of his house until the morning.

### UST

**22** Let the lamb's blood drain into a bowl. Get a bunch of hyssop and dip it in the blood. Then wipe some of the blood on the top of the doorframe and on the doorposts of your houses. The people in each house must stay inside the house until the next morning.



## Exodus 12:23

### pass over your door

Here the word “door” implies the entire house. This means that God will spare the Israelites in houses with blood on the doors. Alternate translation: “pass over your house” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- house

#### ULT

**23** For Yahweh will pass through to attack the Egyptians. When he sees the blood on the top of the doorframe and on the two doorposts, he will pass over your door and not permit the destroyer to come into your houses to attack you.

#### UST

**23** When Yahweh goes through Egypt to kill the oldest male in each Egyptian family, he will see the blood on your doorframes, and he will pass over those houses. He will not allow the angel who causes people to die to enter your houses and kill your oldest sons.

## Exodus 12:24

### this event

These words refer to the Passover or Festival of Unleavened Bread. Observing the Passover was an act of worshiping Yahweh.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son

### Translation Words - UST

- son

### ULT

**24** You must observe this event. This will always be a law for you and your descendants.

### UST

**24** You and your descendants must celebrate this ritual forever.

## Exodus 12:25

### this act of worship

These words refer to the Passover or Festival of Unleavened Bread. Observing the Passover was an act of worshiping Yahweh.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> When you enter the land that Yahweh will give you, just as he has promised to do, you must observe this act of worship.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> When you arrive in the land that Yahweh will give to you as he promised, you must keep celebrating this ritual every year.

## Exodus 12:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son

### Translation Words - UST

- son

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> When your children ask you, 'What does this act of worship mean?'

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> When your children ask you, 'What does this ritual mean?'

## Exodus 12:27

### He set our households free

This means that Yahweh spared the Israelites' firstborn sons. Alternate translation: "He did not kill the firstborn sons in our houses" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- prostrate, worship
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- house
- house
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- prostrate, worship
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- house
- house
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### ULT

**27** then you must say, 'It is the sacrifice of Yahweh's Passover, because Yahweh passed over the Israelites' houses in Egypt when he attacked the Egyptians. He set our households free.'" Then the people bowed down and worshiped Yahweh.

### UST

**27** you must tell them, 'This ritual is to remember how your ancestors sacrificed lambs on the night that Yahweh's angel passed over the houses of the Israelite people when they were in Egypt. He killed the oldest males in all the Egyptian houses, but he did not kill the sons in our houses.'" After Moses told them this, the people all bowed their heads and worshiped Yahweh.

## Exodus 12:28

### as Yahweh had commanded Moses and Aaron

“everything that Yahweh told Moses and Aaron to do”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses

#### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> The Israelites went and did exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses and Aaron.

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> Then the Israelite people did exactly what Yahweh told Aaron and Moses to tell them to do.

## Exodus 12:29

### at midnight

“in the middle of the night”

### all the firstborn in the land of Egypt...all the firstborn of cattle

Here, “firstborn” always refers to the oldest male offspring. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 11:5](#).

### who sat on his throne

This refers to Pharaoh.

### the firstborn of the person in prison

“to the firstborn of people in prison.” This refers to prisoners, in general, and not to a specific person in prison.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- temple
- Egypt, Egyptian
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- beast
- throne, enthroned
- firstborn
- firstborn
- firstborn

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- temple
- Egypt, Egyptian
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- beast
- throne, enthroned
- firstborn
- firstborn
- firstborn

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> It happened at midnight that Yahweh attacked all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, from the firstborn of Pharaoh, who sat on his throne, to the firstborn of the person in prison and all the firstborn of cattle.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> At midnight Yahweh killed all the oldest sons of the Egyptian people, all over Egypt. This included the king's oldest son, the oldest sons of the prisoners in the dungeons, and the oldest sons of everyone else. He also killed the oldest males of all the Egyptians' livestock.

## Exodus 12:30

### There was loud lamenting in Egypt

This can be stated with a verbal form. Alternate translation: “All the Egyptians cried loudly” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### for there was not a house where there was not someone dead

This double negative emphasizes the positive. Alternate translation: “because someone was dead in every house” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

#### ULT

**30** Pharaoh got up in the night—he, all his servants, and all the Egyptians. There was loud lamenting in Egypt, for there was not a house where there was not someone dead.

#### UST

**30** That night the king, all his officials, and all the rest of the Egyptian people awoke and discovered what had happened. They wailed loudly all over Egypt because in every house someone's son had died.



## Exodus 12:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Pharaoh summoned Moses and Aaron in the night and said, "Get up, get out from among my people, you and the Israelites. Go, worship Yahweh, as you have said you wanted to do."

### UST

<sup>31</sup> That night the king called Aaron and Moses and said, "Get up, you and all the other Israelite people, and leave my country now! Go and worship Yahweh, as you requested!"

## Exodus 12:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- flock, herd

### Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- flock, herd

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Take your flocks and your herds, as you have said, and go, and also bless me."

### UST

<sup>32</sup> Take your flocks of sheep and goats and herds of cattle, and leave! And ask Yahweh to bless me, also!"

## Exodus 12:33

### We will all die

The Egyptians were afraid that they would die if the Israelites did not leave Egypt. Alternate translation: "We will all die if you do not leave" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> The Egyptians were in a great hurry to send them out of the land, for they said, "We will all die."

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> The Egyptians asked the Israelite people to leave their country quickly. They said, "If you do not do that, we will all die!"

## Exodus 12:34

### Their kneading bowls were already tied up in their clothes and on their shoulders

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They had already tied up their kneading bowls in their clothes and on their shoulders" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),

#### Translation Words - UST

- [people](#), [people group](#),

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> So the people took their dough without adding any yeast. Their kneading bowls were already tied up in their clothes and on their shoulders.

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> So the Israelite people prepared to leave at once. They took the bowls in which they mixed the dough to make bread and the dough that was in the bowls without any yeast in it, and they wrapped the bowls in their cloaks. They put the bowls on their shoulders and left.

## Exodus 12:35

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- silver
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- silver
- gold, golden

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Now the people of Israel did as Moses told them. They asked the Egyptians for articles of silver, articles of gold, and clothing.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> Then the Israelite people did as Moses told them. They went to their Egyptian neighbors and asked them for silver and gold jewelry and clothing.

## Exodus 12:36

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### ULT

**36** Yahweh made the Egyptians eager to please the Israelites. So the Egyptians gave them whatever they asked for. In this way, the Israelites plundered the Egyptians.

### UST

**36** Yahweh caused the Egyptian people to greatly respect the Israelite people, so they gave them what they asked for. In that way, the Israelites carried away the wealth of the Egyptian people.

## Exodus 12:37

### Rameses

Rameses was a major Egyptian city where grain was stored. See how you translated this in [Exodus 1:11](#).

### They numbered about 600,000 men

“They numbered about six hundred thousand men.” The total number of men was about 600,000. (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### ULT

**37** The Israelites journeyed from Rameses to Succoth. They numbered about 600,000 men on foot, in addition to the women and children.

### UST

**37** The Israelite people walked from the city of Rameses to the town of Succoth. There were about 600,000 men who went, in addition to the women and children.

## Exodus 12:38

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- flock, herd

### Translation Words - UST

- flock, herd

#### ULT

<sup>38</sup> A mixed multitude also went with them, together with flocks and herds, a very large number of livestock.

#### UST

<sup>38</sup> Many other people who were not Israelites went along with them. There was also a large amount of livestock, including flocks of sheep and goats and herds of cattle.



## Exodus 12:39

### bread without yeast in the dough

“bread with dough that did not contain yeast”

### they had been driven out of Egypt

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Egyptians had driven them out of Egypt” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- unleavened bread
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- unleavened bread
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**39** They baked bread without yeast in the dough that they brought from Egypt. It was without yeast because they had been driven out of Egypt and could not delay to prepare food.

#### UST

**39** On their way, they baked bread with the dough that they carried with them when they had been told to leave Egypt. The dough did not have yeast in it because they were told to leave Egypt so quickly that they did not have enough time to get food ready to take with them or enough time to mix yeast in the dough.

## Exodus 12:40

### 430 years

“four hundred and thirty years” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian

#### ULT

<sup>40</sup> The Israelites had lived in Egypt for 430 years.

#### UST

<sup>40</sup> The Israelite people had lived in Egypt for 430 years.

## Exodus 12:41

### 430 years

“four hundred and thirty years” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Yahweh’s armed groups

This refers to the tribes of Israel. See how you translated “armed group” in [Exodus 12:17](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**41** At the end of 430 years, on that very day, all of Yahweh’s armed groups went out from the land of Egypt.

### UST

**41** On the day that those 430 years ended, on that very day, all the tribes of Yahweh’s people left Egypt.

## Exodus 12:42

### to be observed by all the Israelites

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that all the Israelites were to observe” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### all the Israelites throughout their people’s generations

“all the Israelites and the all the generations of their descendants”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#) (2)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [generation](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#) (2)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [generation](#)

#### ULT

<sup>42</sup> This was a night to stay awake, for Yahweh to bring them out from the land of Egypt. This was Yahweh’s night to be observed by all the Israelites throughout their people’s generations.

#### UST

<sup>42</sup> It was a night when the Israelites stayed awake as Yahweh brought them out of Egypt. So this same night every year is a night that is dedicated to Yahweh, a night when the Israelite people in every generation remember how Yahweh kept their ancestors safe.

## Exodus 12:43

### No foreigner may share in eating it

The pronoun "it" refers to the Passover meal.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Passover
- Yahweh
- Moses
- devour
- alien, foreign, foreigner

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Passover
- Yahweh
- Moses
- devour
- alien, foreign, foreigner

#### ULT

<sup>43</sup> Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron, "Here is the rule for the Passover: No foreigner may share in eating it.

#### UST

<sup>43</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron, "These are my instructions about the Passover ritual: Do not let foreigners eat the Passover meal.

## Exodus 12:44

### every Israelite's slave

"any slave of an Israelite"

### bought with money

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom the Israelite has bought with money" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [silver](#)
- [devour](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [silver](#)
- [devour](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>44</sup> However, every Israelite's slave, bought with money, may eat it after you have circumcised him.

### UST

<sup>44</sup> But any male slaves that you have bought may eat it after you have circumcised them.

## Exodus 12:45

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- devour

### Translation Words - UST

- devour

#### ULT

<sup>45</sup> Foreigners and hired servants must not eat any of the food.

#### UST

<sup>45</sup> Do not let people who are living among you that are not Israelites, or servants whom you pay money to and who stay only for a while, eat the Passover meal.

## Exodus 12:46

### The food must be eaten in one house

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Each Israelite family must eat the food in one house" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### you must not break any bone of it

"you must not break any of its bones." Here the word "it" refers to the lamb which the Israelite family will eat.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [devour](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)
- [devour](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

<sup>46</sup> The food must be eaten in one house. You must not carry any of the meat out of the house, and you must not break any bone of it.

### UST

<sup>46</sup> Each family must eat the Passover meal inside its own house. Do not take any of the food outside the house. Do not break the bones of the lamb.



## Exodus 12:47

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### ULT

<sup>47</sup> All the community of Israel must observe the festival.

#### UST

<sup>47</sup> All the Israelite people must celebrate this festival.

## Exodus 12:48

### all his male relatives must be circumcised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone must circumcise all his male relatives" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the people who were born in the land

Here the word "land" refers to Canaan. The expression "born in the land" means a person who is a native Israelite. Alternate translation: "those who are Israelites by birth" (See: [Idiom](#))

### no uncircumcised person may eat

This can be stated in positive terms. Alternate translation: "only circumcised people may eat" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

#### ULT

**48** If a foreigner lives with you and wants to observe the Passover to Yahweh, all his male relatives must be circumcised. Then he may come and observe it. He will become like the people who were born in the land. However, no uncircumcised person may eat any of the food.

#### UST

**48** When someone from another country comes to live with you and wants to celebrate the Passover festival, circumcise all the males in his household. Then he can eat the Passover meal, and you should treat that man as though he had been born an Israelite. But do not allow men who have not been circumcised to eat the Passover meal.

## Exodus 12:49

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

### Translation Words - UST

- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

#### ULT

<sup>49</sup> This same law will apply to both the native born and to the foreigner who lives among you.”

#### UST

<sup>49</sup> These rules apply to people who were born as Israelites and to foreigners who come and live among you.”

## Exodus 12:50

### as Yahweh had commanded Moses and Aaron

“everything that Yahweh told Moses and Aaron to do”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Aaron

#### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Aaron

#### ULT

<sup>50</sup> So all the Israelites did exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses and Aaron.

#### UST

<sup>50</sup> All the Israelite people obeyed Moses and Aaron and did what Yahweh had commanded.

## Exodus 12:51

### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### by their armed groups

The term used for these groups is a military term referring to a large number of soldiers. See how you translated “armed group” in [Exodus 12:17](#). Alternate translation: “by their divisions” or “by their regiments”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**51** It came about that very day that Yahweh brought Israel out of the land of Egypt by their armed groups.

### UST

**51** On that very day, Yahweh brought all the tribes of the Israelite people out of Egypt.

## Exodus 13

### Exodus 13 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter records the instructions for the celebration of Passover. (See: [Passover](#))

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Law

The law mentioned here is not the law of Moses because it has not yet been revealed. Instead, it is a more generic “rule.” (See: [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [the law](#) and [reveal](#), [revealed](#), [revelation](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Let my people go

This is a very important statement. Moses does not ask Pharaoh for permission to “let go” of the Hebrew people. Instead, he is demanding that Pharaoh free the Hebrew people. When this chapter states that Pharaoh let the people go, it indicates that he gave them permission to leave.

## Exodus 13:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh said to Moses,

## Exodus 13:2

### Set apart to me...every firstborn male

God requires that every firstborn male child be set apart for him.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- livestock, animals
- firstborn

#### Translation Words - UST

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- livestock, animals
- firstborn

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> "Set apart to me all the firstborn, every firstborn male among the Israelites, both of people and animals. The firstborn belongs to me."

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> "Set apart all the firstborn males in order that they may belong to me. The firstborn males of the Israelite people and of their animals will be mine."



## Exodus 13:3

### Call this day to mind

The words “Call...to mind” were a customary way of telling someone to remember something. Alternate translation: “Remember and celebrate this day” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the house of slavery

Moses speaks of Egypt as if it were a house where people keep slaves. Alternate translation: “the place where you were slaves” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Yahweh's strong hand

Here the word “hand” refers to power. See how you translated “strong hand” in [Exodus 6:1](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

### No bread with yeast may be eaten

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “You must not eat bread with yeast” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Moses said to the people, “Call this day to mind, the day on which you came out from Egypt, out of the house of slavery, for by Yahweh’s strong hand he brought you out from this place. No bread with yeast may be eaten.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> Moses said to the people, “Do not forget this day! This is the day that you left Egypt. This is the day you were freed from being their slaves. Yahweh has brought you out of Egypt by his great power. Do not eat any bread that has yeast in it whenever you celebrate this day.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- people, people group,
- devour
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- people, people group,
- devour
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

## Exodus 13:4

### the month of Aviv

This is the name of the first month of the Hebrew calendar. Aviv is during the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> You are going out of Egypt on this day, in the month of Aviv.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> You are leaving Egypt on this day which is the first day of the month of Aviv.

## Exodus 13:5

### you must observe this act of worship

When the Israelites live in Canaan, they must celebrate the Passover on this day each year. See how you translated this phrase in [Exodus 12:25](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Amorite
- Jebus, Jebusite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- honey, honeycomb
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Amorite
- Jebus, Jebusite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- honey, honeycomb
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> When Yahweh brings you into the land of the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Hivites, and the Jebusites, the land that he swore to your ancestors to give you, a land flowing with milk and honey— then you must observe this act of worship in this month.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Later, when Yahweh brings you into the land where the descendants of Canaan, Heth, Amor, Hiv, and Jebus now live, the land that he promised to give to you, a land that will be very good for raising livestock and growing crops, you must celebrate this festival in this month every year.

## Exodus 13:6

### General Information:

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

### For seven days

"For 7 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- unleavened bread
- Yahweh
- devour
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- unleavened bread
- Yahweh
- devour
- feast, feasting

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> For seven days you must eat bread without yeast; on the seventh day there will be a feast to honor Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> For seven days the bread that you eat must not have any yeast in it. On the seventh day there must be a festival to honor Yahweh.

## Exodus 13:7

### Bread without yeast must be eaten

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must eat bread without yeast" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### no bread with yeast may be seen among you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You may not have any bread with yeast among you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### No yeast may be seen with you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You may not have any yeast" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### within any of your borders

"inside any of the borders of your land"

### Translation Words - ULT

- unleavened bread
- devour

### Translation Words - UST

- unleavened bread
- devour

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Bread without yeast must be eaten throughout the seven days; no bread with yeast may be seen among you. No yeast may be seen with you within any of your borders.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Do not eat bread that has yeast in it for seven days. You should not have any yeast or bread made with yeast anywhere in your land.

## Exodus 13:8

**On that day you are to say to your children, ‘This is because of what Yahweh did for me when I came out of Egypt.’**

The quotation can be stated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: “On that day you are to tell your children that this is because of what Yahweh did for you when you came out of Egypt” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> On that day you are to say to your children, ‘This is because of what Yahweh did for me when I came out of Egypt.’

### UST

<sup>8</sup> On the day the festival starts, you must tell your children, ‘We are doing this to remember what Yahweh did for our ancestors when they left Egypt.’

## Exodus 13:9

### This will be a reminder for you on your hand, and a reminder on your forehead

These are two different types of physical reminders so people will not forget something important. (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### a reminder for you on your hand

Moses speaks of celebrating the festival as if it were tying an object around their hands to remind them of what Yahweh had done.

Alternate translation: "like something you tie around your hand as a reminder" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### a reminder on your forehead

Moses speaks of celebrating the festival as if it were tying an object around their foreheads to remind them of what Yahweh had done.

Alternate translation: "like something you tie around your head as a reminder" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### so the law of Yahweh may be in your mouth

The words "in your mouth" here refers to the words that they speak. Alternate translation: "so you may always be speaking of the law of Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### strong hand

The word "hand" here represents God's actions or works. See how you translated this in [Exodus 6:1](#). Alternate translation: "the power I show in my works" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- hand
- strength, strengthen, strong
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- hand
- strength, strengthen, strong
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> This will be a reminder for you on your hand, and a reminder on your forehead. This is so the law of Yahweh may be in your mouth, for with a strong hand Yahweh brought you out of Egypt.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> This ritual will remind you how Yahweh brought your ancestors out of Egypt with his great power. The ritual will be like something you tie on your forehead or on your wrist. It will remind you to recite to others what Yahweh has instructed you.

## Exodus 13:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- feast, feasting

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Therefore you must keep this law at its appointed time from year to year.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> So you must celebrate this festival every year at the time Yahweh has appointed.



## Exodus 13:11

### when he gives the land to you

“when he gives the land of the Canaanites to you”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Canaan, Canaanite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Canaan, Canaanite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

#### ULT

**11** When Yahweh brings you into the land of the Canaanites, as he swore to you and to your ancestors to do, and when he gives the land to you,

#### UST

**11** Yahweh will bring you into the land where the descendants of Canaan live, as he promised to you and your ancestors that he would do. When he gives that land to you,

## Exodus 13:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- beast

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- beast

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> you must set apart to Yahweh the first offspring of every womb. All the firstborn offspring of your animals that are males, will belong to Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> you must give to Yahweh the firstborn males of all your animals. These all will belong to Yahweh.

## Exodus 13:13

### Every firstborn of a donkey

Israel is given a choice to kill the firstborn donkey or buy it back with a lamb.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- donkey, mule
- firstborn

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- donkey, mule
- firstborn

#### ULT

**13** Every firstborn of a donkey you must buy back with a lamb. If you do not buy it back, then you must break its neck. But each of your firstborn males among all your sons—you must buy them back.

#### UST

**13** You may keep the firstborn male donkeys, but you must buy them back by killing a lamb in the place of the donkey. If you do not want to buy back the donkey, you must kill it by breaking its neck. You must buy back every one of your own firstborn sons.

## Exodus 13:14

### When your son asks you later, 'What does this mean?' then you are to tell him

The first quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "When your son asks you later what this means, then you are to tell him" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### strong hand

The word "hand" here represents God's actions or works. See how you translated this in [Exodus 6:1](#). Alternate translation: "the power I show in my works" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the house of slavery

Moses speaks of Egypt as if it were a house where people keep slaves. See how you translated this in [Exodus 13:3](#). Alternate translation: "the place where you were slaves" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**14** When your son asks you later, 'What does this mean?' then you are to tell him, 'It was by a strong hand that Yahweh brought us out from Egypt, from the house of slavery.'

### UST

**14** In the future, when one of your children asks, 'What does this mean?' you must say to him, 'Yahweh brought our ancestors out of Egypt with his great power, and freed us from being slaves there.'

## Exodus 13:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- beast
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- firstborn
- firstborn
- firstborn

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- beast
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- firstborn
- firstborn
- firstborn

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> When Pharaoh stubbornly refused to let us go, Yahweh killed all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, both the firstborn of people and the firstborn of animals. That is why I sacrifice to Yahweh the firstborn male of every animal, and why I buy back the firstborn of my sons.'

### UST

<sup>15</sup> The king of Egypt did not let them leave his land, so Yahweh killed all the firstborn males in Egypt, both the boys and the firstborn of their livestock. That is why we now sacrifice to Yahweh all the firstborn of our livestock, but we buy back our own firstborn sons.'

## Exodus 13:16

### become a reminder on your hands, and a reminder on your forehead

This expresses two ways to remember the importance of the passover event. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 13:9](#). (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

**16** This will become a reminder on your hands, and a reminder on your forehead, for it was by a strong hand Yahweh brought us out of Egypt."

#### UST

**16** This will remind you about how Yahweh brought our ancestors out of Egypt by his great power; it will be like something you tie on your wrist or on your forehead to remind you of that."

## Exodus 13:17

### was nearby

“was close to where they were located”

### the people will change their minds...and...return to Egypt

Since Israelites had lived in slavery all their lives, they were more accustomed to peace than to war and would rather return to slavery than fight.

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God (2)
- Philistines
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly
- return
- comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- God (2)
- Philistines
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly
- return
- comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

### ULT

**17** When Pharaoh let the people go, God did not lead them by way of the land of the Philistines, although that land was nearby. For God said, “Perhaps the people will change their minds when they experience war and will then return to Egypt.”

### UST

**17** When the king of Egypt let the Israelite people go, God did not lead them to go through the land of the Philistines. That was a shorter road, but God said, “It would be bad if my people changed their minds when they realized that they will have to fight the Philistines to take their land. Then they would decide to go back to Egypt.”

## Exodus 13:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,

### ULT

**18** So God led the people around through the wilderness to the Sea of Reeds. The Israelites went up out of the land of Egypt armed for battle.

### UST

**18** Instead, God led them to go around through the wilderness toward the Sea of Reeds. When the Israelite people left Egypt, they were carrying weapons to fight their enemies.



## Exodus 13:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- son
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)
- Moses
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- son
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)
- Moses
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### ULT

**19** Moses took the bones of Joseph with him, for Joseph had made the Israelites solemnly swear and said, "God will surely rescue you, and you must carry away my bones with you."

### UST

**19** Moses had them take along the bones of Joseph with them because Joseph long ago had made the Israelite people promise that they would do that. He had said to them, "God will rescue your descendants out of Egypt. When that happens, you must carry my bones with you."

## Exodus 13:20

### camped at Etham

Etham is located south of the route heading towards the Philistines, at the border of the wilderness. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> The Israelites journeyed from Succoth and camped at Etham on the edge of the wilderness.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> The Israelite people left Succoth and walked to Etham at the edge of the wilderness, and they set up their tents there.

## Exodus 13:21

### pillar of cloud...pillar of fire

"a cloud in the shape of a column...fire in the shape of a column."  
God is with them in a cloud by day and in a fire by night.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- walk, walked

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- walk, walked

#### ULT

**21** Yahweh went before them by day in a pillar of cloud to lead them on the way. By night he went in a pillar of fire to give them light. In this way they could travel by day and by night.

#### UST

**21** When they walked during the daytime, Yahweh went in front of them in a tall white cloud to show them the way. During the night, he went in front of them in a tall cloud that looked like a fire. By doing this, he enabled them to travel in the daytime and also at nighttime.

## Exodus 13:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- column, pillar

### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- column, pillar

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Yahweh did not take away from before the people the daytime pillar of cloud or the nighttime pillar of fire.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> The tall cloud did not leave them. It was always in front of them, as a bright white cloud in the daytime and like a tall column of fire in the night.

## **Exodus 14**

### **Exodus 14 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This is an important event in the history of Israel, known as the “parting of the Sea of Reeds.”

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Pharaoh’s hard heart**

Pharaoh’s heart is often described as hard in this chapter. This means that his heart was not open or willing to understand Yahweh’s instructions. When his heart was hardened, it became less and less receptive to Yahweh.

##### **Pharaoh’s chariots**

These chariots were a fighting force. Pharaoh took an army to kill the Hebrew people. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

##### **Rhetorical Questions**

The Israelites asked a few rhetorical questions of Moses. These questions were not really directed at Moses, but at Yahweh. This showed their lack of faith in Yahweh. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [faith](#))

## Exodus 14:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses,

## Exodus 14:2

### Pi Hahiroth...Migdol...Baal Zephon

These are towns on Egypt's eastern border. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### You are to camp

Here the word "You" is plural and refers to Moses and the Israelites. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [return](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [return](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> "Say to the Israelites that they should turn and camp before Pi Hahiroth, between Migdol and the sea, before Baal Zephon. You are to camp by the sea opposite Pi Hahiroth.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> "Tell the Israelite people to turn around and go back and set up their tents in front of Pi Hahiroth. That town is between Migdol and the sea, near Baal Zephon. Set up your tents there close to the sea.

## Exodus 14:3

**Pharaoh will say about the Israelites, 'They are wandering in the land. The wilderness has closed in on them.'**

This can be stated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "Pharaoh will say the Israelites are wandering in the land and the wilderness has closed in on them" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### The wilderness has closed in on them

Pharaoh speaks of the wilderness as a person who has trapped the Israelites. (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Pharaoh will say about the Israelites, 'They are wandering in the land. The wilderness has closed in on them.'

### UST

<sup>3</sup> When the king knows you have done that, he will think, 'The Israelite people are confused. They are wandering around, and the desert blocks their path.'



## Exodus 14:4

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to instruct Moses on where to go and what Yahweh will do.

### I will harden Pharaoh's heart

Here "heart" refers to the Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 9:12](#). Alternate translation: "I will cause Pharaoh to become more defiant" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### he will pursue them

"Pharaoh will pursue the Israelites"

### I will get honor

"People will honor me"

### The Egyptians will know that I am Yahweh

"The Egyptians will understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God"

### So the Israelites camped as they were instructed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So the Israelites camped as Yahweh had instructed them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> I will harden Pharaoh's heart, and he will pursue them. I will get honor because of Pharaoh and all his army. The Egyptians will know that I am Yahweh." So the Israelites camped as they were instructed.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> But I will make the king stubborn again, and he will take his army and come after you. Then my people will praise me for winning a victory over the king and his army, and the Egyptians will know that I am Yahweh." So Moses told the Israelites that, and they did what he told them to do.

## Exodus 14:5

### When the king of Egypt was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When someone told the king of Egypt" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the king of Egypt

This refers to Pharaoh.

### had fled

"had run away"

### the minds of Pharaoh and his servants turned against the people

Here the word "minds" refers to their attitudes towards the Israelites. Alternate translation: "Pharaoh and his servants changed their attitudes about the people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### What have we done? We have released Israel from serving us.

They asked this question to show they thought they had done a foolish thing. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "We have done a stupid thing by letting Israel go free from working for us!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> When the king of Egypt was told that the Israelites had fled, the minds of Pharaoh and his servants turned against the people. They said, "What have we done? We have released Israel from serving us."

### UST

<sup>5</sup> When someone told the king that the Israelite people had left during the night, he and his leaders changed their minds and said, "What have we done? The Israelite people will no longer be our slaves!"

## Exodus 14:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then Pharaoh got his chariots ready and took his army with him.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> So the king got his chariot and his army ready.

## Exodus 14:7

### He took six hundred chosen chariots

“He took 600 of his best chariots” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> He took six hundred chosen chariots and all the other chariots of Egypt, with officers on all of them.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Then he selected six hundred of the best chariots, and in each chariot he placed a driver, a soldier, and a commander, and they left.

## Exodus 14:8

### Yahweh hardened the heart of Pharaoh

Here “heart” refers to the Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 9:12](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh caused Pharaoh to become more defiant” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- heart
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- heart
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Yahweh hardened the heart of Pharaoh, king of Egypt, and the king pursued the Israelites. Now the Israelites had gone away in triumph.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Yahweh made the king of Egypt stubborn, so he and his army went to pursue the Israelites. The Israelites marched out with confidence.

## Exodus 14:9

### Pi Hahiroth...Baal Zephon

These are towns on Egypt's eastern border. See how you translated them in [Exodus 14:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [horseman](#)
- [horse](#), [warhorse](#), [horseback](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [horseman](#)
- [horse](#), [warhorse](#), [horseback](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But the Egyptians pursued them, together with all his horses and chariots, his horsemen, and his army. They overtook the Israelites camping by the sea beside Pi Hahiroth, before Baal Zephon.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> The Egyptian army, with all the king's horses and chariots and horsemen, went after the Israelites. They caught up with them as they were camped near the sea close to Pi Hahiroth, in front of Baal Zephon.

## Exodus 14:10

### When Pharaoh came close

The word “Pharaoh” here represents the entire Egyptian army.  
 Alternate translation: “When Pharaoh and his army came close” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### they were terrified

“the Israelites were terrified”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### ULT

**10** When Pharaoh came close, the Israelites looked up and were surprised. The Egyptians were marching after them, and they were terrified. The Israelites cried out to Yahweh.

### UST

**10** When the king’s army got near, the Israelite people were surprised to see that the Egyptians were marching toward them. They were terrified, so they cried out to Yahweh to help them.

## Exodus 14:11

### Is it because there were no graves in Egypt, that you have taken us away to die in the wilderness?

The Israelites ask this question to express their frustration and fear of dying. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "There were plenty of graveyards in Egypt for us to be buried in. You did not have to take us into the wilderness to die!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Why have you treated us like this, bringing us out of Egypt?

The Israelites ask this question to rebuke Moses for bringing them to the desert to die. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not have treated us like this by bringing us out of Egypt!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> They said to Moses, "Is it because there were no graves in Egypt, that you have taken us away to die in the wilderness? Why have you treated us like this, bringing us out of Egypt?"

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> Then they said to Moses, "Certainly you did not think that there was not enough room in Egypt for us to be buried. So why did you bring us here to die in this wilderness? Look what you have done to us by bringing us out of Egypt!"



## Exodus 14:12

### Is this not what we told you in Egypt?

The Israelites ask this question to emphasize that this is what they had told Moses. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "This is exactly what we told you while we were in Egypt." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### We said to you, 'Leave us alone, so we can work for the Egyptians.'

This can be stated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "We told you to leave us alone, so we could work for the Egyptians." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Egypt, Egyptian
- desert, wilderness
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Egypt, Egyptian
- desert, wilderness
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

**12** Is this not what we told you in Egypt? We said to you, 'Leave us alone, so we can work for the Egyptians.' It would have been better for us to work for them than to die in the wilderness."

#### UST

**12** That is what we told you when we were in Egypt. We said, 'Leave us alone, and let us work for the Egyptians.' It would have been better for us to be slaves for the Egyptians than to die here in the desert!"

## Exodus 14:13

### Moses said to the people

Moses responds to the Israelites' fears.

### provide for you

The pronoun "you" refers to the Israelites. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### For you will never see again the Egyptians

Moses used a polite way of saying God was going to destroy the Egyptian army. Alternate translation: "For God will kill the Egyptians" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,

### ULT

**13** Moses said to the people, "Do not be afraid. Stand still and see the rescue that Yahweh will provide for you today. For you will never see again the Egyptians whom you see today."

### UST

**13** Moses said to the people, "Do not be afraid! Stand strong and see how Yahweh will rescue you. He will save you today, and the result will be that the Egyptians that you are looking at today—you will never see them again."

## Exodus 14:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- tongue, language

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- tongue, language

#### ULT

**14** Yahweh will fight for you, and you will only have to stand still.”

#### UST

**14** Yahweh will fight for you! Just stay calm. There is nothing else that you will have to do.”

## Exodus 14:15

### Why are you, Moses, continuing to call out to me?

Moses apparently had been praying to God for help so God uses this question to compel Moses to act. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Do not call out to me any longer, Moses." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [cry, cry out, outcry](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [cry, cry out, outcry](#)

#### ULT

**15** Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Why are you, Moses, continuing to call out to me? Tell the Israelites to go forward.

#### UST

**15** Then Yahweh said to Moses, "You must not call out to me for help any longer in this situation. Instead, tell the people to go forward.

## Exodus 14:16

### divide it in two

“divide the sea into two parts”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- hand

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- hand

#### ULT

**16** Lift up your staff, reach out with your hand over the sea and divide it in two, so that the people of Israel may go through the sea on dry ground.

#### UST

**16** Lift up your staff and stretch it out as though you were stretching it over the sea. The water will move away so that the Israelite people can go in the middle of the sea, walking on dry ground between the walls of water on each side.

## Exodus 14:17

### Be aware

“Know”

### I will harden the Egyptians’ hearts

Here “hearts” refers to the Egyptians themselves. Their stubborn attitude is spoken of as if their hearts were hard. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 9:12](#). Alternate translation: “I will cause the Egyptians to become more defiant” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### so they will go after them

“so that the Egyptians will go into the sea after the Israelites”

### Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- strength, strengthen, strong

### Translation Words - UST

- heart
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- strength, strengthen, strong

### ULT

**17** Be aware that I will harden the Egyptians’ hearts so they will go after them. I will get honor because of Pharaoh and all his army, his chariots, and his horsemen.

### UST

**17** I will make the Egyptians stubborn so that they will try to follow the Israelites. Then because of what I will do to the king, his army, his chariots, and his horsemen, my people will praise me.

## Exodus 14:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**18** Then the Egyptians will know that I am Yahweh when I have gotten honor because of Pharaoh, his chariots, and his horsemen."

### UST

**18** When I have won a glorious victory over the king, his chariots, and his horsemen, the other Egyptians will know that I am Yahweh, the God who can do anything."

## Exodus 14:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- messenger

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- messenger

### ULT

**19** The angel of God, who went before the Israelites, moved and went behind them. The pillar of cloud moved from before them and went to stand behind them.

### UST

**19** Then the angel of God, who had been in front of the Israelite people, moved and went behind them. The tall, bright cloud that had been in front of them also moved behind them



## Exodus 14:20

### the camp of Egypt and the camp of Israel

“the Egyptian army and the Israelite people”

### so one side did not come near the other

This means that the Egyptians and the Israelites could not approach one another.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian

### Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> The cloud came between the camp of Egypt and the camp of Israel. It was a dark cloud to the Egyptians, but it lit the night for the Israelites, so one side did not come near the other all night.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> until it was between the Egyptian army and the Israelite people. The cloud caused the Egyptian army to be in the darkness, but it gave light for the Israelites. As a result, neither group could come near the other group during the whole night.

## Exodus 14:21

### east wind

An east wind originates in the east and blows towards the west.

### east

where the sun rises

### the waters were divided

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh divided the waters" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

**21** Moses reached out with his hand over the sea. Yahweh drove the sea back by a strong east wind all that night and made the sea into dry land. In this way the waters were divided.

### UST

**21** That evening, Moses stretched out his hand as though he were stretching it over the sea. Then Yahweh sent a strong wind from the east. It blew all night and pushed the water apart, and it caused the land between the water to dry up.

## Exodus 14:22

### on their right hand and on their left

“on each side of them” or “on both sides of them”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> The Israelites went into the middle of the sea on dry ground. The waters formed a wall for them on their right hand and on their left.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> Then the Israelite people went on the dry land in the middle of the sea. The water was like a wall on each side of them, on the right side and on the left side.

## Exodus 14:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [horseman](#)
- [horse](#), [warhorse](#), [horseback](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [horseman](#)
- [horse](#), [warhorse](#), [horseback](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> The Egyptians pursued them. They went after them into the middle of the sea—all Pharaoh's horses, chariots, and horsemen.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Then the Egyptian army went after them into the middle of the sea with their horses and their chariots and chariot drivers.

## Exodus 14:24

### He caused panic among the Egyptians

Panic is when someone becomes so afraid that they cannot think normally.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

#### ULT

**24** But in the early morning hours, Yahweh looked down on the Egyptian army through the pillar of fire and cloud. He caused panic among the Egyptians.

#### UST

**24** Just before dawn, Yahweh looked down from the fiery cloud, and then he caused the Egyptian army to panic.

## Exodus 14:25

### Their chariot wheels were clogged

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Mud clogged their chariot wheels" or "Their chariot wheels were getting stuck in the mud" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [chariot, charioteers](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [chariot, charioteers](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Their chariot wheels were clogged, and the horsemen drove with difficulty. So the Egyptians said, "Let us flee from Israel, for Yahweh is fighting for them against us."

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> He caused the wheels of the chariots to get stuck in the ground so that they could hardly move. So the Egyptians said, "Yahweh is fighting for the Israelites against us; let us get out of here!"

## Exodus 14:26

**Yahweh said to Moses, "Reach out with your hand...and their horsemen."**

This can be stated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation:  
 "Yahweh told Moses to reach out with his hand over the sea so that the waters would come back onto the Egyptians, their chariots, and their horsemen."

**come back onto**

"fall on"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- return

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- return

### ULT

**26** Yahweh said to Moses, "Reach out with your hand over the sea so that the waters may come back onto the Egyptians, their chariots, and their horsemen."

### UST

**26** Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Stretch out your arm as though you were stretching it over the sea. Then the water will come back on the Egyptians, on their chariots, and their horsemen."

## Exodus 14:27

### The Egyptians fled into the sea

Since the sea was closing in on top of the Egyptians, instead of escaping, they were actually running right into the water.

### Yahweh drove the Egyptians

“Yahweh pushed the Egyptians” or “Yahweh threw the Egyptians”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- return

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- return

#### ULT

**27** So Moses reached out with his hand over the sea, and it returned to its normal course when the morning appeared. The Egyptians fled into the sea, and Yahweh drove the Egyptians into the middle of it.

#### UST

**27** So Moses stretched out his arm, and, as the sun was rising, the water returned to its normal level. The Egyptians tried to escape, but Yahweh hurled them back into the sea.



## Exodus 14:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- return

### Translation Words - UST

- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- return

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> The waters came back and covered Pharaoh's chariots, horsemen, and his entire army that had followed the chariots into the sea. No one survived.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> The water returned and covered the chariots, the horsemen, and the whole Egyptian army that had tried to follow the Israelites into the sea. Every one of the Egyptians died.

## Exodus 14:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> However, the Israelites walked on dry land in the middle of the sea. The waters were a wall for them on their right hand and on their left.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> But the Israelite people had already crossed through the sea by walking on dry ground, with the water being like two walls, one on the right side and one on the left side.

## Exodus 14:30

### out of the hand of the Egyptians

Here the word "hand" refers to power. Alternate translation: "from the Egyptians' power" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### on the seashore

"on the land along the edge of the sea"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue](#)

### ULT

**30** So Yahweh saved Israel that day out of the hand of the Egyptians, and Israel saw dead Egyptians on the seashore.

### UST

**30** That is the way Yahweh saved the Israelite people from the Egyptian army on that day. The Israelite people saw the Egyptians lying dead. Their bodies washed up on the shore.

## Exodus 14:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

**31** When Israel saw the great power that Yahweh used against the Egyptians, the people honored Yahweh, and they trusted in Yahweh and in his servant Moses.

### UST

**31** The Israelites saw what Yahweh did to the Egyptians by his great power, and they were in awe of Yahweh. They trusted in Yahweh, and they also trusted in Moses.

## Exodus 15

### Exodus 15 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetic songs in 15:1-18 and 15:21. (See: [Poetry](#))

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Yahweh's laws

In this chapter, Moses talks about Yahweh's laws. The law of Moses is about to be introduced. Although it has not yet been formally introduced, this is what is being referenced in this chapter in anticipation of the revelation of the law of Moses. (See: [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [the law](#) and [reveal](#), [revealed](#), [revelation](#))

## Exodus 15:1

### General Information:

This is a song about the events that happened in [Exodus 14:26-28](#).

### he has triumphed gloriously

It can be stated explicitly over whom Yahweh triumphed. Alternate translation: "he has achieved a glorious victory over the army of Egypt" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the horse and its rider he has thrown into the sea

Moses sang about God causing the sea to cover and drown the horse and rider as if God had thrown them into the sea. Alternate translation: "he has made the sea cover over the horse and rider" or "he has made the horse and rider drown in the sea" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the horse and its rider

This refers to all or many of the Egyptian horses and riders that were chasing the Israelites. Alternate translation: "the horses and their riders" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

### rider

This is a person who sits on a horse or travels in a chariot that a horse is pulling.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then Moses and the people of Israel sang this song to Yahweh. They sang, "I will sing to Yahweh, for he has triumphed gloriously; the horse and its rider he has thrown into the sea.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then Moses and all the Israelite people sang a song to Yahweh. They sang, "I will sing to Yahweh because he has won a great victory; He has thrown the horses and their riders into the sea!

## Exodus 15:2

### Yahweh is my strength

Possible meanings are 1) "Yahweh is the one who gives me strength" or 2) "Yahweh is the strong one who protects me." (See: [Metonymy](#))

### song

Moses calls Yahweh his song because Yahweh is the one he sings about. Alternate translation: "the one I sing about" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### he has become my salvation

Moses calls God his salvation because God saved him. Alternate translation: "he has saved me" or "he is the one who saves me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [exalt, exalted, exaltation](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [exalt, exalted, exaltation](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Yahweh is my strength and song, and he has become my salvation. This is my God, and I will praise him, my father's God, and I will exalt him.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Yahweh is the one who makes me strong, and he is the one I sing about. He is the one who has saved me. He is my God, and I will praise him. He is the one my father worshiped, and I will tell others how great he is.

## Exodus 15:3

### Yahweh is a warrior

Moses calls God a warrior because God powerfully fought against the Egyptians and won. Alternate translation: “Yahweh is like a warrior” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#) (2)
- [name](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#) (2)
- [name](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Yahweh is a warrior; Yahweh is his name.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> Yahweh is a warrior; Yahweh is his name.



## Exodus 15:4

### He has thrown Pharaoh's chariots and army into the sea

Moses sings about God causing the sea to cover Pharaoh's chariots and army as if God had thrown them into the sea. Alternate translation: "he has made the sea cover over Pharaoh's chariots and army" or "He has made Pharaoh's chariot riders and army drown in the sea" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [chariot](#), [charioteers](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [chariot](#), [charioteers](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> He has thrown Pharaoh's chariots and army into the sea. Pharaoh's chosen officers were drowned in the Sea of Reeds.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> He has thrown the king's chariots and his army into the sea; The king's best officers all drowned in the Sea of Reeds.

## Exodus 15:5

### they went down into the depths like a stone

Just as a stone does not float but sinks to the bottom of the sea, the enemy soldiers sank to the bottom of the sea. Alternate translation: “they went down into the deep water like a stone sinking to the bottom of the sea” (See: [Simile](#))

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> The depths covered them; they went down into the depths like a stone.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> The water covered them like a flood; they sank to the bottom like a stone.

## Exodus 15:6

### Your right hand, Yahweh, is glorious in power

Moses speaks of God as if God had hands. The right hand refers to God's power or the things God does powerfully. Alternate translation: "Yahweh, your power is glorious" or "Yahweh, what you do is glorious in power" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### your right hand, Yahweh, has shattered the enemy

Moses speaks of God as if God had hands. The right hand refers to God's power. Alternate translation: "Yahweh, your power has shattered the enemy" or "Yahweh, by your power you have shattered the enemy" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### has shattered the enemy

Moses speaks of the enemy as if it were fragile and could be shattered like glass or pottery. Alternate translation: "has completely destroyed the enemy" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Your right hand, Yahweh, is glorious in power; your right hand, Yahweh, has shattered the enemy.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> O Yahweh, your power is immense; with that power, O Yahweh, you have crushed the enemy into pieces.

## Exodus 15:7

### those who rose up against you

Rebelling against God is spoken of as rising up against him.  
Alternate translation: “those who rebelled against you” or “your enemies” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### You sent out your wrath

Moses speaks of God’s wrath as if it were a servant that God sent out to do something. Alternate translation: “You showed your wrath” or “You acted according to your wrath” (See: [Personification](#))

### it consumed them like stubble

Moses speaks of God’s wrath as if it were fire that could completely burn up things. His enemies were completely destroyed like stubble in a fire. Alternate translation: “it completely destroyed your enemies like a fire that burns up straw” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Simile](#))

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> In great majesty you overthrew those who rose up against you. You sent out your wrath; it consumed them like stubble.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> We honor you greatly because you have defeated your enemies. Because you were angry with them, you have destroyed them like a fire burns up straw.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [devour](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [devour](#)

## Exodus 15:8

### By the blast of your nostrils

Moses speaks of God as if God had a nose, and he speaks of the wind as if God blew the wind from his nose. Alternate translation: "You blew on the sea and" (See: [Personification](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> By the blast of your nostrils the waters were piled up; the flowing waters stood upright in a heap; the deep water was congealed in the heart of the sea.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> You blew on the sea, and the water piled up high; the water stood up like two walls. In the deepest part of the sea the water became thick, as though it were frozen.

## Exodus 15:9

### my desire will be satisfied on them

This can be expressed with an active form. Alternate translation: "I will satisfy my desire on them" or "I will take all I want from them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### my hand will destroy them

The enemies speak of destroying the Israelites by the power of their hands as if it were their hands that would destroy them. Alternate translation: "I will destroy them with my hand" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [hand](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [hand](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> The enemy said, 'I will pursue, I will overtake, I will share out the plunder; my desire will be satisfied on them; I will draw my sword; my hand will destroy them.'

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Our enemies said, 'We will go after them and catch up to them. We will draw our swords and strike them. After we defeat them, we will divide up everything we take from them.'

## Exodus 15:10

### But you blew with your wind

Moses spoke about God making the wind blow as if God blew the wind through his nose or mouth. Alternate translation: “But you made the wind blow” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### sank like lead in the mighty waters

Lead is a heavy metal that is commonly used to make things sink in water. The word “lead” here is used to show how fast God’s enemies were destroyed. Alternate translation: “sank as fast as lead in the deep turbulent waters” (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit](#), [spiritual](#)
- [noble](#), [nobleman](#), [royal official](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [spirit](#), [spiritual](#)
- [noble](#), [nobleman](#), [royal official](#)

### ULT

**10** But you blew with your wind, and the sea covered them; they sank like lead in the mighty waters.

### UST

**10** But you blew on them with your breath, and then the sea covered them. They sank like lead in the big waves.

## Exodus 15:11

### Who is like you, Yahweh, among the gods?

Moses uses this question to show how great God is. Alternate translation: "O Yahweh, no one is like you among the gods!" or "Yahweh, none of the gods is like you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Who is like you,...doing miracles?

Moses uses this question to show how great God is. Alternate translation: No one is like you. No one is majestic in holiness as you are, no one is honored in praises as you are, and no one does miracles as you do!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- praise, praised, praiseworthy

### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- praise, praised, praiseworthy

### ULT

**11** Who is like you, Yahweh, among the gods? Who is like you, majestic in holiness, honored in praises, doing miracles?

### UST

**11** Yahweh, among their gods, there is no god like you! You are glorious, completely different from all that you made. There is no one like you! Everyone fears and praises you for all the miracles you do!



## Exodus 15:12

### with your right hand

The phrase “right hand” represents the strong power of God.  
Alternate translation: “with your strong power” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### You reached out with your right hand

Moses speaks about God causing something to happen as if God reached out with his hand. Alternate translation: “With your strong power you made it happen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the earth swallowed them

Moses personifies the earth as if it could swallow or devour with it's mouth. Alternate translation: “the earth devoured them” (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

#### ULT

**12** You reached out with your right hand, and the earth swallowed them.

#### UST

**12** When you stretched out your right hand, the earth swallowed up our enemies!

## Exodus 15:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> In your covenant loyalty you have led the people you have rescued. In your strength you have led them to the holy place where you live.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> You never stop loving us, the people that you have rescued; with your power you are leading us to the land where you yourself live.

## Exodus 15:14

### tremble

This means to shake because you are afraid.

### terror will seize the inhabitants of Philistia

Moses speaks of terror as if it were a person that could forcefully grab hold of someone and make them extremely afraid. Alternate translation: “the inhabitants of Philistia will be afraid” (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistia](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [tremble, stagger](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Philistia](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [tremble, stagger](#)

### ULT

**14** The peoples will hear, and they will tremble; terror will seize the inhabitants of Philistia.

### UST

**14** The people of other nations will hear what you have done, and they will tremble. The people in Philistia will be terrified.

## Exodus 15:15

### will melt away

Moses speaks of people becoming weak from their fear as melting away. Alternate translation: “will be weak from fear” or “will be afraid and faint” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#), [Moabite](#)
- [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Moab](#), [Moabite](#)
- [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#)

#### ULT

**15** Then the chiefs of Edom will fear; the soldiers of Moab will shake; all the inhabitants of Canaan will melt away.

#### UST

**15** The chiefs in Edom will be dismayed. The leaders in Moab will be so afraid that they will shake. All those who live in Canaan will faint.

## Exodus 15:16

### Connecting Statement:

Moses continues to sing about how the people of other nations will feel when they see God's people.

### Terror and dread will fall on them

These two words mean that fear will come upon them. Alternate translation: "Fear will come upon them" (See: [Doublet](#))

### dread

Dread is extreme fear or anxiety about something that is going to happen or might happen.

### Because of your arm's power

God's arm represents his great strength. Alternate translation: "Because of your great strength" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### they will become as still as a stone

Possible meanings are 1) "They will be silent like stone" or 2) "They will be motionless as stone" (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [redeem](#), [redeemer](#), [redemption](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [terror](#), [terrorize](#), [terrify](#), [frightened](#), [panic](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [redeem](#), [redeemer](#), [redemption](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [terror](#), [terrorize](#), [terrify](#), [frightened](#), [panic](#)

### ULT

**16** Terror and dread will fall on them. Because of your arm's power, they will become as still as a stone until your people pass by, Yahweh— until the people you have rescued pass by.

### UST

**16** They will be terrified and fearful because of your great strength. But they will be as silent as stones until we, your people, march past them, the people you freed from being slaves in Egypt.

## Exodus 15:17

### You will bring them

Where God would bring them can be stated clearly. Since Moses was not already in Canaan, some languages would use “take” rather than “bring.” Alternate translation: “You will take your people to Canaan” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Go and Come](#))

### plant them on the mountain

Moses speaks about God giving his people the land to live in as if they were a tree that God was planting. Alternate translation: “settle them on the mountain” or “let them live on the mountain” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the mountain of your inheritance

This refers to Mount Zion in the land of Canaan.

### of your inheritance

Moses speaks about God promising to give his people the mountain forever as if he were giving it to them as an inheritance. Alternate translation: “that you have given them as an inheritance” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### that your hands have built

The phrase “your hands” refers to God’s power. Alternate translation: “that you have built by your power” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Predictive Past](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Yahweh
- hand

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Yahweh
- hand

### ULT

**17** You will bring them and plant them on the mountain of your inheritance, the place, Yahweh, that you have made to live in, the sanctuary, our Lord, that your hands have built.

### UST

**17** You will bring us into the promised land of Canaan. You will enable us to live on your hill, in the place that you, Yahweh, have chosen to be your home, in the holy place, our Lord, that you yourself will build.

## Exodus 15:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Yahweh will reign forever and ever."

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> O Yahweh, you will rule forever!"

## Exodus 15:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- walk, walked
- return
- horse, warhorse, horseback

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- walk, walked
- return
- horse, warhorse, horseback

### ULT

**19** For Pharaoh's horses went with his chariots and horsemen into the sea. Yahweh brought back the waters of the sea on them. But the Israelites walked on dry land in the middle of the sea.

### UST

**19** When the king's horses and chariots and horsemen tried to go through the sea, Yahweh caused the water to come back and cover them. But the Israelite people walked through the middle of the sea on dry ground.



## Exodus 15:20

### Miriam...Aaron

Miriam was the older sister of Moses and Aaron. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### tambourine

This is a musical instrument like a small drum that also has pieces of metal around the side that make a sound when shaken. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

**20** Miriam the prophetess, sister of Aaron, picked up a tambourine, and all the women went out with tambourines, dancing along with her.

### UST

**20** Then Miriam, who was Aaron's older sister and a prophetess, picked up her tambourine, and went out dancing with all the other women who had tambourines.

## Exodus 15:21

### he has triumphed gloriously

It can be stated explicitly over whom Yahweh triumphed. See how you translated this in [Exodus 15:1](#). Alternate translation: “he has achieved a glorious victory over the army of Egypt” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### The horse and his rider he has thrown into the sea

Miriam sang about God causing the sea to cover and drown the horse and rider as if God had thrown them into the sea. See how you translated this in [Exodus 15:1](#). Alternate translation: “He has made the horse and rider drown in the sea” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- horse, warhorse, horseback

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- horse, warhorse, horseback

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Miriam sang to them: “Sing to Yahweh, for he has triumphed gloriously. The horse and his rider he has thrown into the sea.”

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Miriam sang to Yahweh this song: “Sing to Yahweh because he has triumphed gloriously over his enemies. He has thrown the horses and their riders into the sea.”

## Exodus 15:22

### Moses led Israel

The word “Israel” represents the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “Moses led the Israelite people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### wilderness of Shur

We do not know the exact locations of this place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

### ULT

**22** Then Moses led Israel onward from the Sea of Reeds. They went out into the wilderness of Shur. They traveled for three days into the wilderness and found no water.

### UST

**22** Then Moses led the Israelite people away from the Sea of Reeds. They went to the wilderness of Shur. They walked for three days, but they could not find any water.

## Exodus 15:23

### Marah

We do not know the exact locations of this place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out

#### Translation Words - UST

- call, call out

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Then they came to Marah, but they could not drink the water there because it was bitter. So they called that place Marah.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> So they went on and came to a place named Marah. There was water there, but they could not drink it because it was bitter. That is why they named the place Marah, which is the Hebrew word that means 'bitter.'

## Exodus 15:24

### complained to Moses and said

“were unhappy and told Moses” or “angrily told Moses”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- people, people group,

#### Translation Words - UST

- Moses
- people, people group,

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> So the people complained to Moses and said, “What can we drink?”

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> The people complained to Moses, saying, “What are we going to drink?”

## Exodus 15:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- statute
- statute

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- statute
- statute

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Moses cried out to Yahweh, and Yahweh showed him a tree. Moses threw it into the water, and the water became sweet to drink. It was there that Yahweh gave them a strict law, and it was there that he tested them.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> So Moses prayed to Yahweh. Then Yahweh showed him a tree. So he took one of the branches and threw it into the water, and the water became good to drink. There at Marah, Yahweh gave them a fixed rule by which to live. He also tested them there to determine if they would obey him.

## Exodus 15:26

### the voice of Yahweh your God

Yahweh is speaking about his own voice. His voice represents what he says. Alternate translation: “my voice” or “what I say” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### do what is right in his eyes

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “do what Yahweh considers to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I will put on you none of the diseases

God speaks of causing people to have diseases as putting diseases on them. Alternate translation: “I will not cause any of you to have the diseases” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [statute](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [statute](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> He said, “If you carefully listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, and do what is right in his eyes, and if you give ear to his commands and obey all his laws—I will put on you none of the diseases that I put on the Egyptians, for I am Yahweh who heals you.”

### UST

<sup>26</sup> He said, “I am Yahweh, your God. If you will obey me when I speak to you and do those things that are right to me, and listen to all the things that I tell you, I will keep you from all the diseases that I brought on the Egyptians. Do not forget that I am Yahweh, the one who heals you.”

## Exodus 15:27

### Elim

This is an oasis in the desert, a place with water and shade trees.  
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### twelve

"12" (See: [Numbers](#))

### seventy

"70" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [palm](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [palm](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Then the people came to Elim, where there were twelve springs of water and seventy palm trees. They camped there by the water.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> After they left Marah, they came to a place named Elim. There were twelve springs of water and seventy palm trees there. So they camped there.



## Exodus 16

### Exodus 16 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Complaints

The Israelites complained about the amount of food Yahweh gave them, even when he miraculously provided their food for them. This is intended to show their ungratefulness and their sinful view of Yahweh. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

#### Prohibition against storing food

The people were not allowed to store the food, called manna, they were provided with. This is because they were to trust in Yahweh to provide for their needs every day. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

#### Sabbath

This is the first recorded celebration of the Sabbath rest. (See: [Sabbath](#))

#### Ark of the covenant

Although the covenant has not yet been made, it is referenced in Exodus 16:34. This is probably done either in anticipation of the building of the ark or as an editorial comment made by Moses after these events. (See: [covenant](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Wilderness of Sin

Sin is the name of a part of the Sinai Wilderness. It is not the description of a place, and it has nothing to do with sinning. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Exodus 16:1

### wilderness of Sin

The word “Sin” here is the Hebrew name of the wilderness. It is not the English word “sin.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### on the fifteenth day of the second month

This time coincides with the end of April and the beginning of May on Western calendars. Alternate translation: “on day 15 of the second month” (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> The people journeyed on from Elim, and all the community of Israelites came to the wilderness of Sin, which is between Elim and Sinai, on the fifteenth day of the second month after their departure from the land of Egypt.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> They left Elim, and all the Israelite people came to the wilderness of Sin between Elim and Sinai Mountain. That was on the fifteenth day of the second month after they left Egypt.

## Exodus 16:2

### The whole community of Israelites complained

"All the Israelites complained." This is a generalization. Moses and Aaron did not complain. Alternate translation: "The Israelites complained" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### complained

"were angry and spoke"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> The whole community of Israelites complained against Moses and Aaron in the wilderness.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> There in the wilderness, the Israelite people complained against Aaron and Moses.

## Exodus 16:3

### If only we had died

This is a way of saying that they wished that they had died. Alternate translation: "We wish that we had died"

### by Yahweh's hand

The phrase "Yahweh's hand" represents Yahweh's action. Alternate translation: "by Yahweh's action" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- bread
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- famine
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- bread
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- famine
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The Israelites said to them, "If only we had died by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full. For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger."

### UST

<sup>3</sup> They said to them, "We wish that Yahweh had killed us in Egypt! There we had meat to eat and all the bread that we wanted. But you have brought us into this desert in order that we will all starve to death!"

## Exodus 16:4

### I will rain down bread from heaven for you

God speaks of food coming down from heaven as if it were rain.  
Alternate translation: "I will make bread come down from heaven like rain" or "I will make bread fall to you from the sky" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### bread

God speaks of the food that he will send as if it were bread. The Israelites would eat this food every day, just as they had eaten bread every day before this. Alternate translation: "food" or "food like bread" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### walk in my law

God speaks of obeying his law as walking in it. Alternate translation: "obey my law" or "live according to my law" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### my law

"my command"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [bread](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [glean, gleanings](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [bread](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [glean, gleanings](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, "I will rain down bread from heaven for you. The people will go out and gather a day's portion every day so that I may test them to see whether or not they will walk in my law."

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, "Listen to what I am going to do. I am going to send something from the sky that will take the place of bread for you. When I do that, the people must go out of their tents every day and gather enough to eat on that day. When I do that, I will find out whether they will obey me or not."

## Exodus 16:5

### It will come about on the sixth day, that they

"It will happen on the sixth day that they" or "On the sixth day they"

### on the sixth day

"on day 6" (See: [Numbers](#))

### twice

two times

### Translation Words - ULT

- [glean](#), [gleanings](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [glean](#), [gleanings](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> It will come about on the sixth day, that they will gather twice as much as what they gathered every day before, and they will cook what they bring in."

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> On the sixth day after I start doing that, they will be able to gather twice as much as on the other days and not have to gather any on the seventh day. Then they can prepare it to eat it."

## Exodus 16:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then Moses and Aaron said to all the people of Israel, "In the evening you will know that it is Yahweh who has brought you out from the land of Egypt.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> So Aaron and Moses said to all the Israelite people, "This evening you will know that it was Yahweh, not us, who brought you out of Egypt.

## Exodus 16:7

### Who are we for you to complain against us?

Moses and Aaron used this question to show the people that it was foolish to complain against them. Alternate translation: “We are not powerful enough for you to complain against us.” or “It is foolish to complain against us, because we cannot do what you want.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

#### Translation Words - UST

- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> In the morning you will see Yahweh's glory, for he hears your complaining against him. Who are we for you to complain against us?"

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Tomorrow morning you will see how great Yahweh is because he has heard how you have complained against him. He is the one to whom you have really complained because we are just his servants."



## Exodus 16:8

### bread

Moses speaks of the food that God will send as if it were bread. The Israelites would eat this food every day, just as they had eaten bread every day before this. See how you translated it in [Exodus 16:4](#). Alternate translation: “food” or “food like bread” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Who are Aaron and I?

Moses used this question to show the people that he and Aaron did not have the power to give them what they wanted. Alternate translation: “Aaron and I cannot give you what you want.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Your complaints are not against us; they are against Yahweh

The people were complaining against Moses and Aaron, who were Yahweh’s servants. So by complaining against them, the people were really complaining against Yahweh. Alternate translation: Your complaints are not really against us; they are against Yahweh, because we are his servants” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [bread](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [flesh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [bread](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Moses also said, “You will know this when Yahweh gives you meat in the evening and bread in the morning to the full—for he has heard the complaints that you speak against him. Who are Aaron and I? Your complaints are not against us; they are against Yahweh.”

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then Moses also said, “Each evening Yahweh will give you meat to eat, and each morning he will give you something that will take the place of bread because he has heard what you have complained about. Yahweh is the one to whom you have really complained, not us. We are just his servants.”

## Exodus 16:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Aaron

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Aaron

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Moses said to Aaron, "Say to all the community of the people of Israel, 'Come near before Yahweh, for he has heard your complaints.'"

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Then Moses said to Aaron, "Tell all the Israelite people, 'Come and stand here in the presence of Yahweh because he has heard what you have been complaining about.'"

## Exodus 16:10

### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. The important event here is the people seeing Yahweh's glory. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### behold

The word “behold” here shows that the people saw something interesting.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Aaron

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Aaron

### ULT

**10** It came about, as Aaron spoke to the whole community of the people of Israel, that they looked toward the wilderness, and, behold, Yahweh's glory appeared in the cloud.

### UST

**10** So Aaron told them that. As Aaron was talking to all the Israelite people, they looked toward the desert and were surprised to see the dazzling light of Yahweh in the cloud that had been leading them.

## Exodus 16:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses,

## Exodus 16:12

### bread

God speaks of the food that he will send as if it were bread. The Israelites would eat this food every day, just as they had eaten bread every day before this. See how you translated it in [Exodus 16:4](#). Alternate translation: “food” or “food like bread” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**12** “I have heard the complaints of the people of Israel. Speak to them and say, ‘In the evening you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be filled with bread. Then you will know that I am Yahweh your God.’”

### UST

**12** “I have heard what the Israelite people have been complaining about. So say to them, ‘At twilight, you will have meat to eat, and tomorrow morning you will have something that will take the place of bread. You will have all you want of it to eat. Then you will know that I am Yahweh, your God.’”

## Exodus 16:13

### It came about...that

This phrase is used here to mark an important part of the events. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### quails

These are small, plump birds. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

#### ULT

**13** It came about in the evening that quails came up and covered the camp. In the morning the dew lay round about the camp.

#### UST

**13** That evening quails appeared, and there were so many that they covered the campsite. The next morning there was something like small drops of water all around the campsite.

**Exodus 16:14****like frost**

The original readers knew what frost is like, so this phrase would help them understand what the flakes were like. Frost is frozen dew that forms on the ground. It is very fine. Alternate translation: “that looked like frost” or “that was fine like frost” (See: [Simile](#) and [Translate Unknowns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [face](#), [facial](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [face](#), [facial](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

**ULT**

**14** When the dew was gone, there on the surface of the wilderness were thin flakes like frost on the ground.

**UST**

**14** When the water dried up, on the ground there was a thin layer of something that looked like small white flakes. It looked like ice laying on the ground.

## Exodus 16:15

### bread

Moses speaks of the food that God sent as if it were bread. The Israelites would eat this food every day, just as they had eaten bread every day before this. See how you translated it in [Exodus 16:4](#). Alternate translation: “food” or “food like bread” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [bread](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [bread](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**15** When the people of Israel saw it, they said one to another, “What is it?” They did not know what it was. Moses said to them, “It is the bread that Yahweh has given you to eat.”

### UST

**15** When the Israelite people saw it, since they had never seen it before and did not know what it was, they said to each other, “What is it?” Moses replied to them, “It is something Yahweh has given you to eat, to take the place of bread.”



## Exodus 16:16

### Connecting Statement:

Moses continues telling the people about the food that God was providing for them.

### omer

2 liters (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [glean, gleanings](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [glean, gleanings](#)

### ULT

**16** This is the command that Yahweh has given: 'You must gather, each one of you, the amount you need to eat, an omer for each person of the number of your people. This is how you will gather it: Gather enough to eat for every person who lives in your tent.'"

### UST

**16** This is what Yahweh has commanded: Each of you should gather as much as you need to eat. Gather two liters for each person who lives in your tents."

## Exodus 16:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- glean, gleanings

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- glean, gleanings

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> The people of Israel did so. Some gathered more, some gathered less.

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> So that is what the Israelite people did. Some gathered more and some gathered less.

## Exodus 16:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- glean, gleanings

### Translation Words - UST

- glean, gleanings

#### ULT

**18** When they measured it with an omer measure, those who had gathered much had nothing left over, and those who had gathered little had no lack. Each person gathered enough to meet their need.

#### UST

**18** But when they measured what they had gathered, those who had gathered a lot did not have anything left over. Those who had gathered less still had enough to eat. Each person gathered just enough.

## Exodus 16:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Then Moses said to them, “No one must leave any of it until morning.”

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> Moses said to them, “Do not leave any of it to eat tomorrow morning!”

## Exodus 16:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> However, they did not listen to Moses. Some of them left some of it until morning, but it bred worms and became foul. Then Moses became angry with them.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> Some of them did not pay any attention to what Moses said. They kept some of it until the next morning. However, it was full of maggots and smelled rotten. That made Moses angry.

## Exodus 16:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- glean, gleanings

### Translation Words - UST

- glean, gleanings

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> They gathered it morning by morning. Each person gathered enough to eat for that day. When the sun became hot, it melted.

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> Each morning they gathered as much as they needed. Later, when the sun got hot, what was left on the ground melted.

## Exodus 16:22

### It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. Verses 16:22-30 tell about what the people did concerning the manna on the sixth and seventh days of the week. If your language has a way for marking this as a new part of the story, you could consider using it here.

### on the sixth day

“on day 6” (See: [Numbers](#))

### twice

two times

### bread

This refers to the bread that appeared as thin flakes on the ground each morning.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bread](#)
- [glean, gleanings](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bread](#)
- [glean, gleanings](#)

### ULT

**22** It came about that on the sixth day they gathered twice as much bread, two omers for each person. All the leaders of the community came and told this to Moses.

### UST

**22** On the sixth day after they started gathering it, each person was able to gather four liters, which was twice as much as they gathered on the other days. When the leaders of the people came to Moses and told him about that,

## Exodus 16:23

### a solemn rest

"a day to rest quietly and think seriously"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Sabbath

#### Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Sabbath

#### ULT

**23** He said to them, "This is what Yahweh has said: 'Tomorrow is a solemn rest, a holy Sabbath in Yahweh's honor. Bake what you want to bake, and boil what you want to boil. All that remains over, set it aside for yourselves until morning.'"

#### UST

**23** Moses said to them, "This is what Yahweh has told you: Tomorrow will be a day for you to rest. It will be a day for Yahweh. So today, bake or boil what you will need for today and for tomorrow. Whatever is left this evening, you should put aside and keep it to eat tomorrow."



## Exodus 16:24

### did not become foul

“did not smell rotten”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> So they set it aside until morning, as Moses had instructed. It did not become foul, nor was there any worm in it.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> So they did what Moses told them. What was left over, they kept until the next day. It did not spoil and did not get maggots in it!

## Exodus 16:25

**today is a day reserved as a Sabbath to honor Yahweh**

“today is a Sabbath and is to be used only for honoring Yahweh”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Sabbath
- Moses
- devour

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Sabbath
- Moses
- devour

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Moses said, “Eat that food today, for today is a day reserved as a Sabbath to honor Yahweh. Today you will not find it in the fields.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> On that day, Moses said, “Eat today what you have saved from yesterday because today is a day of rest to Yahweh. Today you will not find any of that food outside.

## Exodus 16:26

### but the seventh day

“but on day seven” (See: [Numbers](#))

### manna

This was the name the Israelites gave to the bread that Yahweh caused to appear for them each morning.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Sabbath](#)
- [glean, gleanings](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Sabbath](#)
- [glean, gleanings](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> You will gather it during six days, but the seventh day is the Sabbath. On the Sabbath there will be no manna.”

### UST

<sup>26</sup> Every week, you must gather it for six days; but on the seventh day, which will be a day of rest for you, you will not find any.”

## Exodus 16:27

### they found none

“they did not find any manna”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- glean, gleanings
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- glean, gleanings
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> It came about on the seventh day that some of the people went out to gather manna, but they found none.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> On the seventh day, some of the people went outside their tents to gather some of that food, but there was none.

## Exodus 16:28

### General Information:

Yahweh speaks to Moses, but the word “you” refers to the people of Israel in general.

### How long will you refuse to keep my commandments and my laws?

God used this question to scold the people because they did not obey his laws. Alternate translation: “You people still do not keep my commandments and laws!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### to keep my commandments and my laws

“to obey my commandments and my laws”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

**28** Then Yahweh said to Moses, “How long will you refuse to keep my commandments and my laws?”

### UST

**28** Then Yahweh told Moses to say this to the people: “Yahweh is angry because for a long time you people have refused to do all the things that he has told you to do!”

## Exodus 16:29

### Yahweh has given you the Sabbath

Yahweh speaks about teaching people to rest on the Sabbath as if the Sabbath were a gift. Alternate translation: "I, Yahweh, have taught you to rest on the Sabbath" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### sixth day...two days...seventh day

"day 6...2 days...day 7" (See: [Numbers](#))

### bread

This refers to the bread that appeared as thin flakes on the ground each morning.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [bread](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [bread](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**29** See, Yahweh has given you the Sabbath. So on the sixth day he is giving you bread for two days. Each of you must stay in his own place; no one must go out from his place on the seventh day."

### UST

**29** Listen! Yahweh has given you a day of rest. So on the sixth day of each week, he will be giving you enough of this food for two days. Each of you should stay in his tent and do no work on the seventh day!"

## Exodus 16:30

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> So the people rested on the seventh day.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> So the people rested on the seventh day.

## Exodus 16:31

### coriander seed

Coriander is also known as cilantro. People dry the seeds and grind them into a powder and put it in food to give it flavor. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### wafers

very thin biscuits or crackers

### Translation Words - ULT

- [manna](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [manna](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

**31** The people of Israel called that food “manna.” It was white like coriander seed, and its taste was like wafers made with honey.

### UST

**31** The Israelite people called this food ‘manna,’ which sounds like the Hebrew word that means ‘what is it?’ It looked white, like the color of coriander seeds, and it tasted like thin wafers made with honey.



## Exodus 16:32

### omer

2 liters (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### bread

This refers to the bread that appeared as thin flakes on the ground each morning.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)
- [generation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)
- [generation](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Moses said, "This is what Yahweh has commanded: 'Let an omer of manna be kept throughout your people's generations so that your descendants might see the bread with which I fed you in the wilderness, after I brought you out from the land of Egypt.'"

### UST

<sup>32</sup> Moses said, "This is what Yahweh has told you: 'You must keep two liters of it for all future generations so that they can see the food that took the place of bread that I gave to your ancestors when I brought them out of Egypt.'"

## Exodus 16:33

### an omer

“two liters” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [manna](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [generation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [manna](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [generation](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Moses said to Aaron, “Take a pot and put an omer of manna into it. Preserve it before Yahweh to be kept throughout the people’s generations.”

### UST

<sup>33</sup> And he said to Aaron, “Take a jar, and put two liters of manna in it. Then put it in a place where Yahweh can see it. It is to be kept like that for all future generations.”

## Exodus 16:34

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> As Yahweh commanded Moses, Aaron stored it beside the covenant decrees in the ark.

### UST

<sup>34</sup> As Yahweh had commanded Moses, Aaron put the jar in front of the box that contained the stone slabs on which the Ten Commandments were written.

## Exodus 16:35

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- manna
- manna (2)
- Israel, Israelites
- Canaan, Canaanite
- devour
- devour
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- manna
- manna (2)
- Israel, Israelites
- Canaan, Canaanite
- devour
- devour
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> The people of Israel ate manna forty years until they came to inhabited land. They ate it until they came to the borders of the land of Canaan.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> The Israelite people ate manna every day for forty years until they came to the border of the land of Canaan.

## Exodus 16:36

### Now an omer is a tenth of an ephah

An omer and an ephah are both containers for measuring volume. The original readers would have known how much an ephah was. This sentence would help them know how much an omer was. For languages that do not use fractions, this can be reworded. Alternate translation: "Now ten omers equal one ephah" (See: [Biblical Volume](#) and [Fractions](#))

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Now an omer is a tenth of an ephah.

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> Now two liters is a tenth of an ephah.

## **Exodus 17**

### **Exodus 17 General Notes**

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Rhetorical Questions**

Moses uses several rhetorical questions in this chapter. The purpose of these questions is to convince people of their sin. Likewise, the people's rhetorical question showed their ignorance. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#))

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **Wilderness of Sin**

Sin is the name of a part of the Sinai Wilderness. It is not the description of a place, and it has nothing to do with sinning. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Exodus 17:1

### wilderness of Sin

The word “Sin” here is the Hebrew name of the wilderness. It is not the English word “sin.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 16:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Rephidim

This means “the resting place,” a place to rest on long journeys through the wilderness. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> The whole community of the Israelites journeyed from the wilderness of Sin, following Yahweh's instructions. They camped at Rephidim, but there was no water for the people to drink.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Obeying what Yahweh commanded, all the Israelite people moved from the wilderness of Sin. They traveled from one place to another. They camped at a place called Rephidim, but there was no water there for the people to drink.

## Exodus 17:2

### Why do you quarrel with me? Why do you test Yahweh?

Moses uses these questions to scold the people. Alternate translation: "You should not quarrel with me! You should not test Yahweh!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#) (2)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [rebuke](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#) (2)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [rebuke](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> So the people blamed Moses for their situation and said, "Give us water to drink." Moses said, "Why do you quarrel with me? Why do you test Yahweh?"

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> So the people complained to Moses again, saying, "Give us water to drink!" Moses replied to them, "Why are you speaking against me? And why are you trying to test whether Yahweh has the power to give you what you need?"



## Exodus 17:3

### To kill us and our children and our cattle with thirst?

The people use this question to accuse Moses of wanting to kill them. Alternate translation: "You only brought us out here to kill us and our children and cattle by not letting us have any water to drink!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The people were very thirsty, and they complained against Moses. They said, "Why have you brought us up out of Egypt? To kill us and our children and our cattle with thirst?"

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> But the people were very thirsty, and they continued to complain to Moses. They were saying, "Why did you bring us up out of Egypt? Did you bring us here to cause us and our children and animals to die from thirst?"

## Exodus 17:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then Moses cried out to Yahweh,  
“What should I do with this people?  
They are almost ready to stone me.”

### UST

<sup>4</sup> So Moses prayed to Yahweh. He said,  
“How shall I deal with these people?  
They are almost ready to kill me by  
throwing stones at me!”

## Exodus 17:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- hand
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- hand
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, “Go on ahead of the people, and take with you some elders of Israel. Take with you the staff with which you struck the river, and go.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, “Lead the people and walk in front of them. Take some of the elders of the Israelite people with you. Carry in your hand the staff you used to strike the Nile River.

**Exodus 17:6**

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**Translation Words - ULT**

- command, commandment
- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- people, people group,
- elder, older, old

**Translation Words - UST**

- command, commandment
- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- people, people group,
- elder, older, old

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> I will stand before you there on the rock at Horeb, and you will strike the rock. Water will come out of it for the people to drink.” Then Moses did so in the sight of the elders of Israel.

**UST**

<sup>6</sup> Listen to me! I will stand in front of you on top of a large rock at the foot of Mount Sinai. Strike the rock with your stick. When you do that, water for the people to drink will flow out of the rock.” Moses did what God had said, and the elders were there with him when the water flowed out of the rock.

## Exodus 17:7

### Massah

a place in the desert whose name means “testing” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Meribah

a place in the desert whose name means “complaining” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- declare, proclaim, announce

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> He called that place Massah and Meribah because of the Israelites' complaining, and because they had tested the Lord by saying, “Is Yahweh among us or not?”

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Moses gave that place two names in the Hebrew language—Masseh, which means ‘testing,’ and Meribah, which means ‘complaining.’ He gave it the name Massah because the Israelite people were testing Yahweh, saying “Is Yahweh really among us and able to help us, or not?” and Moses gave it the name Meribah because they were complaining all the time to him.

## Exodus 17:8

### Rephidim

This was the name of a place in the desert. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then an army of the Amalek people came and attacked Israel at Rephidim.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then the people of Amalek came and fought against the Israelite people at Rephidim.

## Exodus 17:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- God
- pray, prayer
- Moses
- Joshua
- hand
- head

### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- God
- pray, prayer
- Moses
- Joshua
- hand
- head

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So Moses said to Joshua, "Choose some men and go out. Fight with Amalek. Tomorrow I will stand on top of the hill with the staff of God in my hand."

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Moses said to Joshua, "Choose some men to go out and fight against the people of Amalek tomorrow. I will stand on the top of the hill, holding the staff that God told me to carry."

## Exodus 17:10

### So Joshua fought Amalek

Joshua represents himself and the Israelites that he led into battle. Alternate translation: “So Joshua and the men he chose fought against the Amalekites” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Hur

Hur was a friend of Moses and Aaron. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [head](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [head](#)

### ULT

**10** So Joshua fought Amalek as Moses had instructed, while Moses, Aaron, and Hur went up to the top of the hill.

### UST

**10** So Joshua obeyed Moses. He took some men to fight against the people of Amalek. While they were fighting, Aaron, Hur, and Moses went up to the top of the hill so that they could see the whole battle area.



## Exodus 17:11

### Israel was winning...Amalek would begin to win

The words "Israel" and "Amalek" represent the fighters from those groups. Alternate translation: "the Israelite fighters were winning... the Amalekite fighters would begin to win" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#) (2)
- [rest, rested, restless](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#) (2)
- [rest, rested, restless](#)

#### ULT

**11** While Moses was holding his hands up, Israel was winning; when he let his hands rest, Amalek would begin to win.

#### UST

**11** Whenever Moses lifted up his arms, the Israelite men started to win the battle; whenever he lowered his arms, the people of Amalek started to win.

## Exodus 17:12

### hands became heavy

The author writes of Moses' arms becoming tired as if his hands became heavy. Alternate translation: "arms became tired" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

#### ULT

**12** When Moses' hands became heavy, Aaron and Hur took a stone and put it under him for him to sit on. At the same time, Aaron and Hur held his hands up, one person on one side of him, and the other person on the other side. So Moses' hands were held steady until the sun went down.

#### UST

**12** But Moses' arms became tired. So Aaron and Hur rolled a large stone for him to sit on. While he was sitting on it, those two held up his arms, one man on either side of him. In that way, they kept his arms lifted up until the sun went down.

## Exodus 17:13

### with the sword

The sword represents battle. Alternate translation: “in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Joshua
- people, people group,
- sword, swordsmen

#### Translation Words - UST

- Joshua
- people, people group,
- sword, swordsmen

#### ULT

**13** So Joshua defeated the people of Amalek with the sword.

#### UST

**13** In this way Joshua and the men with him defeated the people of Amalek in battle.

## Exodus 17:14

### I will completely blot out the memory of Amalek

God speaks of destroying Amalek as if he were removing people's memory of Amalek. When a group of people is completely destroyed, there is nothing to remind people about them. Alternate translation: "I will completely destroy Amalek" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Amalek

This refers to the Amalekites. Alternate translation: Amalekites" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Joshua
- blot out, wipe out
- blot out, wipe out

### Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Joshua
- blot out, wipe out
- blot out, wipe out

### ULT

**14** Yahweh said to Moses, "Write this in a book and read it in Joshua's hearing, because I will completely blot out the memory of Amalek from under the skies."

### UST

**14** Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Write an account of this battle and then read it to Joshua. Also write that I will completely destroy the people of Amalek."

## Exodus 17:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- name
- Moses
- declare, proclaim, announce

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- name
- Moses
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Then Moses built an altar and he called it "Yahweh is my banner."

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> Then Moses built a stone altar there and named it "Yahweh is my flag."

## Exodus 17:16

### a hand was lifted up

People would raise their hand when they made a promise or pledge, so raising the hand represents making a promise. Alternate translation: “a promise was made” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### a hand was lifted up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh lifted up his hand” or “Yahweh made a solemn promise” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [generation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [generation](#)

### ULT

**16** He said, “For a hand was lifted up to the throne of Yahweh—that Yahweh will wage war with Amalek from generation to generation.”

### UST

**16** He said, “A promise was made in front of the throne of Yahweh: Yahweh will fight against the people of Amalek forever!”

## **Exodus 18**

### **Exodus 18 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Leadership lessons**

Jethro taught Moses an important leadership lesson in this chapter. Many scholars look at this chapter for important leadership lessons. Moses delegated some of his responsibilities to other godly men so that he would not become worn out by all the demands made of him. (See: [godly](#), [godliness](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#))

## Exodus 18:1

### Moses' father-in-law

This refers to the father of the wife of Moses.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Jethro, the priest of Midian, Moses' father-in-law, heard of all that God had done for Moses and for Israel his people. He heard that Yahweh had brought Israel out of Egypt.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Jethro, who was the priest for the people of Midian, and who was also Moses' father-in-law, heard about all that God had done for the Israelite people. He heard about how Yahweh had brought them out of Egypt.



## Exodus 18:2

### took Zipporah, Moses' wife

Possible meanings are 1) Jethro took Zipporah to Moses, or 2) Jethro had earlier welcomed back Zipporah.

### after he had sent her home

This is something Moses had done earlier. The full meaning of the can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "after Moses had sent her home to her parents" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Jethro, Moses' father-in-law, took Zipporah, Moses' wife, after he had sent her home,

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> Moses had sent his wife Zipporah and his two sons back home when he was returning to Egypt. But now Jethro came to him,

## Exodus 18:3

### and her two sons

This is the ending of the sentence that begins with the words “Jethro...took Zipporah” in verse 2. Possible meanings are 1) Jethro took Zipporah and her two sons to Moses, or 2) Jethro had earlier welcomed back Zipporah and her two sons.

### Gershom

This is a son of Moses and Zipporah, whose name means “foreigner.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- alien, foreign, foreigner

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- name
- alien, foreign, foreigner

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> and her two sons; the name of the one son was Gershom, for Moses had said, “I have been a foreigner in a foreign land.”

### UST

<sup>3</sup> bringing Zipporah and her sons. One son was named Gershom, which sounds like the Hebrew word that means “foreigner” because Moses had said, “I have been a foreigner living in another land.”

## Exodus 18:4

### Eliezer

This is a son of Moses and Zipporah, whose name means “God is the one who helps me.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Pharaoh’s sword

This represents being killed by Pharaoh or Pharaoh’s army. Alternate translation: “being killed by Pharaoh” or “being killed by Pharaoh’s army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> The name of the other was Eliezer, for Moses had said, “My ancestor’s God was my help. He rescued me from Pharaoh’s sword.”

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Her other son was named Eliezer, which sounds like the Hebrew word that means “God helps me” because Moses had said, “God, whom my father worshiped, has helped me and saved me from being killed by the king of Egypt.”

## Exodus 18:5

### where he was camped

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “where he camped with the Israelites” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Moses
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- Moses
- Moses

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Jethro, Moses' father-in-law, came with Moses' sons and his wife to Moses in the wilderness where he was camped at the mountain of God.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> While Moses was camped with the Israelite people in the wilderness near Sinai, God's holy mountain, Jethro came to him, bringing along Moses' wife and two sons.

## Exodus 18:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Moses

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> He said to Moses, "I, your father-in-law Jethro, am coming to you with your wife and her two sons."

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Jethro had sent a message to Moses, "I, your father-in-law, Jethro, am coming to see you. I am bringing your wife and her two sons!"

## Exodus 18:7

### bowed down, and kissed him

These symbolic acts were the normal way that people showed great respect and devotion in that culture. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [prostrate](#), [worship](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [prostrate](#), [worship](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Moses went out to meet his father-in-law, bowed down, and kissed him. They asked about each other's welfare and then went into the tent.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> So Moses went out of the campsite to meet his father-in-law. He bowed before him and kissed him on the cheek. They both asked each other, "Have you been well?" Then they went into Moses' tent.

## Exodus 18:8

### for Israel's sake

The word "Israel" represents the Israelite people. Alternate translation: "in order to help the Israelite people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### all the hardships that had come to them

Moses writes of hardships happening to them as if hardships had come to them. Alternate translation: "all the hardships that had happened to them" or "all the hardships they had experienced" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Moses told his father-in-law all that Yahweh had done to Pharaoh and the Egyptians for Israel's sake, about all the hardships that had come to them along the way, and how Yahweh had rescued them.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Moses told Jethro everything that Yahweh had done to the king and all the other people in Egypt in order to help the Israelite people. He also told him about the troubles they had experienced on the way, and about how Yahweh had helped them.

## Exodus 18:9

### the hand of the Egyptians

The hand represents the power of someone to do something.  
Alternate translation: “the power of the Egyptians...the power of Pharaoh” or “what the Egyptians were doing to you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Jethro rejoiced over all the good that Yahweh had done for Israel, in that he had rescued them from the hand of the Egyptians.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Jethro was happy when he heard all that Yahweh had done for the Israelite people.



## Exodus 18:10

### the hand of the Egyptians...the hand of Pharaoh

The hand represents the power of someone to do something.  
Alternate translation: "the power of the Egyptians...the power of Pharaoh" or "what the Egyptians were doing to you...what Pharaoh was doing to you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Jethro said, "May Yahweh be praised, for he has rescued you from the hand of the Egyptians and from the hand of Pharaoh, and delivered the people from the hand of the Egyptians.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> He said, "Praise Yahweh, who has rescued you from the power of the Egyptian army, and out of the power of the king of the Egyptians (who is called Pharaoh), and has set the Israelites free from the control of the Egyptian people!

## Exodus 18:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- proud, pride, prideful
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- proud, pride, prideful
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**11** Now I know that Yahweh is greater than all the gods, because when the Egyptians treated the Israelites arrogantly, God rescued his people."

### UST

**11** Now I know that Yahweh is greater than all other gods because he rescued you from the power of the proud Egyptians when they were causing you to suffer."

## Exodus 18:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Moses
- Aaron
- bread
- elder, older, old
- burnt offering, offering by fire

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Moses
- Aaron
- bread
- elder, older, old
- burnt offering, offering by fire

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Jethro, Moses' father-in-law, brought a burnt offering and sacrifices for God. Aaron and all the elders of Israel came to eat a meal before God with Moses' father-in-law.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Then Jethro brought an animal to sacrifice by burning it on the altar as an offering, and he also offered other sacrifices to God. Aaron and the Israelite elders went with them to eat a meal with Jethro to honor God.

## Exodus 18:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- judge, judgment
- Moses
- Moses
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- judge, judgment
- Moses
- Moses
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> On the next day Moses sat down to judge the people. The people stood around him from morning until evening.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> The next day, Moses sat down at the place where he settled disputes among the people. The people were bringing their disputes to Moses from the morning until the evening.

## Exodus 18:14

### What is this that you are doing with the people?

Jethro uses this question to show Moses that what he was doing was not good. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not be doing all of this for the people!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Why is it that you sit alone...from morning until evening?

Jethro used this question to show Moses that he was doing too much. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not sit alone...from morning till evening!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### you sit alone

The word "sit" here is a metonym for "judge." Judges would sit while they listened to people's complaints. Alternate translation: "you judge alone" or "you are the only one who judges the people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### ULT

**14** When Moses' father-in-law saw all that he did for the people, he said, "What is this that you are doing with the people? Why is it that you sit alone and all the people stand about you from morning until evening?"

### UST

**14** When Jethro saw everything that Moses was doing for the people, he said, "Why are you doing all this for the people? Why are you doing this by yourself, and why are all the people standing around you from the morning until the evening, asking you to make decisions for them?"

## Exodus 18:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Moses
- people, people group,
- seek, search, look for

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Moses
- people, people group,
- seek, search, look for

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Moses said to his father-in-law, "The people come to me to ask for God's direction."

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Moses replied, "I am doing this because the people keep coming to me to find out what God desires."

## Exodus 18:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- judge, judgment
- statute
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- judge, judgment
- statute
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**16** When they have a dispute, they come to me. I decide between one person and another, and I teach them God's statutes and laws."

### UST

**16** When they have a dispute about something, they come to me, and they ask me to decide which of them is right. I also tell them all of God's laws and instructions."

## Exodus 18:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Moses

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Moses' father-in-law said to him,  
"What you are doing is not very good.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> Jethro said to him, "What you are  
doing is not good for you or for the  
people.



## Exodus 18:18

### You will surely wear yourselves out

“you will surely make yourselves very tired”

### This burden is too heavy for you

Jethro speaks of the hard work that Moses is doing as if it were a physical burden that Moses was carrying. Alternate translation: “This work is too much for you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),

#### Translation Words - UST

- [people](#), [people group](#),

#### ULT

**18** You will surely wear yourselves out, you and the people who are with you. This burden is too heavy for you. You are not able to do it by yourself.

#### UST

**18** You and these people will wear yourselves out! This work is too much for you. You are not able to do it by yourself.

## Exodus 18:19

### you advice

“you guidance” or “you instruction”

### God will be with you

Jethro speaks of God helping Moses as if God would be with Moses. Alternate translation: “God will help you” or “God will give you wisdom” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### you bring their disputes to him

Jethro speaks of Moses telling God about their disputes as if Moses were bringing their disputes to God. Alternate translation: “you tell God about their disputes” or “you tell God what they are arguing about” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- God
- people, people group,
- voice
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- God
- people, people group,
- voice
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

### ULT

**19** Listen to me. I will give you advice, and God will be with you, because you are the people's representative to God, and you bring their disputes to him.

### UST

**19** Now listen to what I will tell you to do. If you do what I suggest, God will help you. You should continue to speak to God and tell him about the people's disputes.

## Exodus 18:20

### You must show them the way to walk

Jethro speaks of living or behaving like walking. Alternate translation: "You must show them how to live" or "You must show them how to behave" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- statute
- walk, walked
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- statute
- walk, walked
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**20** You must teach them his statutes and laws. You must show them the way to walk and the work to do.

#### UST

**20** You should also teach them what God has commanded and instructed you. You should also explain to them how they should conduct their lives and the things that they should do.

## Exodus 18:21

### Connecting Statement:

Jethro continues speaking to Moses.

### Furthermore, you must choose

"In addition, you must choose" or "You must also choose"

### You must put them over people

Jethro speaks of giving them authority over people as putting them over people. Alternate translation: You must give them authority over people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### leaders in charge of thousands, hundreds, fifties, and of tens

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of people in each group. Alternate translation: "leaders in charge of groups of 1,000 people, groups of 100 people, groups of 50 people, and groups of 10 people" or 2) these numbers are not exact, but represent groups of people of various sizes. Alternate translation:

"leaders in charge of very small groups, small groups, large groups, and very large groups" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Furthermore, you must choose capable men from all the people, men who honor God, men of truth who hate unjust gain. You must put them over people, to be leaders in charge of thousands, hundreds, fifties, and of tens.

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> In addition, you should choose some other men to help you. Choose men who have respect for God and who will not accept bribes. Appoint some of them to make decisions for groups of ten people, some for groups of fifty people, some for groups of a hundred people, and some for groups of a thousand people.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

## Exodus 18:22

### routine cases

“the simple cases”

### the difficult cases they will bring to you

Jethro speaks of telling Moses about the difficult cases as bringing him the difficult cases. Alternate translation: “the difficult cases they will tell you about” or “when there are difficult cases, they will tell you about them so you can judge them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### they will carry the burden with you

Jethro speaks of the hard work that they would do as if it were a burden that they would carry. Alternate translation: “they will do the hard work with you” or “they will help you do the hard work” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [curse, cursed, cursing](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [curse, cursed, cursing](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> They will judge the people in all routine cases, but the difficult cases they will bring to you. As for all the small cases, they can judge those themselves. In that way it will be easier for you, and they will carry the burden with you.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Allow them to serve to settle disputes for the people. The difficult matters they can bring to you, but the matters that are not difficult, they can decide themselves. That will make the work easier for you as they help you do that work.

## Exodus 18:23

### endure

What they will endure can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "endure the stress of the work" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> If you do this, and if God commands you to do so, then you will be able to endure, and the entire people will be able to go home satisfied."

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> If you do that, and if God agrees, you will be able to endure the stress, and all the people will be able to go home peacefully with their disputes settled quickly."

## Exodus 18:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> So Moses listened to his father-in-law's words and did everything that he had said.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> Moses listened to his father-in-law and did all that Jethro told him.

## Exodus 18:25

### heads over the people

Moses writes of the leaders of people as if they were the head of a body. Alternate translation: “leaders of the people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### capable men

What they were capable of doing can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “men who were able to lead” or “men who were able to judge” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### leaders in charge of thousands, hundreds, fifties, and tens

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of people in each group. Alternate translation: “leaders in charge of groups of 1,000 people, groups of 100 people, groups of 50 people, and groups of 10 people” or 2) these numbers are not exact, but represent groups of people of various sizes. Alternate translation: “leaders in charge of very small groups, small groups, large groups, and very large groups” See how you translated this in [Exodus 18:21](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Moses chose capable men from all Israel and made them heads over the people, leaders in charge of thousands, hundreds, fifties, and tens.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> Then Moses chose capable men from among the Israelite people and made them heads over the people, rulers of thousands, rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [head](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [head](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)



## Exodus 18:26

### judged the people in normal circumstances

“judged the people most of the time” or “judged the people’s easy cases”

### The difficult cases they brought to Moses

The author writes of telling Moses about the difficult cases as bringing him the difficult cases. Alternate translation: “the difficult cases they told Moses about” or “when there were difficult cases, they told Moses about them so that he would judge them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the small cases

“the easy cases”

### Translation Words - ULT

- judge, judgment
- Moses
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- judge, judgment
- Moses
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> They judged the people in normal circumstances. The difficult cases they brought to Moses, but they themselves judged all the small cases.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> Moses chose them to decide about the people’s disputes. They brought the difficult cases to Moses, but they decided the matters that were not difficult by themselves.

## Exodus 18:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Moses
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Then Moses let his father-in-law leave, and Jethro went back into his own land.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> Then Moses said goodbye to his father-in-law, and Jethro returned home.

## Exodus 19

### Exodus 19 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### “A kingdom of priests”

The function of the priests was to intercede for the people. The Levites were the only priests in Israel; this is a metaphor indicating that the nation was to intercede for the world as a whole. They were also to be holy, or set apart, from the rest of the world. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#) and [Metaphor](#) and [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#))

#### Revealing the Law

The events of this chapter are concerned with preparing the people to receive the law of Moses. The people go through all of this to prepare themselves for the law, which show the great importance of this event for Israel. (See: [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [the law](#))

## Exodus 19:1

### In the third month...on the same day

This means they arrived at the wilderness on the first day of the month just as they left Egypt on the first day of the month. The first day of the third month on the Hebrew calendar is near the middle of May on Western calendars. Alternate translation: "In the third month...on the first day of the month" (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### had gone out from

"had left"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> In the third month after the people of Israel had gone out from the land of Egypt, on the same day, they came to the wilderness of Sinai.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> In the third month after leaving Egypt, they came to the wilderness of Sinai.

## Exodus 19:2

### Rephidim

This is an area on the edge of the wilderness of Sinai where the people of Israel had been camping. See how you translated this name in [Exodus 17:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> After they left Rephidim and came to the wilderness of Sinai, they camped in the wilderness in front of the mountain.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> After they left Rephidim, they came to the wilderness of Sinai, and they set up their tents at the base of the mountain.

## Exodus 19:3

### the house of Jacob

The word “house” here represents Jacob’s family and descendants.  
Alternate translation: “the descendants of Jacob” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the house of Jacob, the people of Israel

The phrase “the people of Israel” explains what “the house of Jacob” means.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [house](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [house](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Moses went up to God. Yahweh called to him from the mountain and said, “You must tell the house of Jacob, the people of Israel:

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> Moses climbed up the mountain to talk with God. Yahweh called to him from the top of the mountain and said, “This is what I want you to say to the Israelite people, the descendants of Jacob,

## Exodus 19:4

### You have seen

The word “you” here refers to the Israelites. Yahweh is telling Moses what to tell the Israelites. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### I carried you on eagles’ wings

God speaks of caring for his people while they traveled as if he were an eagle and carried them on his wings. Alternate translation: “I helped you travel like an eagle that carries her babies on her wings” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> You have seen what I did to the Egyptians, how I carried you on eagles’ wings and brought you to myself.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> ‘You have seen what I did to the Egyptians. You have seen what I did for you and how I brought you as if you had been on eagles’ wings here to me.

## Exodus 19:5

### obediently listen to my voice

Obediently can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “listen to my voice and obey me”

### my voice

God's voice represents what he says. Alternate translation: “what I say” or “my words” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### keep my covenant

“do what my covenant requires you to do”

### special possession

“treasure”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [voice](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [voice](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Now then, if you obediently listen to my voice and keep my covenant, then you will be my special possession from among all peoples, for all the earth is mine.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> So now, if you do what I tell you and obey all that I command you, you will be my own people. You will be my special possession from among all of the people, for all the earth is mine.



## Exodus 19:6

### a kingdom of priests

God speaks of his people as if they were priests. Alternate translation: “a kingdom of people who are like priests” or “a kingdom of people who do what priests do” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- kingdom

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- kingdom

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> You will be a kingdom of priests and a holy nation for me. These are the words that you must speak to the people of Israel.”

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> You will be people over whom I will rule, and you will be a kingdom where everyone will worship me like priests, and you will be a nation only for me.’ That is what you must tell the Israelite people.”

## Exodus 19:7

### set before them all these words

The author writes of Moses telling people things as if he were setting the words before them. AT “told them all these words” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### all these words that Yahweh had commanded him

“all that Yahweh had commanded him”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> So Moses came and summoned the elders of the people. He set before them all these words that Yahweh had commanded him.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> So Moses went down the mountain and called the elders of the people. He told them everything that Yahweh had told him to tell them.

## Exodus 19:8

### Moses came to report

Where Moses went can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "Moses went back up the mountain to report" (See: [Go and Come](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the people's words

The word "words" refers to what the people said. Alternate translation: "what the people said" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- return

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- return

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> All the people answered together and said, "We will do everything that Yahweh has said." Then Moses came to report the people's words to Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> The people all said, "We will do everything that Yahweh has told us to do." Then Moses climbed back up the mountain and reported to Yahweh what the people had said.

## Exodus 19:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- pray, prayer
- Moses
- Moses
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- pray, prayer
- Moses
- Moses
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, "I will come to you in a thick cloud so that the people may hear when I speak with you and may also believe you forever." Then Moses told the people's words to Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses "Listen carefully. I will come to you from inside a thick cloud. When I am speaking to you, the people will hear it, and they will always believe that you are their leader." Then Moses told Yahweh what the people said.

## Exodus 19:10

### you must set them apart to me

This probably means “tell them to dedicate themselves to me” or “tell them to purify themselves for me.”

### their garments

“their clothes” or “what they are wearing”

### Translation Words - ULT

- set apart
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- set apart
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,
- walk, walked

### ULT

**10** Yahweh said to Moses, “Go to the people. Today and tomorrow you must set them apart to me, and make them wash their garments.

### UST

**10** Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Go back down to the people again. Tell them to get ready for my coming. They must purify themselves today and tomorrow, and wash their clothes, too.

## Exodus 19:11

### Be ready

This was a command to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- people, people group,

### ULT

**11** Be ready for the third day, for on the third day Yahweh will come down to Mount Sinai.

### UST

**11** They must do that to be ready on the third day. On that day I will come down to Mount Sinai to where all the people can see me.

## Exodus 19:12

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### set boundaries

“make a boundary.” This was either a mark or some kind of barrier.

### Whoever touches the mountain will surely be put to death

This can be stated with an active form. Alternate translation: “You must surely put to death any person who touches the mountain” or “You must surely kill anyone who touches the mountain” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Whoever touches

“Any person who touches” or “Anyone who touches”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)

### ULT

**12** You must set boundaries all around the mountain for the people. Say to them, ‘Be careful that you do not go up the mountain or touch its border. Whoever touches the mountain will surely be put to death.’

### UST

**12** You must make a boundary around the base of the mountain, and tell them, ‘Be sure that you do not climb the mountain or even go near it. Anyone who even touches the base of the mountain must be killed.’

## Exodus 19:13

### such a person

“a person who does that” or “a person who touches the mountain”

### he must certainly be stoned or shot

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must certainly stone or shoot him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### shot

This refers to being killed by someone who shoots arrows from a bow or stones from a slingshot.

### a long blast

“a long, loud sound”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [hand](#)
- [beast](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [hand](#)
- [beast](#)

### ULT

**13** No one's hand must touch such a person. Instead, he must certainly be stoned or shot. Whether it is a person or an animal, he must be put to death. When the trumpet sounds a long blast, they may come up to the foot of the mountain.”

### UST

**13** Do not let anyone touch any person or any animal that touches the mountain. You must kill any person or animal that touches the mountain by throwing stones at it or shooting it with arrows. But when you hear a long, loud trumpet sound, the people can come close to the base of the mountain.”



## Exodus 19:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- set apart
- Moses
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- set apart
- Moses
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Then Moses went down from the mountain to the people. He set apart the people to Yahweh and they washed their garments.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> So Moses went down the mountain again and told the people to purify themselves and to get ready for Yahweh's coming. They did what Moses told them to do, and they also washed their clothes.

## Exodus 19:15

### do not go near your wives

This is a polite way of talking about sleeping with their wives.  
Alternate translation: "do not sleep with your wives" (See: [Euphemism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),

#### Translation Words - UST

- [people](#), [people group](#),

#### ULT

**15** He said to the people, "Be ready on the third day; do not go near your wives."

#### UST

**15** Then Moses said to the people, "Be ready on the third day, and you men must not sleep with your wives until after then."

## Exodus 19:16

### All the people...trembled

"All the people...shook with fear"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- trumpet, trumpeters
- strength, strengthen, strong

#### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- trumpet, trumpeters
- strength, strengthen, strong

#### ULT

**16** On the third day, when it was morning, there were thunder and lightning bolts and a thick cloud on the mountain, and the sound of a very loud trumpet. All the people in the camp trembled.

#### UST

**16** On the third day, during the morning, there was thunder and lightning and a very dark cloud on the mountain. A trumpet sounded very loudly, and the people in the camp shook because they were very afraid.

## Exodus 19:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- God
- Moses
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- God
- Moses
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Moses brought the people out of the camp to meet God, and they stood at the foot of the mountain.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> Then Moses led the people outside the camp to meet with God. They stood around the base of the mountain.

## Exodus 19:18

### Yahweh descended

“Yahweh came down”

### like the smoke of a furnace

This shows that it was a very large amount of smoke. Alternate translation: “like the smoke from a very large fire”

### furnace

an oven that can be made extremely hot (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### ULT

**18** Mount Sinai was completely covered with smoke because Yahweh descended on it in fire and smoke. The smoke went up like the smoke of a furnace, and the whole mountain shook violently.

### UST

**18** Then Yahweh descended on Mount Sinai so that the entire mountain was covered in smoke and surrounded by fire. The smoke rose up like the smoke from the chimney of a furnace, and the whole mountain shook violently.

## Exodus 19:19

### grew louder and louder

“continued to become louder and louder”

### in a voice

The word “voice” here refers to a sound that God made. Possible meanings are 1) “by speaking loudly like thunder” or 2) “by speaking” or 3) “by causing thunder to sound” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Moses
- voice
- trumpet, trumpeters
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Moses
- voice
- trumpet, trumpeters
- walk, walked

### ULT

**19** When the sound of the trumpet grew louder and louder, Moses spoke, and God answered him in a voice.

### UST

**19** As the sound of the trumpet continued to become louder, Moses spoke to Yahweh, and Yahweh answered him in a loud voice that sounded like thunder.

## Exodus 19:20

### he summoned Moses

"he commanded Moses to come up"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- head
- head
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- head
- head
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Yahweh came down on Mount Sinai, to the top of the mountain, and he summoned Moses to the top. So Moses went up.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> Then Yahweh came down again onto the top of Mount Sinai, and he summoned Moses to come up to the top of the mountain. So Moses went up.

## Exodus 19:21

### not to break through

God spoke about walking past the boundary as if they might break down a barrier and walk through it. See how you translated “set bounds” in [Exodus 19:12](#). Alternate translation: “not to go beyond the boundary” or “not to go through the barrier”(See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#) (2)
- [Moses](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#) (2)
- [Moses](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

### ULT

**21** Yahweh said to Moses, “Go down and warn the people not to break through to me to look, or many of them will perish.

### UST

**21** Yahweh said to Moses, “Go down again and warn the people not to cross the boundary in order to look at me. If they do that, many of them will die.



## Exodus 19:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood

### Translation Words - UST

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Let the priests also who come near to me set themselves apart—prepare themselves for my coming—so that I do not attack them.”

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Also, the priests who come near me must purify themselves, because I am coming to them. If they do not do that, I will punish them.”

## Exodus 19:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- set apart
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- set apart
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Moses said to Yahweh, "The people cannot come up to Mount Sinai, for you commanded us: 'Set boundaries around the mountain and set it apart to Yahweh.'"

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Then Moses said to Yahweh, "The people will not climb the mountain because you commanded them, saying, 'Set a boundary around the mountain, to set it apart.'"

## Exodus 19:24

### get down

“go down”

### break through the barrier

God spoke about walking past the boundary as if they might break down a barrier and walk through it. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 19:21](#). Alternate translation: “go beyond the boundary” or “go through the barrier” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- people, people group,
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- people, people group,
- walk, walked

### ULT

**24** Yahweh said to him, “Go, get down the mountain, and bring up Aaron with you, but do not let the priests and the people break through the barrier to come up to me, or I will attack them.”

### UST

**24** Yahweh said to Moses, “Go down the mountain and bring Aaron back up with you. But do not allow the priests or other people to cross the boundary to come up to me. If they cross it, I will punish them.”

## Exodus 19:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- Moses
- people, people group,

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> So Moses went down to the people and spoke to them.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> So Moses went down the mountain again and told the people what Yahweh had said.

## **Exodus 20**

### **Exodus 20 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

The instructions recorded in this chapter are commonly known as the “ten commandments.”

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Covenant**

Yahweh’s covenant faithfulness is now based on the covenant he made with Abraham as well as the covenant he is making with Moses. (See: [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#) and [covenant](#))

## Exodus 20:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> God spoke all these words:

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then God spoke these words to the Israelite people.

## Exodus 20:2

### house of slavery

“place where you were slaves”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- Egypt, Egyptian
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- Egypt, Egyptian
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> “I am Yahweh your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> “I am Yahweh your God, the one you worship. I am the one who brought you out of the land of Egypt. I am the one who freed you from being slaves there.

## Exodus 20:3

### You must have no other gods before me

“You must not worship any other gods but me”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- face, facial

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- face, facial

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> You must have no other gods before me.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> You must worship only me; you must not worship any other god.



## Exodus 20:4

### nor the likeness

“and you must not make the likeness”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> You must not make for yourself a carved figure nor the likeness of anything that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water below.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> You must not carve a figure to worship that represents anything in the sky or that is on the ground or that is in the water under the ground.

## Exodus 20:5

### You must not bow down to them or worship them

The word “them” refers to carved figures or idols.

### jealous

God wants his people to worship only him.

### punish the ancestors’ wickedness by bringing punishment on the descendants

God will punish people for the sin of their parents.

### to the third and the fourth generation

“to generations 3 and 4.” This refers to the grandchildren and great-grandchildren. Alternate translation: “even on the grandchildren and great-grandchildren (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [iniquity](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [iniquity](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> You must not bow down to them or worship them, for I, Yahweh your God, am a jealous God. I punish the ancestors’ wickedness by bringing punishment on the descendants, to the third and the fourth generation of those who hate me.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> You must not bow down to any idol and worship it because I am Yahweh your God, and I will not allow you to worship any other gods. I will punish those who sin and hate me. I will punish not only them, but also I will punish their descendants down to the third and fourth generation.

## Exodus 20:6

### I show covenant faithfulness to thousands of those who love me

The abstract noun “faithfulness” can be stated as “faithfully” or “faithful.” Alternate translation: “I faithfully love thousands of those who love me” or “I am faithful to the covenant with thousands of those who love me” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### to thousands of those who love me

The word “thousands” is a metonym for a number too many to count. Alternate translation: “forever to those who love me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [love](#), [beloved](#)
- [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [love](#), [beloved](#)
- [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But I show covenant faithfulness to thousands of those who love me and keep my commandments.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> However, I will never stop loving thousands of generations of those who love me and obey my commandments.

## Exodus 20:7

### take the name of Yahweh your God

“use the name of Yahweh your God”

### in vain

“carelessly” or “without proper respect”

### I will not hold guiltless

This double-negative can be stated as a positive. Alternate translation: “I will certainly consider guilty” or “I will certainly punish” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- name
- name

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- name
- name

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> You must not take the name of Yahweh your God, in vain, for I will not hold guiltless anyone who takes my name in vain.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Do not use my name carelessly because I am Yahweh your God, the one whom you should worship, and I will certainly punish those who use my name for wrong purposes.

## Exodus 20:8

### set it apart

“set it apart for a special purpose”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- set apart
- Sabbath

#### Translation Words - UST

- set apart
- Sabbath

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Remember the Sabbath day, to set it apart to me.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Do not forget that the seventh day of every week belongs to me, so keep those days only for me.

## Exodus 20:9

### do all your work

“do all your usual duties”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> You must labor and do all your work for six days.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> There are six days each week for you to do all your work,

## Exodus 20:10

### within your gates

Cities often had walls around them to keep out enemies, and gates for people to go in and out. Alternate translation: “within your community” or “inside your city” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**10** But the seventh day is a Sabbath for Yahweh your God. On it you must not do any work, you, or your son, or your daughter, or your male servant, or your female servant, or your cattle, or the foreigner who is within your gates.

### UST

**10** but the seventh day is a day of rest, a day dedicated to me, Yahweh your God, the one whom you should worship. On that day you must not do any work. You and your sons and daughters and your male and female slaves must not work. You must not even force your livestock to work, and you must not allow foreigners to work, those strangers who are living in your country.

## Exodus 20:11

### on the seventh day

“on day seven.” Here “seventh” is the ordinal number for “7.” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### blessed the Sabbath day

Possible meanings are that 1) God caused the Sabbath day to produce good results, or 2) God said that the Sabbath day was good.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [rest, rested, restless](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [rest, rested, restless](#)

#### ULT

**11** For in six days Yahweh made the heavens and earth, the sea, and everything that is in them, and rested on the seventh day. Therefore Yahweh blessed the Sabbath day and set it apart.

#### UST

**11** I, Yahweh, created the sky, the earth, the ocean, and everything that is in them in six days. Then I stopped my work of creating everything and rested on the seventh day. That is the reason that I, Yahweh, have blessed the rest day and set it apart to be a sacred day.



## Exodus 20:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Honor your father and your mother, so that you may live a long time in the land that Yahweh your God is giving you.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Honor your father and your mother, in order that you may live a long time in the land that I, Yahweh your God, will give you.

## Exodus 20:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**13** You must not murder anyone.

### UST

**13** Do not murder anyone.

## Exodus 20:14

### You must not commit adultery

“You must not have sex with anyone other than your spouse”

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> You must not commit adultery.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> Do not commit adultery with anyone.

## Exodus 20:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**15** You must not steal from anyone.

### UST

**15** Do not steal anything.

## Exodus 20:16

### must not give false testimony

“must not speak a false report” or “must not tell lies about someone”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

#### Translation Words - UST

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

#### ULT

**16** You must not give false testimony against your neighbor.

#### UST

**16** Do not falsely accuse anyone of committing a crime.

## Exodus 20:17

### must not covet

“must not strongly want to have” or “must not want to take”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- donkey, mule
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- donkey, mule
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

#### ULT

**17** You must not covet your neighbor's house; you must not covet your neighbor's wife, his male servant, his female servant, his ox, his donkey, or anything that belongs to your neighbor.”

#### UST

**17** Do not covet someone else's house, someone else's wife, someone else's male or female slave, someone else's livestock, someone else's donkeys, or anything else that another person owns.”

## Exodus 20:18

### voice of the trumpet

“sound of the trumpet”

### the mountain smoking

“smoke coming from the mountain”

### they trembled

“they shook with fear”

### stood far off

“stood far away” or “stood at a distance”

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- trumpet, trumpeters

### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- trumpet, trumpeters

### ULT

**18** All the people saw the thundering and the lightning, and heard the voice of the trumpet, and saw the mountain smoking. When the people saw it, they trembled and stood far off.

### UST

**18** When the people heard the thunder and saw the lightning, and when they heard the sound of the trumpet and saw the smoke on the mountain, they were afraid and trembled. They stood at a distance

## Exodus 20:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> They said to Moses, "Speak to us, and we will listen; but do not let God speak to us, or we will die."

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> and said to Moses, "If you speak to us, we will listen. But do not let God speak anymore to us. We are afraid that if he speaks anymore to us, we will die."



## Exodus 20:20

**so that the honor of him may be in you, and so that you do not sin**

“so that you will honor him and not sin”

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- fear, afraid, dread
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- God
- Moses
- people, people group,
- face, facial

### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- fear, afraid, dread
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- God
- Moses
- people, people group,
- face, facial

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Moses said to the people, “Do not be afraid, for God has come to test you so that the honor of him may be in you, and so that you do not sin.”

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Moses replied to the people, “Do not be afraid! God has come to determine how you will behave. He wants you to honor him and to not sin.”

## Exodus 20:21

### Moses approached

“Moses went closer to”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- people, people group,

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- people, people group,

#### ULT

**21** So the people stood far off, and Moses approached the thick darkness where God was.

#### UST

**21** Then, as the people watched from a distance, Moses went close to the black cloud where God was.

## Exodus 20:22

### This is what you must tell the Israelites

"Tell the Israelites this"

### You yourselves have seen that I have talked with you from heaven

"You have heard me speak to you from heaven"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses

#### Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, "This is what you must tell the Israelites: 'You yourselves have seen that I have talked with you from heaven.'

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, "Say this to the Israelite people, 'You have heard how I, Yahweh, have spoken to you from heaven.'

## Exodus 20:23

**You will not make for yourselves other gods alongside me**

“You must not make idols as other gods instead of me”

**gods of silver or gods of gold**

“gods made out of silver or gold” or “idols made out of silver or gold”

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- silver
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- silver
- gold, golden

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> You will not make for yourselves other gods alongside me, gods of silver or gods of gold.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> I told you that you must not make any idols of silver or gold that you will worship instead of me.

## Exodus 20:24

### earthen altar

an altar made of materials from the ground, such as stone, soil, or clay

### cause my name to be honored

Here “name” is a metonym for God’s being. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “choose for you to honor me” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- bless, blessed, blessing
- name
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- flock, herd
- burnt offering, offering by fire

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- bless, blessed, blessing
- name
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- flock, herd
- burnt offering, offering by fire

### ULT

**24** You must make an earthen altar for me, and you must sacrifice on it your burnt offerings, fellowship offerings, sheep, and oxen. In every place where I cause my name to be honored, I will come to you and bless you.

### UST

**24** Make for me an altar from earth. Sacrifice on it your burnt offerings, your offerings to promise friendship with me, and also your sheep and oxen. Worship me in any place that I choose for you to honor me; if you do that, I will come to you and bless you.

## Exodus 20:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- sword, swordsmen
- profane, profaned

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- sword, swordsmen
- profane, profaned

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> If you make me an altar of stone, you must not build it of cut stones, for if you use your tools on it, you will have defiled it.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> If you make for me an altar from stones, do not make it from stones that you have cut to make them look nice because you will make the altar unsuitable for worshiping me if you use tools to cut the stones.

## Exodus 20:26

### You must not go up to my altar on steps

“Do not build steps up to the altar and go up to it on those steps”

### your nakedness

“your private parts”

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- exile, exiled

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- exile, exiled

### ULT

**26** You must not go up to my altar on steps, so that your nakedness is not exposed.”

### UST

**26** Do not make an altar that has steps in front of it because if you do that, God could see your naked body as you go up the steps.”

## **Exodus 21**

### **Exodus 21 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Covenant with Moses**

Although the covenant Yahweh made with Moses began in the previous chapter, it formally begins with the statement, "Now these are the decrees that you must set before them." The law of Moses was a major part of this covenant. (See: [covenant](#) and [law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law](#))

#### **Slavery**

This passage does not condone slavery as an acceptable practice. However, it does impose some restrictions on the practice.

#### **Justice in society**

The rules and law of this chapter are not intended to be followed by every society. Israel was God's chosen nation and was required to live in a special way. These laws concerned creating a just society and a holy nation. (See: [chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect](#) and [just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification](#) and [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#))



## Exodus 21:1

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### you must set before them

“you must give them” or “you must tell them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

### Translation Words - UST

- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> “Now these are the decrees that you must set before them:

### UST

<sup>1</sup> “Here are some other instructions to give to the Israelite people.

## Exodus 21:2

### General Information:

Yahweh tells Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> If you buy a Hebrew servant, he is to serve for six years, and in the seventh year he will go free without paying anything.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> When you buy a Hebrew slave, he is to serve you for only six years. In the seventh year you must free him from being your slave, and he does not have to pay you anything for setting him free.

## Exodus 21:3

### If he came by himself, he must go free by himself

What “by himself” means can be stated clearly. Some languages require that the additional condition, that he marries while a slave, be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “If he became a slave while he had no wife, and if he marries while he is a slave, the master need only free the man” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### by himself

“alone” or “without a wife”

#### if he is married

“if he was married when he became a slave” or “if he came as a married man”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [bind, bond, bound](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [bind, bond, bound](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> If he came by himself, he must go free by himself; if he is married, then his wife must go free with him.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> If he was not married before he became your slave, and if he marries someone while he is your slave, his wife is not to be set free with him. But if he was married before he became your slave, you must free both him and his wife.

## Exodus 21:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> If his master gave him a wife and she bore him sons or daughters, the wife and her children will belong to her master, and he must go free by himself.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> If the master of a slave gives him a wife, and she gives birth to sons or daughters while her husband is a slave, only the man is to be freed. His wife and children will continue to be slaves of their master.

## Exodus 21:5

### plainly says

“clearly says”

### I will not go out free

“I do not want my master to set me free”

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- love, beloved
- son
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- love, beloved
- son
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But if the servant plainly says, “I love my master, my wife, and my children; I will not go out free,”

### UST

<sup>5</sup> But when it is time for the slave to be set free, if the slave says, ‘I love my master and my wife and my children, and I do not want to be set free,’

## Exodus 21:6

### bore his ear through

“put a hole in his ear”

### awl

a pointed tool used to make a hole

### for life

“until the end of his life” or “until he dies”

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> then his master must bring him to God. The master must bring him to a door or doorpost, and his master must bore his ear through with an awl. Then the servant will serve him for life.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> then his master must take him to the place where they worship God. There he must make the slave stand against the door or the doorpost. Then the master will use an awl to make a hole in the slave's ear and fasten something to the slave's ear to show that he will own that slave for the rest of his life.

## Exodus 21:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> If a man sells his daughter as a female servant, she must not go free as the male servants do.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> If a man sells his daughter to become a slave, she should not be set free after six years as the male slaves are.

## Exodus 21:8

### has designated

"has chosen"

### he must let her be bought back

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he must allow her father to buy her back" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### has no right to sell

"has no authority to sell"

### he has treated her deceitfully

"he has deceived her"

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- dominion
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- people, people group,
- alien, foreign, foreigner

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- dominion
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- people, people group,
- alien, foreign, foreigner

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> If she does not please her master, who has designated her for himself, then he must let her be bought back. He has no right to sell her to a foreign people. He has no such right, since he has treated her deceitfully.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> If the man who bought her wanted her to be his concubine, but if later he is not pleased with her, he must sell her back to her father. He must not sell her to a foreigner because that would be breaking the contract he made with the girl's father.



## Exodus 21:9

### designates her as a wife for his son

“decides that she is the one who will be his son’s wife”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> If her master designates her as a wife for his son, he must treat her the same as if she were his daughter.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> If the man who buys her wants her to be a wife for his son, he must then treat her as though she were his own daughter.

## Exodus 21:10

### he must not diminish her food, clothing, or her marital rights

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: “he must give the first wife the same food, clothing, and marital rights she had before” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### must not diminish her food

“must not take away her food” or “must not give her less food”

### or her marital rights

This includes things that a husband must do for his wife, including sleeping with her. Alternate translation: “and he must continue to sleep with her as before” (See: [Euphemism](#))

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> If he takes another wife for himself, he must not diminish her food, clothing, or her marital rights.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> If the master takes another slave girl to be another woman for himself, he must continue to give the first slave concubine the same amount of food and clothing that he gave to her before, and he must continue to sleep with her as before.

## Exodus 21:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [silver](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [silver](#)

#### ULT

**11** But if he does not provide these three things for her, then she can go free without paying any money.

#### UST

**11** If he does not do these three things for her, he must free her from being a slave, and she is not required to pay anything for being set free.

## Exodus 21:12

### strikes a man

“hits a man” or “attacks a man”

### that person must surely be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must certainly execute that person” or “you must certainly kill that person” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,

### ULT

**12** Whoever strikes a man so that he dies, that person must surely be put to death.

### UST

**12** If someone hits a man in order to kill him and the man dies, then that person should also be put to death.

## Exodus 21:13

### did not do it with premeditation

“did not plan to do it” or “did not do it on purpose”

### I will fix a place to where he can flee

The purpose of choosing a place can be stated clearly here.  
Alternate translation: “I will choose a place that he can run away to be safe” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

### ULT

**13** If the man did not do it with premeditation, but instead by accident, then I will fix a place to where he can flee.

### UST

**13** But if the one who hit the other did not mean to kill that person, the one who hit him can go to a place that I will choose for you, and he will be safe there.

## Exodus 21:14

### according to a cunning plan

“after thinking carefully about it”

### must take him

The word “him” refers to the one who killed his neighbor.

### so that he may die

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that you can kill him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- proud, pride, prideful

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- proud, pride, prideful

### ULT

**14** If a man willfully attacks his neighbor and kills him according to a cunning plan, then you must take him, even if he is at God’s altar, so that he may die.

### UST

**14** But if someone gets angry with another person and kills him on purpose, even if the murderer runs to the altar, you must kill him.

## Exodus 21:15

### Whoever hits his father or mother must surely be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “If anyone hits his father or mother, you must surely put him to death” or “You must surely kill anyone who hits his father or mother” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### must surely

“must certainly”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

### ULT

**15** Whoever hits his father or mother must surely be put to death.

### UST

**15** Anyone who strikes his father or mother must be killed.

## Exodus 21:16

### that kidnapper must be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must kill that kidnapper” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)

#### ULT

**16** Whoever kidnaps a person—whether the kidnapper sells him, or that person is found in his hand—that kidnapper must be put to death.

#### UST

**16** Anyone who kidnaps another person, either in order to sell that person or to keep him as a slave, must be killed.



**Exodus 21:17****Whoever curses his father or his mother must surely be put to death**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must surely kill anyone who curses his father or his mother” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- curse, cursed, cursing
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

**Translation Words - UST**

- curse, cursed, cursing
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

**ULT**

**17** Whoever curses his father or his mother must surely be put to death.

**UST**

**17** Anyone who curses or insults his father or his mother must be killed.

## Exodus 21:18

### is confined to his bed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “cannot get out of bed” or “has to stay in bed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

#### Translation Words - UST

- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

#### ULT

**18** If men fight and one hits the other with a stone or with his fist, and that person does not die, but is confined to his bed;

#### UST

**18** Suppose two people fight, and one hits the other with a stone or his fist. Suppose the person he strikes does not die but is injured and has to stay in bed for a while,

## Exodus 21:19

### he recovers

"he gets better"

### staff

This is a stick that can be leaned on for support while walking.

### the loss of his time

This refers to a situation when someone cannot work to earn money. You can express this clearly in the translation. Alternate translation: "the time he could not work" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### pay for his complete recovery

"pay his medical costs" or "pay for his costs for healing"

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> then if he recovers and is able to walk about using his staff, the man who struck him must pay for the loss of his time; he must also pay for his complete recovery. But that man is not guilty of murder.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> but later he is able to walk outside using a cane. Then they must not punish the person who hit him, except that they must make him pay the injured person the money he could not earn while he was recovering as well as the costs for healing.

## Exodus 21:20

### as a result of the blow

“because of the injury” or “because his master hit him”

### that man must surely be punished

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must certainly punish that man” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> If a man hits his male servant or his female servant with a staff, and if the servant dies as a result of the blow, then that man must surely be punished.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> If someone hits his male or female slave with a stick, and if the slave dies, then the one who struck him must be punished.

## Exodus 21:21

### for he will have suffered the loss of the servant

You can express clearly in the translation that the servant was valuable to his master. Alternate translation: “because he has already lost his servant who was valuable to him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- silver

#### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- silver

#### ULT

**21** However, if the servant lives for a day or two, the master must not be punished, for he will have suffered the loss of the servant.

#### UST

**21** But if the slave lives for a day or two after he is hit and then dies, you must not punish the one who hit him. Not having that slave to be able to work for him any longer is enough punishment.

## Exodus 21:22

### she miscarries

“her baby dies in her womb” or “her baby is born too soon and dies”

### the guilty man must surely be fined

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must certainly fine the guilty man” or “the guilty man must pay a fine”  
(See: [Active or Passive](#))

### as the judges determine

“what the judges decide”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#)

### ULT

**22** If men fight together and hurt a pregnant woman so that she miscarries, but there is no other injury to her, then the guilty man must surely be fined as the woman's husband demands it from him, and he must pay as the judges determine.

### UST

**22** If two people are fighting and they hurt a pregnant woman so that she has a miscarriage but the woman is not harmed in any other way, the one who hurt her must pay a fine. He must pay whatever the woman's husband asks after a judge approves of the fine.

**Exodus 21:23****you must give a life for a life**

This means that if she is hurt, the person who hurt her must be hurt in the same way. Alternate translation: “he must give his life for her life” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive

**Translation Words - UST**

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive

**ULT**

**23** But if there is serious injury, then you must give a life for a life,

**UST**

**23** But if the woman is hurt in another way, the one who hurt her must be caused to suffer in the same way that he caused her to suffer. If she dies, he must be killed.

## Exodus 21:24

### an eye for an eye

This means that if she is hurt, the person who hurt her must be hurt in the same way. Alternate translation: “his eye for her eye” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- hand

### Translation Words - UST

- hand
- hand

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> an eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth, a hand for a hand, a foot for a foot,

### UST

<sup>24</sup> If her eye is hurt, or if he knocks out her teeth, or her hand or foot is hurt,



## Exodus 21:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> a burn for a burn, a wound for a wound, or a bruise for a bruise.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> or if she is burned or bruised, the one who hurt her must be hurt in the same way.

## Exodus 21:26

### If a man

Here “man” refers to the owner of a slave.

### in compensation

“as payment.” Compensation is what someone does for another person or gives to another person to make up for what he has caused that person to lose.

### Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> If a man hits the eye of his male servant or of his female servant and destroys it, then he must let the servant go free in compensation for his eye.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> If the owner of a slave strikes the eye of his male or female slave and that eye becomes blind, he must free that slave because of what he did to the slave's eye.

## Exodus 21:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> If he knocks out a tooth of his male servant or female servant, he must let the servant go free as compensation for the tooth.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> If someone knocks out one of his slave's teeth, he must free the slave because of what he did to the slave's tooth.

## Exodus 21:28

### an ox gores

“an ox injures with its horns”

### the ox must surely be stoned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must stone the ox to death” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### its flesh must not be eaten

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must not eat its flesh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the ox’s owner must be acquitted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must acquit the ox’s owner” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [innocent](#)
- [devour](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [flesh](#)
- [innocent](#)
- [devour](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> If an ox gores a man or a woman to death, the ox must surely be stoned, and its flesh must not be eaten; but the ox’s owner must be acquitted of guilt.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> If a bull gores a man or woman with the result that the person dies, you must kill the bull by throwing stones at it, but do not eat it. The owner of the bull is not guilty.

## Exodus 21:29

### its owner also must be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must also kill its owner” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- bind, bond, bound
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

#### Translation Words - UST

- bind, bond, bound
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

#### ULT

**29** But if the ox had a habit of goring in the past, and its owner was warned but did not keep it in, and the ox has killed a man or a woman, that ox must be stoned, and its owner also must be put to death.

#### UST

**29** But if the bull had attacked people several times before and its owner had been warned, but he did not keep the bull inside a fence, and it gores a man or woman to death, then you must kill the bull by throwing stones at it, and you must also kill its owner.

## Exodus 21:30

### If a payment is required for his life

If the ox's owner can pay a fine to save his own life, then he must pay whatever the judges decide. The full meaning of this can be stated clearly. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "if the owner of the bull can pay a fine to save his own life, he must pay the full amount that the judges say that he must pay" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive

#### ULT

**30** If a payment is required for his life, he must pay whatever he is required to pay.

#### UST

**30** However, if the owner of the bull can pay a fine to save his own life, he must pay the full amount that the judges say that he must pay.

## Exodus 21:31

### has gored

“has injured with its horns”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> If the ox has gored a man's son or daughter, the ox's owner must do what this decree requires him to do.

#### UST

<sup>31</sup> If someone's bull attacks and gores another person's son or daughter, you must treat the bull's owner according to that same rule.

## Exodus 21:32

### thirty shekels of silver

"330 grams of silver." A shekel weighed eleven grams. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

### the ox must be stoned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you must kill the ox by stoning it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [silver](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> If the ox gores a male servant or a female servant, the ox's owner must pay thirty shekels of silver, and the ox must be stoned.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> If a bull attacks and gores a male or female slave, its owner must pay to the slave's owner thirty pieces of silver, and you must kill the bull by throwing stones at it.



## Exodus 21:33

### opens a pit

“uncovers a hole in the ground” or “takes a cover off a hole in the ground”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- donkey, mule
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

#### Translation Words - UST

- donkey, mule
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> If a man opens a pit, or if a man digs a pit and does not cover it, and an ox or a donkey falls into it,

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> Suppose someone has a pit and does not keep it covered, and someone's bull or donkey falls into it and dies.

## Exodus 21:34

### repay the loss

The owner must be paid for the loss of his animal. Alternate translation: “pay the owner for the dead animal” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### will become his

The one who paid for the loss of the animal will become the owner of the dead animal and can do what he wants with it. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “will belong to the owner of the pit” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- bind, bond, bound
- restore, restoration
- silver

### Translation Words - UST

- bind, bond, bound
- restore, restoration
- silver

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> the owner of the pit must repay the loss. He must give money to the dead animal's owner, and the dead animal will become his.

### UST

<sup>34</sup> Then the owner of the pit must pay for the animal that died. He must give the money to the animal's owner, but then he can take away the animal that died and do whatever he wants to with it.

## Exodus 21:35

### divide its price

“divide the money” or “divide the money they receive”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- silver
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- die, dead, deadly, death,

#### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- silver
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- die, dead, deadly, death,

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> If one man's ox hurts another man's ox so that it dies, then they must sell the live ox and divide its price, and they must also divide the dead ox.

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> If someone's bull hurts another person's bull so that it dies, the owners of both bulls must sell the bull that is living, and they must divide between them the money that they get for it. They must also divide between them the meat of the animal that died.

## Exodus 21:36

### if it was known

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “if people knew” or “if the owner knew” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### a habit of goring in time past

“had gored other animals before”

### its owner has not kept it in

This means that the owner did not keep his ox securely inside a fence. This can be clearly stated in the translation. Alternate translation: “its owner did not keep it inside a fence” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### he must surely pay ox for ox

The owner of the ox that killed must give an ox to the man who lost his ox. This can be stated clearly in the translation. Alternate translation: “the owner of the ox that killed must surely give a living ox to the owner of the ox that died” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

**36** But if it was known that the ox had a habit of goring in time past, and its owner has not kept it in, he must surely pay ox for ox, and the dead animal will become his own.

### UST

**36** However, if people know that the bull often attacked other animals before, and its owner did not keep it inside a fence, then the owner of that bull must give the owner of the bull that died one of his own bulls, but he can take away the animal that died and do whatever he wants to with it.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- bind, bond, bound
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- bind, bond, bound
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

## Exodus 22

### Exodus 22 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Justice in society

The rules and laws of this chapter are not intended to be followed by every society. Israel was God's chosen nation and was required to live in a special way. These laws concerned creating a just society and a holy nation. In this chapter, the purpose of these laws often focuses on minimizing the people's desire for vengeance. (See: [chosen](#), [choose](#), [chosen people](#), [Chosen One](#), [elect](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [the law](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [unjust](#), [injustice](#), [justify](#), [justification](#) and [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#) and [avenge](#), [avenger](#), [revenge](#), [vengeance](#))

## Exodus 22:1

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- flock, herd

### Translation Words - UST

- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- flock, herd

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> If a man steals an ox or a sheep and kills it or sells it, then he must pay five oxen for one ox, and four sheep for one sheep.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> "If someone steals a bull or a sheep and then kills it or sells it, he must pay five bulls for the bull that he stole, and he must pay four sheep for the sheep that he stole.

## Exodus 22:2

### If a thief is found

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "If anyone finds a thief" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### breaking in

"using force to come into a house"

### if he is struck so that he dies

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "if anyone strikes the thief so that he dies" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### no guilt for murder will attach to anyone on his account

"no one will be guilty of murdering him"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [blood](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),

### Translation Words - UST

- [blood](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> If a thief is found breaking in, and if he is struck so that he dies, in that case no guilt for murder will attach to anyone on his account.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> If a thief is caught while he is breaking into someone's house at night, if the one who catches him kills the thief, he is not guilty of killing him.

## Exodus 22:3

### if the sun has risen before he breaks in

“if it is light before he breaks in” or “if he breaks in and it is after sunrise”

### guilt for murder will attach to the person who kills him

“the person who kills him will be guilty of murder”

### make restitution

“pay for what he stole”

### he must be sold for his theft

This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: “you must sell him as a slave in order to pay for what he stole” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [blood](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [blood](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But if the sun has risen before he breaks in, guilt for murder will attach to the person who kills him. A thief must make restitution. If he has nothing, then he must be sold for his theft.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> But if that happens during the daytime, the one who killed the thief is guilty of murdering him. A thief must pay for what he stole. If he has no animal with which to pay for the one that he stole, he must be sold to become someone else's slave, and the money from his sale must be used to pay for what he stole.



## Exodus 22:4

### If the stolen animal is found alive in his possession

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "If they find that he still has the live animal that he stole" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### pay back double

pay two animals for every animal that he took

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [hand](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [hand](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> If the stolen animal is found alive in his possession, whether it is an ox, a donkey, or a sheep, he must pay back double.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> If a thief still has the animal when he is caught, whether it is a bull or a donkey or a sheep, and it is still alive, the thief must pay back the stolen animal as well as another one of the same kind.

## Exodus 22:5

### If a man grazes his livestock

"If a man lets his animals eat plants"

### it grazes

"it eats plants"

### he must make restitution

"he must pay back the owner of that field"

### Translation Words - ULT

- vineyard
- vineyard

### Translation Words - UST

- vineyard
- vineyard

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> If a man grazes his livestock in a field or vineyard and lets his animal loose, and it grazes in another man's field, he must make restitution from the best of his own field and from the best of his own vineyard.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> If someone allows his animals to eat grass in his field or in his vineyard, and if the animals stray away and eat the plants in another person's field, the owner of the animals must pay the owner of that field by giving him the best from his own field or vineyard.

## Exodus 22:6

### If a fire breaks out and spreads in thorns

"If someone starts a fire and it spreads in thorns"

### spreads in thorns

"moves along the ground through dry plants"

### stacked grain

This is grain that has been cut and tied in bundles. "bundled grain" or "harvested grain"

### standing grain

This is grain that has not been cut, but it is ready to be harvested.

### a field is consumed

"fire consumes a field" or "fire destroys a field"

### must surely make restitution

"must certainly pay for the grain that the fire destroyed"

### Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- devour
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> If a fire breaks out and spreads in thorns so that stacked grain, or standing grain, or a field is consumed, the one who started the fire must surely make restitution.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> If someone starts a fire and it spreads through the grass and starts burning in someone else's field, and the fire burns grain that is growing or grain that is already cut and stacked, then the person who started the fire must pay for what has been lost.

## Exodus 22:7

### for safe keeping

“to watch over it” or “to keep it safe”

### if it is stolen

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “if someone steals it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### thief

someone who steals something

### if the thief is found

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “if you find the thief” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [silver](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> If a man gives money or goods to his neighbor for safe keeping, and if it is stolen out of the man's house, if the thief is found, that thief must pay double.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Suppose that someone gives another person some money or other valuable item and asks him to keep it in his house for a while. And suppose that a thief steals it from that person's house. If the thief is caught, the thief must pay back twice as much as he stole.

## Exodus 22:8

### come before the judges to see whether

“come before the judges so that they can find out if”

### has put his own hand on his neighbor's property

This is an idiom. If you have a way of saying this in your language, you can use it here. Alternate translation: “has stolen his neighbor's property” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [bind, bond, bound](#)
- [God](#)
- [hand](#)
- [house](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [bind, bond, bound](#)
- [God](#)
- [hand](#)
- [house](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But if the thief is not found, then the owner of the house must come before the judges to see whether he has put his own hand on his neighbor's property.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> But if the thief is not caught, the owner of the house from which the item was stolen must stand before the judges so that the judges can say whether the owner of the house was the one who took the other man's valuable item.

## Exodus 22:9

### the claim of both parties must come before the judges

The judges must listen to both people who claim that the item belongs to them and the judges will decide who is guilty.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- donkey, mule

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- donkey, mule

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> For every dispute about something, whether it is an ox, a donkey, a sheep, clothing, or any other missing thing about which one says, "This belongs to me," the claim of both parties must come before the judges. The man whom the judges find guilty must pay double to his neighbor.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> If two people argue about which one of them owns a bull or a donkey or a sheep or some clothing, or something else that has been lost, they must stand before the judges. The one whom the judges say is lying must pay back to the real owner twice as many bulls or donkeys or sheep or items of clothing.

## Exodus 22:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- donkey, mule
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- beast
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- donkey, mule
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- beast
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> If a man gives his neighbor a donkey, an ox, a sheep, or any animal to keep, and if it dies or is hurt or is carried away without anyone seeing it,

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Suppose someone gives his donkey or bull or sheep or some other animal to someone else and asks him to take care of it for a while, and the animal dies or is injured or is stolen while no one is watching.

## Exodus 22:11

### an oath to Yahweh must be taken by them both

Only the man who is accused of stealing the animal must swear the oath. The owner of the lost animal must accept the oath that has been sworn. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the man who was caring for the animal must swear an oath before Yahweh and the owner must accept that oath” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [bind, bond, bound](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [bind, bond, bound](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

#### ULT

**11** an oath to Yahweh must be taken by them both, as to whether or not one person has put his hand on his neighbor's property. The owner must accept this, and the other will make no restitution.

#### UST

**11** Then the person who was taking care of the animal must swear, knowing that God is listening, that he did not steal the animal. If he did not steal it, the owner of the animal must accept that the other person is telling the truth, and the other person will not have to pay anything back to the owner.



## Exodus 22:12

### But if it was stolen from him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “But if someone stole the animal from him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> But if it was stolen from him, the other must make restitution to the owner for it.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> But if the animal was stolen while he was supposed to be taking care of it, the man who promised to take care of it must pay back the owner for the animal.

## Exodus 22:13

### If an animal was torn in pieces

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But if a wild beast tore the animal in pieces" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### He will not have to pay for what was torn

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "He will not have to pay for the animal that the wild beast destroyed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#)

### ULT

**13** If an animal was torn in pieces, let the other man bring the animal as evidence. He will not have to pay for what was torn.

### UST

**13** If he says that the animal was killed by wild animals, he must bring back the remains of the animal that was killed and show it to the animal's owner. If he does that, he will not have to pay anything for the animal.

## Exodus 22:14

### must surely make restitution

“must certainly repay with another animal” or “must certainly pay the owner for the animal”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- bind, bond, bound

#### Translation Words - UST

- bind, bond, bound

#### ULT

**14** If a man borrows any animal from his neighbor and the animal is injured or dies without the owner being with it, the other man must surely make restitution.

#### UST

**14** If someone borrows an animal, and if that animal is hurt or dies when its owner is not there, the one who borrowed it must pay the owner for the animal.

## Exodus 22:15

### if the animal was hired

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "if someone rented the animal" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### it will be paid for by its hiring fee

The one who borrowed the animal will not have to pay the owner anything more than the hiring or rental fee. This fee will pay for the loss of the animal. This can be stated clearly in the translation. Alternate translation: "the money that someone paid to rent the animal will cover the loss of the animal" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### hiring fee

"rental fee" or "money paid to rent the animal"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#)

### ULT

**15** But if the owner was with it, the other man will not have to pay; if the animal was hired, it will be paid for by its hiring fee.

### UST

**15** But if that happens when the owner of the animal is there, the one who borrowed it will not have to pay back anything. If the man who borrowed it only rented it, the money that he paid to rent it will be enough to pay for the animal dying or being injured."

## Exodus 22:16

### a man seduces a virgin who is not engaged

"a man persuades a virgin who is not engaged that she wants to sleep with him"

### not engaged

"not promised to be married"

### if he lies with her

Lying with someone is a euphemism for having sex. Alternate translation: "if he has sex with her" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### bride wealth

"dowry" or "bride price"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [virgin, virginity](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [virgin, virginity](#)

### ULT

**16** If a man seduces a virgin who is not engaged, and if he lies with her, he must surely make her his wife by paying the bride wealth required for this.

### UST

**16** "If a man forces a girl to sleep with him, a girl who is a virgin and who is not engaged to be married, he must pay the bride price for her and marry her.

## Exodus 22:17

### him, he

These pronouns refer back to the man who seduced the virgin.

### Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- silver
- virgin, virginity

### Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- silver
- virgin, virginity

### ULT

**17** If her father completely refuses to give her to him, he must pay money equal to the bride wealth of virgins.

### UST

**17** But if her father does not allow her to marry him, he must pay to the woman's father money that is the same as the bride price money that men pay for virgins.

## Exodus 22:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive

#### ULT

**18** You must not allow a sorceress to live.

#### UST

**18** You must kill any woman who practices sorcery.

## Exodus 22:19

### Whoever lies with an animal

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "Whoever has sexual relations with an animal" (See: [Euphemism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [beast](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [beast](#)

#### ULT

**19** Whoever lies with an animal must surely be put to death.

#### UST

**19** You must kill any person who sleeps with an animal like a man sleeps with a woman.



## Exodus 22:20

### Yahweh must be completely destroyed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh, you must completely destroy" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [destroy, destruction, annihilate](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [destroy, destruction, annihilate](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

#### ULT

**20** Whoever sacrifices to any god except to Yahweh must be completely destroyed.

#### UST

**20** You must offer sacrifices only to Yahweh. You must kill anyone who offers a sacrifice to any other god.

## Exodus 22:21

### wrong a foreigner

“mistreat a foreigner” or “cheat a foreigner”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)

#### ULT

**21** You must not wrong a foreigner or oppress him, for you were foreigners in the land of Egypt.

#### UST

**21** You must not mistreat a foreigner who comes to live among you. Do not forget that you were previously foreigners in Egypt.

## Exodus 22:22

### You must not mistreat any widow or fatherless child

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “You must treat all widows and fatherless children fairly” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

#### widow

“woman whose husband has died”

#### fatherless child

“orphan” or “child with no parents”

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> You must not mistreat any widow or fatherless child.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> You must not mistreat any widow or any orphan.

## Exodus 22:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- cry, cry out, outcry
- cry, cry out, outcry

### Translation Words - UST

- cry, cry out, outcry
- cry, cry out, outcry

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> If you afflict them at all, and if they call out to me, I will surely hear their call.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> If you mistreat them and they ask me to help them, I will help them,

## Exodus 22:24

### I will kill you with the sword

To be killed “with the sword” is a metonym that means a person will die violently, or perhaps fighting in a war. Alternate translation: “you will die a violent death” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [sword](#), [swordsmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [sword](#), [swordsmen](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> My anger will burn, and I will kill you with the sword; your wives will become widows, and your children will become fatherless.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> and I will be angry with you; I will cause you to die in war. Your wives will become widows, and your children will no longer have fathers.

## Exodus 22:25

### a moneylender

“one who lends money”

### charge him interest

“charge him extra money for borrowing” or “charge him extra money for the loan”

### Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- silver
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> If you lend money to any of my people among you who are poor, you must not be like a moneylender to him or charge him interest.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> If you lend money to any of my people who are poor, do not act like a moneylender and require him to pay interest on the money.

## Exodus 22:26

### garment in pledge

“coat as collateral” or “coat as a guarantee to repay the loan”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [restore](#), [restoration](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [restore](#), [restoration](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> If you take your neighbor's garment in pledge, you must return it to him before the sun goes down,

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> If he gives you his cloak to guarantee that he will pay the money back, you must give the cloak back to him before the sun goes down

## Exodus 22:27

### only covering

“only coat” or “only garment to keep him warm”

### What else can he sleep in?

This question adds emphasis. You can translate it as a strong statement. Alternate translation: “He will have nothing to wear while he sleeps!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [grace, gracious](#)
- [cry, cry out, outcry](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [grace, gracious](#)
- [cry, cry out, outcry](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> for that is his only covering; it is his garment for his body. What else can he sleep in? When he calls out to me, I will hear him, for I am compassionate.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> because he needs it to keep him warm during the night. That is the only covering that poor people have when they sleep at night. If you do not act mercifully toward him by giving back his cloak, when he cries out to me asking for my help, I will help him because I always act mercifully.



## Exodus 22:28

### You must not blaspheme me, God

“Do not insult God” or “Do not speak evil about God”

### nor curse a ruler

“and do not ask God to do bad things to a ruler”

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- curse, cursed, cursing
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- curse, cursed, cursing
- people, people group,

### ULT

**28** You must not blaspheme me, God,  
nor curse a ruler of your people.

### UST

**28** Do not insult God, and do not call on  
God to do harmful things to any ruler of  
your people.

## Exodus 22:29

### You must not hold back offerings

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "You must bring all of your offerings" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### give to me the firstborn of your sons

"dedicate your firstborn sons to me"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [firstborn](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [firstborn](#)

#### ULT

**29** You must not hold back offerings from your harvest or your winepresses. You must give to me the firstborn of your sons.

#### UST

**29** Do not withhold from me the best parts of the grain that you harvest, or of the olive oil or the wine that you produce. You will give your firstborn sons to me.

## Exodus 22:30

### do the same with

“dedicate to me the firstborn of”

### For seven days

This can be written as a numeral. Alternate translation: “For 7 days after they are born” (See: [Numbers](#))

### the eighth day

This can be written as a numeral. Alternate translation: “day number 8” (See: [Numbers](#))

### give them to me

“dedicate them to me”

#### ULT

**30** You must also do the same with your oxen and your sheep. For seven days they may remain with their mothers, but on the eighth day you must give them to me.

#### UST

**30** Similarly, your firstborn male cattle and sheep belong to me. After those animals are born, allow them to stay with their mothers for seven days. On the eighth day you will give them to me.

## Exodus 22:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- devour

### Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- devour

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> You will be people that are set apart for me. So you must not eat any meat that was torn by animals in the field. Instead, you must throw it to the dogs.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> You are people who are set apart to me. I detest the meat of any animal that has been killed by wild animals. Therefore do not eat such meat. Instead, throw it where the dogs can eat it."

## **Exodus 23**

### **Exodus 23 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Justice in society**

The rules and laws of this chapter are not intended to be followed by every society. Israel was God's chosen nation and was required to live in a special way. These laws concerned creating a just society and a holy nation. (See: [chosen](#), [choose](#), [chosen people](#), [Chosen One](#), [elect](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [the law](#) and [just](#), [justice](#), [unjust](#), [injustice](#), [justify](#), [justification](#) and [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#))

#### **Celebrations of feasts and festivals**

The people of Israel were required to celebrate certain feasts and festivals. These were part of the law of Moses and some are described in this chapter. Their purpose was to worship Yahweh and to remember the great things Yahweh has done for them.

## Exodus 23:1

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

### dishonest witness

This is the same as a lying or false witness.

### Translation Words - ULT

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- hand

### Translation Words - UST

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- hand

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> You must not give a false report about anyone. Do not join with a wicked man to be a dishonest witness.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> "Do not lie about other people. Do not help someone who is guilty by lying about what happened.

## Exodus 23:2

### **nor may you bear witness**

“and you also must not speak”

### **siding with the crowd**

This is a metaphor that describes one's agreeing with a group of people as if he actually walked over and stood with that group. Alternate translation: “doing what the crowd wants” or “agreeing with the majority” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **pervert justice**

do illegal or immoral actions that result in a unjust ruling

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#)

### **ULT**

<sup>2</sup> You must not follow a crowd to do evil, nor may you bear witness while siding with the crowd in order to pervert justice.

### **UST**

<sup>2</sup> Do not join with a group of people who are planning do something evil. Do not tell the same lies they do and so keep the judge from deciding the case justly.

## Exodus 23:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> You must not show favoritism to a poor man in his lawsuit.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> When a poor person is on trial, do not testify in his favor just because he is poor and you feel sorry for him.



## Exodus 23:4

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- restore, restoration
- donkey, mule
- adversary, enemy

### Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- restore, restoration
- donkey, mule
- adversary, enemy

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> If you meet your enemy's ox or his donkey going astray, you must bring it back to him.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> If you see someone's bull or donkey when it is wandering away loose, take it back to its owner even if the owner is your enemy.

## Exodus 23:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- donkey, mule

### Translation Words - UST

- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- donkey, mule

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> If you see the donkey of someone who hates you fallen to the ground under its load, you must not leave that person. You must surely help him with his donkey.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> If you see someone's donkey that has fallen down because of its heavy load, help the owner to get the donkey up again even if he is someone who hates you. Do not just walk away without helping him.

## Exodus 23:6

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

### Do not thrust aside justice for your poor in his lawsuit

“Do not decide to treat a poor man unjustly in legal matters”

### lawsuit

Here, this refers to any matter that a court decides.

### Translation Words - ULT

- judge, judgment

### Translation Words - UST

- judge, judgment

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Do not thrust aside justice for your poor in his lawsuit.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Decide the cases of poor people who are on trial as fairly as you judge the cases of other people.

## Exodus 23:7

### I will not acquit the wicked

"I will not find the wicked not guilty" or "I will not say of wicked people that they are innocent"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

#### Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Do not join others in making false accusations, and do not kill the innocent or righteous, for I will not acquit the wicked.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Do not accuse people falsely. Do not decide that innocent and righteous people should be killed because I will punish people who do such an evil thing.

## Exodus 23:8

### bribe blinds...perverts

Here a “bribe” is described as if it were a person. Alternate translation: “bribe discredits...undermines” (See: [Personification](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

#### Translation Words - UST

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Never take a bribe, for a bribe blinds those who see, and perverts honest people's words.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Do not accept money that is a bribe because officials who accept bribes are not able to decide what is right to do, and they do not allow innocent people to be treated fairly.

## Exodus 23:9

### the life of a foreigner

“the kind of life a stranger lives in a foreign land”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Egypt, Egyptian
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- Egypt, Egyptian
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> You must not oppress a foreigner, since you know the life of a foreigner, for you were foreigners in the land of Egypt.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Do not mistreat foreigners who live among you. You know how foreigners often feel because the Egyptians did not treat you well when you were foreigners there.

## Exodus 23:10

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

### its produce

“the food its plants produce”

### Translation Words - ULT

- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

**10** For six years you will sow seed on your land and gather in its produce.

### UST

**10** For six years, plant seeds in your ground and gather the harvest.

## Exodus 23:11

### unplowed

uncultivated, untilled

### fallow

in its natural state, not used for to grow food

### so that the poor among your people may eat

The poor can eat any food that grows on its own in a field that is not cultivated. This can be stated clearly in the translation. Alternate translation: “so the poor among your people may harvest and eat any food that grows on its own in that field” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- devour
- devour

### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- devour
- devour

### ULT

**11** But in the seventh year you will leave it unplowed and fallow, so that the poor among your people may eat. What they leave, the wild animals will eat. You will do the same with your vineyards and olive orchards.

### UST

**11** But on the seventh year you must not plant anything. If things grow without your planting seeds, allow the poor people to harvest and eat the crops. If there are still crops left over, allow the wild animals to eat them. Do the same thing with your grapevine and your olive trees.



## Exodus 23:12

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

### your ox and your donkey

“your work animals”

### any foreigner may rest and be refreshed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “any foreigner may rest and regain his strength” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [rest, rested, restless](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [rest, rested, restless](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**12** During six days you will do your work, but on the seventh day you must rest. Do this so that your ox and your donkey may have rest, and so that your female slave's son and any foreigner may rest and be refreshed.

### UST

**12** You may work for six days each week, but on the seventh day you must rest and not work. Also on the seventh day you must allow your work animals, your slaves, and the foreigners who live among you to rest and to become ready to work again.

## Exodus 23:13

### Pay attention to

“Do” or “Obey”

### mention the names of other gods

This represents praying to other gods. Alternate translation: “pray to other gods” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)

### ULT

**13** Pay attention to everything that I have said to you. Do not mention the names of other gods, nor let their names be heard from your mouth.

### UST

**13** Make certain that you obey everything that I have commanded you to do. Do not pray to other gods. Do not even mention their names.

## Exodus 23:14

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

#### ULT

**14** You must travel to hold a festival for me three times every year.

#### UST

**14** Every year you must travel to three festivals to honor me.

## Exodus 23:15

### Aviv

This is the name of the first month of the Hebrew calendar. Aviv is during the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. See how you translated this in [Exodus 13:4](#). (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

### not appear before me empty-handed

Here understatement is used to emphasize that the Israelites must bring a suitable offering to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “come to me without a proper offering” or “always bring an offering to me” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [unleavened bread](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [devour](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [unleavened bread](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [devour](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**15** You are to observe the Festival of Unleavened Bread. As I commanded you, you will eat unleavened bread for seven days. At that time, you will appear before me in the month of Aviv, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. But you must not appear before me empty-handed.

### UST

**15** The first one is the Festival of Bread with no Yeast. Celebrate it in the month of Aviv, which is the month in which you left Egypt. Celebrate it in the way that I commanded you; eat the bread for seven days. Always bring an offering when you come to worship me. Do not come empty-handed.

## Exodus 23:16

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

### You must observe

“You must honor” or “You must celebrate”

### Festival of Ingathering

This festival celebrated the final harvesting of all the crops for the year.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [firstfruits](#)
- [harvest, reap](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [firstfruits](#)
- [harvest, reap](#)

### ULT

**16** You must observe the Festival of Harvest, the firstfruits of your labors when you sowed seed in the fields. Also you must observe the Festival of Ingathering at the end of the year, when you gather in your produce from the fields.

### UST

**16** The second festival is the Festival of Harvest. During that festival you must offer to me the first parts of your crops that grow from the seeds that you planted. The third festival is the Festival of Finished Harvest. That will be after you finish harvesting your grain, your grapes, and your fruit.

## Exodus 23:17

### All your males must appear before the Lord Yahweh

Here to “appear” means to gather for worship. Alternate translation: “All the men must gather to worship the Lord Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- face, facial

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- face, facial

#### ULT

**17** All your males must appear before the Lord Yahweh three times every year.

#### UST

**17** Every year, at each of these times, all the men must gather together to worship me, Yahweh God.

## Exodus 23:18

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

### fat from the sacrifices

The fat was burned as an offering to Yahweh and was never eaten.

### Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- feast, feasting
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Translation Words - UST

- blood
- feast, feasting
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### ULT

**18** You must not offer the blood from sacrifices made to me with bread containing yeast. The fat from the sacrifices at my festivals must not remain all night until the morning.

### UST

**18** When you sacrifice an animal and offer it to me, you must not offer bread that has been baked with yeast. When you offer sacrifices, burn the fat from the animals on that same day so that no fat remains the next morning.

## Exodus 23:19

### the choicest firstfruits

“the best and first produce of the harvest”

### You must not boil a young goat in its mother’s milk

This was a magical fertility practice among the Canaanites, which the Israelites were not permitted to participate in.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- firstfruits
- firstfruits
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- firstfruits
- firstfruits
- house

#### ULT

**19** You must bring the choicest firstfruits from your land into my house, the house of Yahweh your God. You must not boil a young goat in its mother’s milk.

#### UST

**19** Each year, when you harvest your crops, take the best of what you harvest first, go to the place where you worship me, and give it to me, Yahweh God. When you kill a young animal, do not cook it by boiling it in its mother’s milk.”



## Exodus 23:20

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- messenger

### Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer
- messenger

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> I am going to send an angel before you to guard you on the way, and to bring you to the place that I have prepared.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> "I am going to send an angel ahead of you to guard you as you travel and to bring you safely to the place that I have prepared for you.

## Exodus 23:21

### Be attentive to him

“Listen to him”

### Do not provoke him, for he will not pardon

“If you provoke him, he will not pardon”

### My name is on him

Here “name” refers to God’s authority. Alternate translation: “He has my authority” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [voice](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [voice](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)

### ULT

**21** Be attentive to him and obey him. Do not provoke him, for he will not pardon your transgressions. My name is on him.

### UST

**21** Pay attention to what he says and obey him. Do not rebel against him because he will have my authority and he will punish you if you rebel against him.

## Exodus 23:22

### If you indeed obey his voice

Here “voice” represents what the angel says. Alternate translation: “If you carefully obey what he says” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### an enemy to your enemies and an adversary to your adversaries

These two phrases mean the same thing and are used for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [voice](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [voice](#)

#### ULT

**22** If you indeed obey his voice and do everything that I tell you, then I will be an enemy to your enemies and an adversary to your adversaries.

#### UST

**22** But if you pay attention to what he says and if you do all that I tell you to do, I will fight against all of your enemies.

## Exodus 23:23

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Amorite
- Hivite
- Jebus, Jebusite
- Perizzite
- messenger
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- Amorite
- Hivite
- Jebus, Jebusite
- Perizzite
- messenger
- walk, walked

### ULT

**23** My angel will go before you and bring you to the Amorites, Hittites, Perizzites, Canaanites, Hivites, and the Jebusites. I will destroy them.

### UST

**23** My angel will go ahead of you and will take you to where the Amor, Heth, Periz, Canaan, Hiv, and Jebus people groups live, and I will completely get rid of them.

## Exodus 23:24

### You must not...do as they do

The Israelites must not live as the people who worship other gods.  
Alternate translation: "You must not...live as the people who worship those gods" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### ULT

**24** You must not bow down to their gods, worship them, or do as they do. Instead, you must completely overthrow them and smash their stone pillars in pieces.

#### UST

**24** Do not bow down before their gods or worship them. Do not do the things that they think that their gods want them to do. Destroy their gods and smash to pieces their sacred stones.

## Exodus 23:25

### he will bless your bread and water

This is a merism that means food and drink. Alternate translation: “he will bless your food and drink” or “he will bless you by giving you food and drink” (See: [Merism](#))

### he will bless...I will remove

Yahweh switched between the first and third pronoun to refer to himself. Here both “he” and “I” refer to Yahweh. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [bread](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [bread](#)

### ULT

**25** You must worship Yahweh your God, and he will bless your bread and water. I will remove sickness from among you.

### UST

**25** You must worship me, Yahweh your God. If you do that, I will bless your food and water, and I will protect you from becoming sick.

## Exodus 23:26

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

### **No woman will be barren or will miscarry her young in your land**

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “Every woman will be able to become pregnant and give birth to healthy babies” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### **miscarry**

to have a pregnancy end early and unexpectedly

### ULT

**26** No woman will be barren or will miscarry her young in your land. I will give you long lives.

### UST

**26** No women in your land will have miscarriages, and no women will be unable to become pregnant. I will enable you to live a long time.

## Exodus 23:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- adversary, enemy
- people, people group,
- terror, terrorize, terrify, frightened, panic

### Translation Words - UST

- adversary, enemy
- people, people group,
- terror, terrorize, terrify, frightened, panic

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> I will send fear of myself on those into whose land you advance. I will kill all the people whom you meet. I will make all your enemies turn their backs to you in fright.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> I will cause the people who oppose you to become very afraid of me. I will kill all of the people that you come close to. Then I will cause them to turn around and run away from you.



## Exodus 23:28

### hornets

a flying insect that can sting people and cause pain

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Hittite](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Hivite](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Hittite](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Hivite](#)

#### ULT

**28** I will send hornets before you that will drive out the Hivites, Canaanites, and the Hittites from before you.

#### UST

**28** I will cause your enemies to become terrified. I will expel the Hiv, Canaan, and Heth people groups from your land.

## Exodus 23:29

### or the land would become abandoned

“because no one would be living in the land”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### Translation Words - UST

- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> I will not drive them out from before you in one year, or the land would become abandoned, and the wild animals would become too many for you.

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> I will not remove all of them in less than one year. If I did that, your land would become deserted, and there would be very many wild animals that would attack you.

## Exodus 23:30

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Instead, I will drive them out little by little from before you until you become fruitful and inherit the land.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> I will remove those people groups slowly, a few at a time, until the number of your people increases and you are able to live everywhere in the land.

## Exodus 23:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Philistines
- hand
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Philistines
- hand
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> I will fix your borders from the Sea of Reeds to the Sea of the Philistines, and from the wilderness to the Euphrates River. I will give you victory over the land's inhabitants. You will drive them out before yourselves.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> I will cause the borders of your land to extend from the Sea of Reeds in the southeast to the Mediterranean Sea in the northwest, and from the wilderness of Sinai in the southwest to the Euphrates River in the northeast of the country. I will give you the power to remove the people who live there so that you will remove them as you occupy more of the country.

## Exodus 23:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- cut off

### Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- cut off

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> You must not make a covenant with them or with their gods.

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> You must not make any agreement with those people or with their gods.

## Exodus 23:33

### this will surely become a trap for you

This means worshiping other gods will lead the people of Israel to certain destruction as if they were an animal caught in a hunter's trap. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [God](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [God](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

#### ULT

**33** They must not live in your land, or they would make you sin against me. If you worship their gods, this will surely become a trap for you.”

#### UST

**33** Do not allow those people to live in your land in order that they do not cause you to sin against me. If you worship their gods, you will not be able to escape from worshiping them and sinning against me just as someone caught in a trap is unable to escape.”

## **Exodus 24**

### **Exodus 24 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Moses' covenant**

The people of Israel promise to obey the covenant Yahweh made with Moses. Their continued blessings were contingent upon their obedience to this covenant. (See: [promise](#), [promised](#) and [covenant](#))

#### **God's holiness**

Because Yahweh is perfectly holy, he can only be approached in a certain way. Because of this, only Moses was allowed near Yahweh. This is also why Yahweh is described as a "devouring fire." (See: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#))

## Exodus 24:1

### Nadab...Abihu

These are men's names. See how you translated these names in [Exodus 6:23](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### seventy of Israel's elders

"70 of Israel's elders" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Come up to me—you, Aaron, Nadab, Abihu, and seventy of Israel's elders, and worship me at a distance.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses. "Come up to me on top of this mountain, you and Aaron and his sons Nadab and Abihu. Also take along seventy of the Israelite elders. While you are still some distance from the top of the mountain, there you may worship me.



## Exodus 24:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Moses alone may come near to me.  
The others must not come near, nor  
may the people come up with him.”

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Moses, I will allow you alone to come  
near to me. The others must not come  
near, and the rest of the people must  
not come up the mountain.”

## Exodus 24:3

### with one voice

This is an idiom that means the people were in complete agreement. Alternate translation: “together” or “in agreement” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Moses went and told the people all of Yahweh's words and decrees. All the people answered with one voice and said, “We will do all the words that Yahweh has said.”

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> Moses went and told the people everything that Yahweh had said and all that he had commanded. The people all replied together, saying, “We will do everything that Yahweh has told us to do.”

## Exodus 24:4

### foot of the mountain

“base of the mountain” or “bottom of the mountain”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

#### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then Moses wrote down all of Yahweh's words. Early in the morning, Moses built an altar at the foot of the mountain and arranged twelve stone pillars, so that the stones would represent the twelve tribes of Israel.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> Then Moses wrote down everything that Yahweh had commanded. Early the next morning Moses built a stone altar. He also set up twelve stones, one for each of the Israelite tribes.

## Exodus 24:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> He sent some Israelite young men to offer burnt offerings and sacrifice fellowship offerings of oxen to Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> He also chose some young men. They burned sacrifices to Yahweh and they also sacrificed some cattle as offerings to promise friendship with him.

## Exodus 24:6

### Moses took half of the blood and put it into basins

Moses collected half of the blood in basins in order to splash it on the people in [Exodus 24:8](#). This would confirm the people's participation in the covenant between the people of Israel and God.

### he sprinkled the other half onto the altar

Here the altar represents God. This would confirm God's participation in the covenant between God and the people of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- appoint, appointed
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- appoint, appointed
- Moses

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Moses took half of the blood and put it into basins; he sprinkled the other half onto the altar.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Moses took half of the blood of the animals that were slaughtered and put it in bowls. The other half of the blood he threw against the altar.

## Exodus 24:7

### We will be obedient

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "We will obey everything" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> He took the book of the Covenant and read it aloud to the people. They said, "We will do all that Yahweh has spoken. We will be obedient."

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Then he took the scroll on which he had written everything that Yahweh had commanded in the covenant that he had made, and he read it aloud while all the people were listening. Then all the people said, "We will do all that Yahweh has told us to do. We will obey everything."

## Exodus 24:8

### Then Moses took the blood

This refers to the blood that Moses had put into the bowls. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Then Moses took the blood that was in the bowls" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- covenant
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,
- cut off

#### Translation Words - UST

- blood
- covenant
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,
- cut off

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then Moses took the blood and sprinkled it onto the people. He said, "This is the blood of the covenant that Yahweh has made with you by giving you this promise with all these words."

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then Moses took the blood that was in the bowls and threw it on the people. He said, "This is the blood that confirms the covenant that Yahweh has made with you when he gave you all these commands."

## Exodus 24:9

### Nadab...Abihu

These are men's names. See how you translated these names in [Exodus 6:23](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then Moses, Aaron, Nadab, Abihu, and seventy of Israel's elders went up the mountain.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Then Moses along with Aaron, Nadab, Abihu, and the seventy Israelite elders went up the mountain,



## Exodus 24:10

### Under his feet

This speaks of God as if he had human feet. (See: [Personification](#))

### a pavement made of sapphire stone

“a pavement made of blue stones called sapphires”

### pavement

a hard surface for walking or riding

### sapphire stone

This is a gemstone that is blue in color. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### as clear as the sky itself

This is a simile. Alternate translation: “as clear as the sky is when there are no clouds” (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### ULT

**10** They saw the God of Israel. Under his feet there was a pavement made of sapphire stone, as clear as the sky itself.

### UST

**10** and they saw God, the one whom the Israelite people worship. Under his feet was something like a pavement made of blue stones called sapphires. They were as clear as the sky is when there are no clouds.

## Exodus 24:11

### God did not lay a hand on the Israelite leaders

This means that God did not harm the leaders. Alternate translation: "God did not harm the Israelite leaders" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [devour](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [devour](#)

#### ULT

**11** God did not lay a hand on the Israelite leaders. They saw God, and they ate and drank.

#### UST

**11** God did not harm those Israelite elders because of their having seen him. They saw God, and they ate and drank together!

## Exodus 24:12

### tablets of stone and the law and commandments

God had written the law and commandments on the tablets of stone. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “two stone slabs on which I have written all the laws” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

**12** Yahweh said to Moses, “Come up to me on the mountain and stay there. I will give you the tablets of stone and the law and commandments that I have written, so that you may teach them.”

#### UST

**12** Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Come up to me on top of this mountain. While you are here, I will give you two stone slabs on which I have written all the laws that I have given to you to teach the people.”

## Exodus 24:13

### with his assistant Joshua

“with Joshua who assisted him” or “with Joshua who helped him”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Moses
- Moses
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Moses
- Moses
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

**13** So Moses set out with his assistant Joshua and went up the mountain of God.

#### UST

**13** Then Moses went with his servant Joshua part of the way up the mountain where God was.

## Exodus 24:14

### wait for us

“wait for Joshua and me”

### Hur

Hur was a man who was a friend of Moses and Aaron. See how you translated this name in [Exodus 17:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bind, bond, bound](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bind, bond, bound](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)

### ULT

**14** Moses had said to the elders, “Stay here and wait for us until we come to you. Aaron and Hur are with you. If anyone has a dispute, let him go to them.”

### UST

**14** Now Moses had said to the elders, “Stay here with the other people until we return! Do not forget that Aaron and Hur will be with you, so if anyone has a dispute while I am gone, he can go to those two men.”

## Exodus 24:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

**15** So Moses went up the mountain, and the cloud covered it.

#### UST

**15** Then Moses went the rest of the way up the mountain, and the cloud covered the mountain.

## Exodus 24:16

### Yahweh's glory

This was the brilliant light of God's presence. Alternate translation: "The brilliant light showing God's presence" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [glory, glorious, glorify](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [glory, glorious, glorify](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

#### ULT

**16** Yahweh's glory settled on Mount Sinai, and the cloud covered it for six days. On the seventh day he called to Moses from within the cloud.

#### UST

**16** The glory of Yahweh came down on the mountain and covered it for six days. On the seventh day, Yahweh called to Moses from the middle of the cloud.

## Exodus 24:17

### like a devouring fire

This means the glory of Yahweh was very large and seemed to burn brightly like a fire. Alternate translation: “like a big fire burning” (See: [Simile](#))

### in the eyes of the Israelites

Their eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents their thoughts or judgment about they saw. Alternate translation: “to the Israelites” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- devour
- head

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- devour
- head

### ULT

**17** The appearance of Yahweh’s glory was like a devouring fire on the top of the mountain in the eyes of the Israelites.

### UST

**17** When the Israelite people looked at the top of the mountain, the glory of Yahweh was like a big fire burning there.



## Exodus 24:18

### forty days and forty nights

“40 days and 40 nights” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

**18** Moses entered the cloud and went up the mountain. He was up the mountain for forty days and forty nights.

#### UST

**18** Moses went into the cloud on top of the mountain and was there for forty days and nights.

## **Exodus 25**

### **Exodus 25 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **The tent of meeting**

This chapter gives specific instructions regarding the building of a tent where Moses would meet Yahweh and the ark would be stored. This would eventually become the tabernacle. It was to be considered a very holy place. (See: [tabernacle](#) and [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#))

## Exodus 25:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh said to Moses,

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh said to Moses,

## Exodus 25:2

### who is motivated by a willing heart

This is an idiom that indicates a person's desire to give an offering.  
Alternate translation: "who wants to give an offering" (See: [Idiom](#))

### You must receive

The word "you" refers to Moses and the leaders. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [freewill offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [freewill offering](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> "Tell the Israelites to take an offering for me from every person who is motivated by a willing heart. You must receive these offerings for me.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> "Tell the Israelites that they must give offerings to me. Receive from the people every offering that they want to give to me.

## Exodus 25:3

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- silver
- gold, golden

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> These are the offerings that you must receive from them: gold, silver, and bronze;

### UST

<sup>3</sup> These are the things that they may offer: gold, silver, bronze,

## Exodus 25:4

### blue, purple, and scarlet material

Possible meanings are 1) “material that is dyed blue, purple, and scarlet,” probably wool yarn, or 2) “blue, purple and scarlet dye” to dye the linen.

### scarlet

bright red

### Translation Words - ULT

- purple

### Translation Words - UST

- purple

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> blue, purple, and scarlet material; fine linen; goats’ hair;

### UST

<sup>4</sup> blue and purple and scarlet dyed wool, fine linen, goats’ hair for making cloth,

## Exodus 25:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> ram skins dyed red and fine leather hides; acacia wood;

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> ram skins that have been tanned, fine leather hides, hard wood from acacia trees,

## Exodus 25:6

### spices

dried plants that people grind into a powder and put in oil or food to give it a nice smell or flavor (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [olive](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [olive](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> oil for the sanctuary lamps; spices for the anointing oil and the fragrant incense;

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> olive oil to burn in the lamps, spices to put in the olive oil for anointing the priests, and spices to put in the sweet-smelling incense,



## Exodus 25:7

### onyx

a valuable stone that has layers of white and black, red or brown.  
(See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### precious stones to be set

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “precious stones for someone to set” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### precious stones

“valuable gems” or “treasured gems”

#### ULT

7 onyx stones and other precious stones to be set for the ephod and breastpiece.

#### UST

7 onyx stones and other expensive stones to be fastened to the priest's sacred apron and to be put on the chest pouch that is to be fastened to the apron.

## Exodus 25:8

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Let them make me a sanctuary so that I may live among them.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Tell the people to make a big sacred tent for me so that I can live in it in their midst.

## Exodus 25:9

### tabernacle

Here this word means the same thing as the word “sanctuary” in verse 8.

### You must make it

Here “you” is plural and refers to Moses and the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### show you in the plans

“show you in the design” or “show you in the pattern.” Here “you” is singular and refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> You must make it exactly as I will show you in the plans for the tabernacle and for all its equipment.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> They must make the sacred tent and all the things that will be used inside it according to the plan that I will show you.

## Exodus 25:10

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### two and a half cubits...one cubit and a half

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “2.5 cubits...1.5 cubits” or “115 centimeters...almost 69 centimeters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Fractions](#))

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> Tell the people to make a sacred chest from acacia wood. It is to be one meter long, three-quarters of a meter wide and three-quarters of a meter high.

## Exodus 25:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- clean, wash
- gold, golden
- gold, golden
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- clean, wash
- gold, golden
- gold, golden
- house

### ULT

**11** You must cover it inside and out with pure gold, and you must make on it a border of gold around its top.

### UST

**11** Cover the chest with pure gold inside and outside and put a gold border around the top of it.

## Exodus 25:12

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### cast four rings of gold

Casting was a process in which gold was melted, poured into a mold that was in the shape of a ring, and then allowed to harden.

### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> You must cast four rings of gold for it, and put them on the ark's four feet, with two rings on one side of it, and two rings on the other side.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> They must make four rings from gold and fasten them to the legs of the chest. Put two rings on each side of the chest.

## Exodus 25:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> You must make poles of acacia wood and cover them with gold.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> They must make two poles from acacia wood, and they must cover them with gold.

## Exodus 25:14

### in order to carry the ark

“so that you can carry the ark”

#### ULT

**14** You must put the poles into the rings on the ark's sides, in order to carry the ark.

#### UST

**14** They must put the poles into the rings on the sides of the chest so that the chest can be carried by the poles.



## Exodus 25:15

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> The poles must remain in the rings of the ark; they must not be taken from it.

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> The poles must always be left in the rings; they must not take the poles out of the rings.

## Exodus 25:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**16** You must put into the ark the covenant decrees that I will give you.

### UST

**16** Put inside the chest the two stone slabs that I will give you on which I have written my commandments.

## Exodus 25:17

### atonement lid

This is the lid that sits on top of the ark where the atonement offering was made.

### two and a half cubits...a cubit and a half

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "2.5 cubits...1.5 cubits" or "115 centimeters...69 centimeters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Fractions](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

**17** You must make an atonement lid of pure gold. Its length must be two and a half cubits, and its width must be a cubit and a half.

### UST

**17** Tell them to make a lid for the chest from pure gold; it will be the place where I will cover people's sins. It also is to be one meter long and three-quarters of a meter wide.

## Exodus 25:18

### hammered gold

“beaten gold”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden

#### Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden

#### ULT

**18** You must make two cherubim of hammered gold for the two ends of the atonement lid.

#### UST

**18** Tell them to hammer a large lump of gold into the form of two creatures that have wings for the two ends of the lid.

## Exodus 25:19

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### atonement lid

This is the lid that sits on top of the ark where the atonement offering was made. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:17](#).

### They must be made

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must make them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Make one cherub for one end of the atonement lid, and the other cherub for the other end. They must be made as one piece with the atonement lid.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> One of these is to be put at each end of the chest, but the gold from which they are made must be joined to the gold from which the lid is made.

## Exodus 25:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- face, facial
- face, facial

### Translation Words - UST

- brother
- face, facial
- face, facial

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> The cherubim must spread out their wings upward and overshadow the atonement lid with them. The cherubim must face one another and look toward the center of the atonement lid.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Tell them to place the winged creatures so that their wings touch each other and spread out over the lid. The two winged creatures were facing each other and they both were looking toward the center of the chest.

## Exodus 25:21

### You must put

Here “you” refers to Moses and the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

#### ULT

**21** You must put the atonement lid on top of the ark, and you must put into the ark the covenant decrees that I am giving you.

#### UST

**21** Put the stone slabs that I will give you inside the chest. Then fasten the lid onto the top of the chest.

## Exodus 25:22

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak to Moses.

### It is at the ark that I will meet with you

"I will meet with you at the ark." In 25:22 the word "you" is singular and refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### atonement lid

This is the lid that sits on top of the ark where the atonement offering was made. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:17](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### ULT

**22** It is at the ark that I will meet with you. I will speak with you from my position above the atonement lid. It will be from between the two cherubim over the ark of the testimony that I will speak to you about all the commands I will give you for the Israelites.

### UST

**22** I will set times to talk with you there. From above the lid of the chest, between the two winged creatures, I will tell to you all my laws that you must transmit to the Israelite people.



## Exodus 25:23

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### two cubits...one cubit...a cubit and a half

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "2 cubits...1 cubit...1.5 cubits" or "92 centimeters...46 centimeters...69 centimeters" (See:

[Biblical Distance](#) and [Fractions](#))

### ULT

**23** You must make a table of acacia wood. Its length must be two cubits; its width must be one cubit, and its height must be a cubit and a half.

### UST

**23** Tell them to make a table from acacia wood. It is to be one meter long, one-half of a meter wide, and three-quarters of a meter high.

## Exodus 25:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- clean, wash
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- clean, wash
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> You must cover it with pure gold and put a border of gold around the top.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> Tell them to cover it with pure gold and put a gold border around it.

## Exodus 25:25

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### one handbreadth wide

a measurement of 7 to 8 centimeters

### frame for it

“frame for the table”

### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> You must make a surrounding frame for it one handbreadth wide, with a surrounding border of gold for the frame.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Tell them to make a rim all around it, four-fifths of a meter wide, and to put a gold border around the rim.

## Exodus 25:26

### feet were

“legs are”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden

#### Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> You must make for it four rings of gold and attach the rings to the four corners, where the four feet were.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> Tell them to make four rings from gold and fasten them to the four corners of the table, one ring close to each leg of the table.

## Exodus 25:27

### The rings must be attached

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must attach the rings" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### in order to carry

"so you can carry"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)

### ULT

**27** The rings must be attached to the frame to provide places for the poles, in order to carry the table.

### UST

**27** The rings should be fastened to the table near the rim at the legs in order to carry the table with poles.

## Exodus 25:28

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### so that the table may be carried with them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that you may carry the table with them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden

### ULT

**28** You must make the poles out of acacia wood and cover them with gold so that the table may be carried with them.

### UST

**28** Make two poles from acacia wood and cover them with gold. The poles for carrying the table are to be inserted into the rings.

## Exodus 25:29

### to be used to pour out drink offerings

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that you may use them to pour out drink offerings” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> You must make the dishes, spoons, pitchers, and bowls to be used to pour out drink offerings. You must make them of pure gold.

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> Also tell them to make plates, spoons, jars, and bowls to be used when the priests pour out wine to offer to me. They must all be made from pure gold.

## Exodus 25:30

### bread of the presence

This bread represented the presence of God.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- bread
- face, facial

#### Translation Words - UST

- bread
- face, facial

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> You must regularly set the bread of the presence on the table before me.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> On the table in front of the chest, there must always be the bread to display before me that the priests have offered to me.



## Exodus 25:31

### hammered gold

“beaten gold.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:18](#).

### The lampstand is to be made

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Make the lampstand” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Its cups, its leafy bases, and its flowers are to be all made of one piece with it

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Make its cups, its leafy bases, and its flowers all of one piece with the lampstand” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

**31** You must make a lampstand of pure hammered gold. The lampstand is to be made with its base and shaft. Its cups, its leafy bases, and its flowers are to be all made of one piece with it.

### UST

**31** Tell them to make a lampstand from pure gold. They must hammer one large lump of gold to make its base and its shaft. The branches of the lampstand, the cups for holding the oil, the flower buds and the flower petals that decorate the branches of the lamp, the base, and the shaft are all to be hammered from one big lump of gold.

## Exodus 25:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Six branches must extend out from its sides—three branches must extend from one side, and three branches of the lampstand must extend from the other side.

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> There are to be six branches on the lampstand, three on each side of the shaft.

## Exodus 25:33

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do. Yahweh is describing the lampstand ([Exodus 25:31-32](#)).

### almond blossoms

white or pink flowers that have five petals

#### ULT

**33** The first branch must have three cups made like almond blossoms, with a leafy base and a flower, and three cups made like almond blossoms in the other branch, with a leafy base and a flower. It must be the same for all six branches extending out from the lampstand.

#### UST

**33** Each of the branches is to have on it three gold decorations that will look like almond blossoms. These decorations must also have flower buds and flower petals.

## Exodus 25:34

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do. Yahweh is describing the lampstand ([Exodus 25:31-32](#)).

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> On the lampstand itself, the central shaft, there must be four cups made like almond blossoms, with their leafy bases and the flowers.

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> On the shaft of the lampstand there are to be four gold decorations that also look like almond blossoms, each one with flower buds and petals.

## Exodus 25:35

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do. Yahweh is describing the lampstand ([Exodus 25:31-32](#)).

### made as one piece with it

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must make them as one piece with the lampstand” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> There must be a leafy base under the first pair of branches—made as one piece with it, and a leafy base under the second pair of branches—also made as one piece with it. In the same way there must be a leafy base under the third pair of branches, made as one piece with it. It must be the same for all six branches extending out from the lampstand.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> On each side, there is to be one flower bud beneath each of the branches.

## Exodus 25:36

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do. Yahweh is describing the lampstand ([Exodus 25:31-32](#)).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Their leafy bases and branches must all be one piece with it, one beaten piece of work of pure gold.

### UST

<sup>36</sup> All these buds and branches, along with the shaft, are to be hammered from one large lump of pure gold.

## Exodus 25:37

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### for them to give light from it

“so they shine light from it”

### Translation Words - ULT

- face, facial

### Translation Words - UST

- face, facial

### ULT

**37** You must make the lampstand and its seven lamps, and set up its lamps for them to give light from it.

### UST

**37** Also tell them to make seven small cups for holding oil. One is to be put on top of the shaft and the others are to be put on top of the branches. Place these cups so that when the lamps are lit, the light will shine toward the front of the lampstand.

## Exodus 25:38

### The tongs and their trays must be made of pure gold

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Make the tongs and their trays of pure gold" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### ULT

**38** The tongs and their trays must be made of pure gold.

#### UST

**38** Tell them to make tongs from pure gold, to remove the burned wicks and trays in which to put the burned wicks.



## Exodus 25:39

### one talent

A talent weighs about thirty-three kilograms. (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### its accessories

the tongs and the trays

### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean](#), [wash](#)
- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [clean](#), [wash](#)
- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### ULT

**39** Use one talent of pure gold to make the lampstand and its accessories.

### UST

**39** Tell them to use thirty-three kilograms of pure gold to make the lampstand, the tongs, and the trays.

## Exodus 25:40

### you are being shown on the mountain

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I am showing you on the mountain" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

**40** Be sure to make them after the pattern that you are being shown on the mountain.

#### UST

**40** Make sure that they make these things according to the instructions that I am giving you here on this mountain."

## **Exodus 26**

### **Exodus 26 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter is a continuation of the material in the previous chapter.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **The tent of meeting**

This chapter gives specific instructions regarding the building of a tent where Moses would meet Yahweh and the ark would be stored. This would eventually become the tabernacle. It was to be considered a very holy place. (See: [tabernacle](#) and [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#))

## Exodus 26:1

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do ([Exodus 25:1](#)).

### You must make

Yahweh is speaking to Moses, so the word “you” is singular. Yahweh probably expected Moses to tell someone else to do the actual work, but Moses would be the one responsible for seeing that the work was done correctly. “Tell a craftsman to make” (See: [Forms of You](#))

### curtains

These were large, heavy sections of woven cloth that were used to form the covering and dividing walls of the tabernacle.

### scarlet wool

wool dyed a deep red color

### craftsman

a person who is skilled in making beautiful objects by hand

### Translation Words - ULT

- [purple](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [purple](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> You must make the tabernacle with ten curtains made from fine linen and blue, purple, and scarlet wool with the designs of cherubim. This will be the work of a very skilled craftsman.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> “Tell the people to make the sacred tent using ten long strips of fine linen. They must take blue, purple, and red thread, and a skilled craftsman must embroider these strips with designs that represent the winged creatures that are above the chest.

## Exodus 26:2

### twenty-eight cubits...four cubits

"28 cubits...4 cubits." A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Numbers](#))

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> The length of each curtain must be twenty-eight cubits, the width four cubits. All the curtains must be of the same size.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> Each strip is to be twelve and one-half meters long and one and four-fifths meters wide.

## Exodus 26:3

### Five curtains must be joined to each other...must also be joined to each other

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Sew five curtains together to make one set, and sew the other five curtains together to make another set" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Five curtains must be joined to each other, and the other five curtains must also be joined to each other.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> Tell them to sew five strips together to make one set, and to sew the other five strips together to make another set.

## Exodus 26:4

### one set

“one set of five curtains”

### the second set

“the second set of five curtains”

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> You must make loops of blue along the outer edge of the end curtain of one set. In the same way, you must do the same along the outer edge of the end curtain in the second set.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> For each set, they must make loops of blue cloth and fasten them along the outer edge of the strip, at the end of each set.

## Exodus 26:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> You must make fifty loops on the first curtain, and you must make fifty loops on the end curtain in the second set. Do this so that the loops will be opposite to each other.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> They must put fifty loops on the edge of the first set, and fifty loops at the edge of the second set so that the loops are opposite to each other.



## Exodus 26:6

### clasps

The clasps fit into the loops (verses 4 and 5) to hold the curtains together.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden

#### Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> You must make fifty clasps of gold and join the curtains together with them so that the tabernacle becomes united.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Tell them to make fifty gold clasps to fasten both of the sets together. As a result, the inside of the sacred tent will be as though it were one piece.

## Exodus 26:7

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### eleven

“11” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> You must make curtains of goats' hair for a tent over the tabernacle. You must make eleven of these curtains.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Also tell them to make a cover for the sacred tent from eleven pieces of cloth made from goats' hair.

## Exodus 26:8

### thirty...four

"30...4" (See: [Numbers](#))

### cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> The length of each curtain must be thirty cubits, and the width of each curtain must be four cubits. Each of the eleven curtains must be of the same size.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Each piece of cloth is to be thirteen and one-half meters long and one and four-fifths meters wide.

## Exodus 26:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- face, facial

### Translation Words - UST

- face, facial

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> You must join five curtains to each other and the other six curtains to each other. You must double over the sixth curtain in the front of the tent.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Tell them to sew five of these pieces of cloth together to make one set, and sew the other six pieces of cloth together to make another set. They must fold the sixth piece of cloth in half to make it double over the front of the sacred tent.

## Exodus 26:10

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### loops

See how you translated these in [Exodus 26:4](#).

#### ULT

**10** You must make fifty loops on the edge of the end curtain of the first set, and fifty loops on the edge of the end curtain that joins the second set.

#### UST

**10** Tell them to make one hundred loops of blue cloth, and to fasten fifty of them to the outer edge of the one set and fasten fifty to the outer edge of the other set.

## Exodus 26:11

### clasps

The clasps fit into the loops to hold the curtains together. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:6](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bronze](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bronze](#)

### ULT

**11** You must make fifty bronze clasps and put them into the loops. Then you join the tent together so that it may be one piece.

### UST

**11** Tell them to make fifty bronze clasps and put them in the cloth loops to join the two sets together. As a result, the cover for the sacred tent will be as though it were one piece.

## Exodus 26:12

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> The leftover half curtain, that is, the overhanging part remaining from the tent's curtains, must hang at the back of the tabernacle.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> Let the extra part of the cover, the part that extends beyond the linen cloth, hang over the back of the sacred tent.

## Exodus 26:13

### cubit

A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> There must be one cubit of curtain on one side, and one cubit of curtain on the other side—that which is left over of the length of the tent's curtains must hang over the sides of the tabernacle on one side and on the other side, to cover it.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> The extra half-meter of each cover, the part that extends beyond the linen cloth on each side, must hang over the two sides of the sacred tent to protect the sides.



## Exodus 26:14

**a covering of ram skins dyed red, and another covering of fine leather**

See how you translated similar phrases in [Exodus 25:5](#).

**dyed red**

“colored red”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

### ULT

**14** You must make for the tabernacle a covering of ram skins dyed red, and another covering of fine leather to go above that.

### UST

**14** Tell them to make two more covers for the sacred tent. One is to be made from rams' skins that have been dyed red, and the top cover is to be made from fine leather.

## Exodus 26:15

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### frames

This refers to frames or panels that they made by joining together smaller pieces of wood.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

### ULT

**15** You must make upright frames out of acacia wood for the tabernacle.

### UST

**15** Tell them to make forty-eight frames from acacia wood, frames that will be set up to hang the sacred tent covers from them.

## Exodus 26:16

### ten cubits...one and a half cubits

"10 cubits...1.5 cubits" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> The length of each frame must be ten cubits, and its width must be one and a half cubits.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> Each frame is to be four and one-half meters long and three-quarters of a meter wide.

## Exodus 26:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- hand

### Translation Words - UST

- hand

#### ULT

**17** There must be two wooden pegs in each frame for joining the frames to each other. You are to make all the tabernacle's frames in this way.

#### UST

**17** They must make two projections at the bottom of each frame. These will be to fasten the frames to the bases underneath them. They must make these projections at the bottom of each frame.

## Exodus 26:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**18** When you make the frames for the tabernacle, you must make twenty frames for the south side.

### UST

**18** Make twenty frames for the south side of the sacred tent.

## Exodus 26:19

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### silver bases

These were silver blocks that had a slot in them to keep the board in place.

### pedestals

The silver bases kept the wooden board off the ground.

### There must be two bases

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Put two bases" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)

### ULT

**19** You must make forty silver bases to go under the twenty frames. There must be two bases under the first frame to be its two pedestals, and also two bases under each of the other frames for their two pedestals.

### UST

**19** Tell them to make forty silver bases to go underneath them. Two bases will go under each frame. The projections at the bottom of each frame are to be made to fit into the bases.

## Exodus 26:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> For the second side of the tabernacle, on the north side, you must make twenty frames

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Similarly, tell them to make twenty frames for the north side of the sacred tent.

## Exodus 26:21

### and so on

This means that what was said about the first two boards should be done for the rest of the boards. This can be stated clearly in the translation. Alternate translation: “and two bases for each of the rest of the boards” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- silver

### Translation Words - UST

- silver

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> and their forty silver bases. There must be two bases under the first frame, two bases under the next frame, and so on.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> They must make forty silver bases for them also with two bases to be put under each frame.



## Exodus 26:22

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> For the back side of the tabernacle on the west side, you must make six frames.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> For the rear of the sacred tent, on the west side, tell them to make six frames.

## Exodus 26:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> You must make two frames for the back corners of the tabernacle.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Also tell them to make two extra frames, one for each corner of the rear of the sacred tent, to provide more support.

## Exodus 26:24

### These frames must be separate at the bottom, but joined at the top

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Separate these frames at the bottom, but join them at the top" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [head](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> These frames must be separate at the bottom, but joined at the top to the same ring. It must be this way for both of the back corners.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> The two corner frames must be separated at the bottom but together at the top. At the top of each of the two corner frames there must be a gold ring for holding the crossbar.

## Exodus 26:25

### silver bases

These were silver blocks that had a slot in them to keep the frame in place. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:19](#).

### in all

“total”

### and so on

This means that what was said about the first two frames should be done for the rest of the frames. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:21](#). Alternate translation: “and two bases for each of the rest of the frames” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [silver](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> There must be eight frames, together with their silver bases. There must be sixteen bases in all, two bases under the first frame, two bases under the next frame, and so on.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> In that way, for the rear of the sacred tent there will be eight frames, and there will be sixteen bases, two under each frame.

## Exodus 26:26

### General Information:

Yahweh continue to tell Moses how the tabernacle was to be built.

### crossbars

These are horizontal support beams that give stability to the structure.

#### ULT

**26** You must make crossbars of acacia wood—five for the frames of the one side of the tabernacle,

#### UST

**26** Tell them to make fifteen crossbars from acacia wood. Five of them will be for the frames on the north side of the sacred tent,

## Exodus 26:27

### the back side of the tabernacle to the west

The front was on the east side of the tabernacle.

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> five crossbars for the frames of the other side of the tabernacle, and five crossbars for the frames for the back side of the tabernacle to the west.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> five will be for the south side, and five for the frames at the rear of the sacred tent, the west side.

## Exodus 26:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> The crossbar in the center of the frames, that is, halfway up, must reach from end to end.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> Tell them to fasten the crossbars on the north, south, and west sides of the sacred tent to the middle of the frames. The two long ones must extend from one end of the sacred tent to the other, and the crossbar on the west side must extend from one side of the sacred tent to the other.

## Exodus 26:29

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses how the tabernacle must be constructed.

### for them to serve as holders for the crossbars

“which will hold the crossbars” or “because they will hold the crossbars”

### crossbars

These are horizontal support beams that give stability to the structure. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:26](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden
- gold, golden
- gold, golden
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden
- gold, golden
- gold, golden
- house

### ULT

**29** You must cover the frames with gold. You must make their rings of gold, for them to serve as holders for the crossbars, and you must cover the bars with gold.

### UST

**29** Tell them to cover the frames with gold, and make gold rings to fasten the crossbars to the frames. The crossbars must also be covered with gold.



## Exodus 26:30

### you were shown on the mountain

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that I have shown you here on this mountain" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [ordinance](#), [regulations](#), [requirements](#), [strict law](#), [customs](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [ordinance](#), [regulations](#), [requirements](#), [strict law](#), [customs](#)

#### ULT

**30** You must set up the tabernacle by following the plan you were shown on the mountain.

#### UST

**30** Build the sacred tent in the way that I have shown you here on this mountain."

## Exodus 26:31

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses how the tabernacle is to be constructed.

### You must make

Yahweh is speaking to Moses, so the word “you” is singular. Yahweh probably expected Moses to tell someone else to do the actual work, but Moses would be the one responsible for seeing that the work was done correctly. “Tell a craftsman to make.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:1](#). (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- purple

### Translation Words - UST

- purple

### ULT

**31** You must make a curtain of blue, purple, and scarlet wool, and of fine linen, with designs of cherubim, the work of a skillful workman.

### UST

**31** “Tell them to make a curtain from fine linen. A skilled craftsman must embroider it with blue, purple, and red yarn making designs to represent the winged creatures that are above the chest.

## Exodus 26:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- silver
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> You must hang it on four pillars of acacia wood covered with gold. These pillars must have hooks of gold set on four silver bases.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> Tell them to suspend the curtain from four posts made from acacia wood and covered with gold. Set each post in a silver base.

## Exodus 26:33

### clasps

The clasps fit into the loops to hold the curtains together. See how you translated these in [Exodus 26:6](#).

### you must bring in the ark of the testimony

The ark of the testimony is the chest that contains the commandments. This can be stated clearly in the translation. Alternate translation: “you must bring in the chest containing the commandments” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### The curtain is to separate the holy place

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The curtain will separate the holy place” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- set apart
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- set apart
- house

### ULT

**33** You must hang up the curtain under the clasps, and you must bring in the ark of the testimony. The curtain is to separate the holy place from the most holy place.

### UST

**33** They must hang the top of the curtain by hooks that are fastened to the roof of the sacred tent. Behind the curtain, in the room called the very holy place, they must put the chest containing the two stone slabs on which I have written my commandments. That curtain will separate the holy place from the very holy place.

## Exodus 26:34

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### atonement lid

This is the lid that sits on top of the ark where the atonement offering was made. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:17](#).

### on the ark of the testimony

“on the chest that contains the commandments”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> You must put the atonement lid on the ark of the testimony, which is in the most holy place.

### UST

<sup>34</sup> On top of the chest in the very holy place they must put the lid.

## Exodus 26:35

### The table must be on the north side

This is the table that holds the bread that represents the presence of God. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Place the table for the bread of God's presence on the north side" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### ULT

**35** You must place the table outside the curtain. You must place the lampstand opposite the table on the south side of the tabernacle. The table must be on the north side.

#### UST

**35** In the room that is outside of the very holy place, they must put the table for the sacred bread on the north side, and put the lampstand on the south side.

## Exodus 26:36

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses how to construct the tabernacle.

### a hanging

This was a large curtain made of cloth.

### blue, purple, and scarlet material

Possible meanings are 1) “yarn that is dyed blue, purple, and scarlet,” probably wool yarn, or 2) “blue, purple, and scarlet dye” to dye the linen. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:4](#).

### fine twined linen

“finely twisted linen.” This was cloth made from fine linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread.

### an embroiderer

“a person who sews designs into cloth” or “a person who embroiders”

### Translation Words - ULT

- purple

### Translation Words - UST

- purple

### ULT

**36** You must make a hanging for the tent entrance. You must make it out of blue, purple, and scarlet material and fine twined linen, the work of an embroiderer.

### UST

**36** Tell them to make a curtain to cover the entrance of the sacred tent. They must make it from fine linen, and a skilled weaver must embroider it with blue, purple, and red yarn.

## Exodus 26:37

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- bronze
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- bronze
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> For the hanging, you must make five pillars of acacia and cover them with gold. Their hooks must be of gold, and you must cast five bronze bases for them.

### UST

<sup>37</sup> To hold up this curtain, they must make five posts from acacia wood. They must cover them with gold and fasten gold clasps to them. Also they must make a bronze base for each of these posts.



## **Exodus 27**

### **Exodus 27 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter is a continuation of the material in the previous chapter.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **The tent of meeting**

This chapter gives specific instructions regarding the building of a tent where Moses would meet Yahweh and the ark would be stored. This would eventually become the tabernacle. It was to be considered a very holy place. (See: [tabernacle](#) and [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#))

## Exodus 27:1

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do ([Exodus 25:1](#)).

### five cubits long and five cubits wide

"2.2 meters long on each side" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### The altar must be square and three cubits high

"The altar must be square and 1.3 meters high" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- altar

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> You must make the altar of acacia wood, five cubits long and five cubits wide. The altar must be square and three cubits high.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> "Tell them to make an altar from acacia wood. It is to be square, two and one-tenth meters long on each side, and make it one and one-third meters high.

## Exodus 27:2

### You must make extensions of its four corners shaped like ox horns

“You must make projections that look like ox horns on its four corners”

### The horns will be made

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “You must make the horns” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### must cover them

“must cover the altar and horns”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bronze](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bronze](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> You must make extensions of its four corners shaped like ox horns. The horns will be made as one piece with the altar, and you must cover them with bronze.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> They must make a projection that looks like a horn on each of the top corners. The projections must be carved from the same block of wood as the altar. Tell them to cover the whole altar with bronze.

## Exodus 27:3

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### basins

bowls

### firepans

These were pans that held hot coals from the altar.

### utensils

These were any instrument, vessel, or tool that served a useful purpose.

### Translation Words - ULT

- bronze

### Translation Words - UST

- bronze

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> You must make equipment for the altar: pots for ashes, and also shovels, basins, meat forks, and firepans. You must make all these utensils with bronze.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> They must make pans in which to put the ashes from the animal sacrifices. Also they must make shovels for cleaning out the ashes, basins, and forks for turning the meat as it cooks, and buckets for carrying hot coals. All of these things must be made from bronze.

## Exodus 27:4

### You must make a grate for the altar, a network of bronze

“You must make a bronze grate for the altar”

#### grate

a frame of crossed bars for holding wood when burning

#### Translation Words - ULT

- bronze
- bronze

#### Translation Words - UST

- bronze
- bronze

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> You must make a grate for the altar, a network of bronze. Make a bronze ring for each of the grate's four corners.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> Also tell them to make a bronze grating to hold the wood and burning coals. They must fasten to each of the corners of the altar a bronze ring for carrying the altar.

## Exodus 27:5

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people need to do.

### You must put the grate under the ledge of the altar

The grate was placed inside the altar. This can be stated clearly in the translation. Alternate translation: “You must put the grate under the rim of the altar, on the inside of the altar” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### grate

This is a frame of crossed bars for holding wood when burning. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:4](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- altar

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> You must put the grate under the ledge of the altar, halfway down to the bottom.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> They must put the grating under the rim that is around the altar. They must make it so that it is inside the altar, halfway down.

## Exodus 27:6

### You must make poles for the altar

These poles were used for carrying the altar. This can be stated clearly in the translation. Alternate translation: "You must make poles for carrying the altar" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- bronze

#### Translation Words - UST

- bronze

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> You must make poles for the altar, poles of acacia wood, and you must cover them with bronze.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> For carrying the altar, they must make poles from acacia wood and cover them with bronze.

## Exodus 27:7

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people should do.

**The poles must be put into the rings, and the poles must be on the two sides of the altar, to carry it**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “You must put the poles into the rings and place them on each side of the altar to carry it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar

### Translation Words - UST

- altar

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> The poles must be put into the rings, and the poles must be on the two sides of the altar, to carry it.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> They must put the poles through the rings on each side of the altar. The poles are for carrying the altar.



## Exodus 27:8

### planks

a long, flat piece of wood that is thicker than a board

### you were shown on the mountain

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that I have shown to you here on this mountain” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> You must make the altar hollow, out of planks. You must make it in the way you were shown on the mountain.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> The altar will be like a box, made from boards of acacia wood. They must make it according to these instructions that I am giving you here on this mountain.

## Exodus 27:9

### There must be hangings...courtyard

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must place hangings...courtyard" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### hangings of fine twined linen

A "hanging" was a large curtain made of cloth. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:36](#)

### fine twined linen

"finely twisted linen." This was cloth made from fine linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread

### one hundred cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "44 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [court, courtyard](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [court, courtyard](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> You must make a courtyard for the tabernacle. There must be hangings on the south side of the courtyard, hangings of fine twined linen one hundred cubits long.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Around the sacred tent there is to be a courtyard. To form the courtyard, tell them to make curtains of fine linen. On the south side, the curtain is to be 44 meters long.

## Exodus 27:10

### There must also be hooks...posts

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must also attach hooks...posts" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### posts

a strong piece of wood set upright and used as a support

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [column, pillar](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [silver](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [column, pillar](#)

#### ULT

**10** The hangings must have twenty posts, with twenty bronze bases. There must also be hooks attached to the posts, as well as silver rods.

#### UST

**10** To support the curtain, tell them to make twenty bronze posts, and one bronze base for each post. To fasten the curtains to the posts, they must make silver hooks, and metal rods covered with silver to fasten the curtains to the hooks.

## Exodus 27:11

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

**there must be hangings one hundred cubits long**

See how you translated many similar words in [Exodus 27:9](#).

**there must be hangings**

This could be stated as a command. Alternate translation: “you must make hangings”

**with twenty posts, twenty bronze bases, hooks attached to the posts, and silver rods**

See how you translated many similar words in [Exodus 27:10](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [column, pillar](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [silver](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [column, pillar](#)

### ULT

**11** Likewise along the north side, there must be hangings one hundred cubits long with twenty posts, twenty bronze bases, hooks attached to the posts, and silver rods.

### UST

**11** They must make the same kind of curtains for the north side of the courtyard.

## Exodus 27:12

### there must be a curtain

This could be stated as a command. Alternate translation: “you must make a curtain”

### There must be ten posts

This could be stated as a command. Alternate translation: “You must make ten posts”

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Along the courtyard on the west side there must be a curtain fifty cubits long. There must be ten posts and ten bases.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> On the west side of the courtyard they must make a curtain twenty-two meters long. The curtains are to be supported by ten posts, with a base under each post.

## Exodus 27:13

### The courtyard must also be fifty cubits long

This could be stated as a command. Alternate translation: "Make the courtyard fifty cubits long"

#### ULT

**13** The courtyard must also be fifty cubits long on the east side.

#### UST

**13** On the east side, where the entrance is, the courtyard must also be twenty-two meters wide.

## Exodus 27:14

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### The hangings

These were large curtains made of cloth. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:36](#).

### posts

These were strong pieces of wood set upright and used as supports. See how you translated these in [Exodus 27:10](#).

### bases

These were metal blocks that had a slot in them to keep the board in place. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:19](#).

### fifteen cubits

about seven meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### ULT

**14** The hangings for one side of the entrance must be fifteen cubits long. They must have three posts with three bases.

### UST

**14-15** Tell them to make a curtain seven meters wide with three posts and three bases for each side of the entrance to the courtyard.

## Exodus 27:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**15** The other side must also have hangings fifteen cubits long. They must have their three posts and three bases.

### UST

**14-15** Tell them to make a curtain seven meters wide with three posts and three bases for each side of the entrance to the courtyard.



## Exodus 27:16

### The courtyard gate must be a curtain twenty cubits long

This could be stated as a command. Alternate translation: "You must make a curtain twenty cubits long to be the courtyard gate"

### The curtain must be made...fine twined linen, the work of an embroiderer

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They must make the curtain...fine twined linen, the work of an embroiderer" or "Embroiderers must make the curtain...fine twined linen" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### blue, purple, and scarlet material and fine twined linen

Possible meanings are 1) "yarn that is dyed blue, purple, and scarlet," probably wool yarn, or 2) "blue, purple, and scarlet dye" to dye the linen.

### an embroiderer

a person who sews designs into cloth

### Translation Words - ULT

- purple

### Translation Words - UST

- purple

### ULT

**16** The courtyard gate must be a curtain twenty cubits long. The curtain must be made of blue, purple, and scarlet material and fine twined linen, the work of an embroiderer. It must have four posts with four bases.

### UST

**16** They must make a curtain from finely twined linen nine meters long for the entrance. A skilled weaver must embroider it with blue, purple, and red yarn. It must be supported by four posts, each one with a base under it.

## Exodus 27:17

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- silver
- bronze

### Translation Words - UST

- silver
- silver
- bronze

### ULT

**17** All the courtyard posts must have silver rods, silver hooks, and bronze bases.

### UST

**17** All the posts around the courtyard must have bands of silver around them. The clasps must be made of silver, and the bases must be made of bronze.

## Exodus 27:18

### one hundred cubits

"100 cubits." A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Numbers](#))

### fine twined linen hangings

"finely twisted linen." This was cloth made from fine linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:36](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bronze](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bronze](#)

### ULT

**18** The length of the courtyard must be one hundred cubits, the width fifty cubits, and the height five cubits with fine twined linen hangings all along, and bases of bronze.

### UST

**18** The whole courtyard, from the east entrance to the west end, must be forty-six meters long and twenty-three meters wide, and the curtains that enclose it must be two and one-third meters high. All the curtains must be made of fine linen, and all the bases under the posts must be made of bronze.

## Exodus 27:19

### all the tent pegs for the tabernacle and courtyard must be made of bronze

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “make all the tent pegs for the tabernacle and courtyard out of bronze” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### tent pegs

sharp pieces of wood or metal used to secure the corners of a tent to the ground

### Translation Words - ULT

- bronze

### Translation Words - UST

- bronze

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> All the equipment to be used in the tabernacle, and all the tent pegs for the tabernacle and courtyard must be made of bronze.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> All the things that are not made of gold that are to be used inside the sacred tent and in the courtyard, and all the tent pegs to support the sacred tent and the curtains, must be made of bronze.

## Exodus 27:20

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- olive
- olive

### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- olive
- olive

### ULT

**20** You must command the people of Israel to bring olive oil, pure and pressed, for the lamps so they may burn continually.

### UST

**20** Command the Israelite people that they must bring to you the best kind of pure olive oil to burn in the lamp. They must bring this oil to you so that the lamp is always burning.

## Exodus 27:21

### tent of meeting

This is another name for the tabernacle.

### ark of testimony

This is the chest that contains the sacred slabs of stone on which Yahweh had written his commandments.

### This requirement will be a lasting statute

"I require that the people do this as a lasting statute"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Aaron
- feast, feasting
- generation

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Aaron
- feast, feasting
- generation

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> In the tent of meeting, outside the curtain that is in front of the tabernacle that contains the ark of testimony, Aaron and his sons must keep the lamps burning before Yahweh, from evening to morning. This requirement will be a lasting statute throughout the generations of the people of Israel.

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> Outside the curtain of the tabernacle, where the sacred chest of Yahweh is kept, Aaron and his sons must take care to keep the lamps burning every day from evening to morning. The Israelite people must obey this regulation throughout all future generations."

## **Exodus 28**

### **Exodus 28 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Holy garments**

Because Yahweh is holy, only the priests could approach him, and when they did they must be wearing specially made clothing. (See: [priest, priesthood](#) and [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#))

## Exodus 28:1

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do ([Exodus 25:1](#)).

### Call to yourself

Here “yourself” refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Call to yourself Aaron your brother and his sons—Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar—from among the Israelites so that they may serve me as priests.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> “Call your older brother Aaron and his sons—Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar. Set them apart from the rest of the Israelite people in order that they can serve me as priests.



## Exodus 28:2

### You must make

Here “you” refers to the people. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### garments that are set apart to me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “garments that you will set apart to me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> You must make for Aaron, your brother, garments that are set apart to me. These garments will be for his honor and splendor.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Tell the people to make beautiful clothes for Aaron, clothes that are suitable for one who has this dignified and sacred work.

## Exodus 28:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- spirit, spiritual
- set apart
- Aaron
- wise men, advisor

### Translation Words - UST

- heart
- spirit, spiritual
- set apart
- Aaron
- wise men, advisor

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> You must speak to all people who are wise in heart, those whom I have filled with the spirit of wisdom, so that they may make Aaron's garments to set him apart to serve me as my priest.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Talk to all the workmen, those to whom I have given skill to build things. Tell them to make clothes for Aaron to wear when he is set apart to become a priest to serve me.

## Exodus 28:4

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### a coat of woven work

"a coat with a design woven into it"

### turban

a tall head covering made from cloth wrapped around the head several times.

### sash

a piece of cloth that people wear around their waist or across their chest

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- robe, robed

### Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- robe, robed

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> The garments that they must make are a breastpiece, an ephod, a robe, a coat of woven work, a turban, and a sash. They must make these garments that are set them apart to me. They will be for your brother Aaron and his sons so that they may serve me as priests.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> The clothes that they are to make are a sacred pouch for Aaron to wear over his breast, a sacred apron, a robe, an embroidered tunic, a turban, and a sash. These are the clothes that your older brother Aaron and his sons must wear as they serve me by doing the work that priests do.

## Exodus 28:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Craftsmen must use fine linen that is gold, blue, purple, and scarlet.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> The skilled workmen must use fine linen and blue, purple, and red yarn to make these clothes.

## Exodus 28:6

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### fine-twined linen

“finely-twisted linen.” This was cloth made from fine linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:36](#).

### skillful craftsman

a person who can make beautiful objects by hand

### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden
- purple

### Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden
- purple

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> They must make the ephod of gold, of blue, purple, and scarlet wool, and of fine-twined linen. It must be the work of a skillful craftsman.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> The skilled workmen must make the sacred apron from fine linen, and they must skillfully embroider it with blue, purple, and red yarn, and with fine gold wire.

## Exodus 28:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> It must have two shoulder pieces attached to its two upper corners.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> It must have two shoulder straps that will join the front part to the back part.

## Exodus 28:8

### it must be made of one piece

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they must make it in one piece” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden
- purple

#### Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden
- purple

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Its finely-woven waistband must be like the ephod; it must be made of one piece with the ephod, made of fine twined linen that is gold, blue, purple, and scarlet.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> A carefully woven belt, which must be made from the same materials as the sacred apron, must be sewn onto the apron.

## Exodus 28:9

### onyx stones

These are valuable stones that have layers of white and black, red or brown. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:7](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> You must take two onyx stones and engrave on them the names of Israel's twelve sons.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> A skilled workman must take two onyx stones and carve on them the names of the twelve sons of Jacob.



## Exodus 28:10

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### Translation Words - ULT

- name

### Translation Words - UST

- name

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Six of their names must be on one stone, and six names must be on the other stone, in order of the sons' birth.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> He must engrave the names in the order in which Jacob's sons were born. He must engrave six names on one stone and the other six names on the other stone.

## Exodus 28:11

### With the work of an engraver in stone, like the engraving on a signet

“In the same way a person engraves on a seal”

#### engraver

a person who cuts designs into a hard material such as wood, stone, or metal

#### signet

an engraved stone used to stamp a design into a wax seal

#### settings

pieces of metal that hold the stone onto the ephod

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- gold, golden

#### ULT

**11** With the work of an engraver in stone, like the engraving on a signet, you must engrave the two stones with the names of Israel's twelve sons. You must mount the stones in settings of gold.

#### UST

**11** A gem cutter should engrave these names on the two stones. Then he should mount the stones in gold settings.

## Exodus 28:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Aaron

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Aaron

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> You must put the two stones on the shoulder pieces of the ephod, to be stones to remind Yahweh of Israel's sons. Aaron will carry their names before Yahweh on his two shoulders as a reminder to him.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Then he should fasten the stones onto the shoulder straps of the sacred apron to represent the twelve tribes of Israel. In that way, Aaron will carry the names of the tribes on his shoulders in order that I, Yahweh, will never forget my people.

## Exodus 28:13

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### settings

These are pieces of metal that hold each stone onto the ephod. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:11](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### ULT

**13** You must make settings of gold

### UST

**13** The settings for the stones must be made from gold.

## Exodus 28:14

### two braided chains of pure gold like cords

“two chains of pure gold that are braided like cords”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- clean, wash
- gold, golden

#### Translation Words - UST

- clean, wash
- gold, golden

#### ULT

**14** and two braided chains of pure gold like cords, and you must attach the chains to the settings.

#### UST

**14** Tell them to make two chains of gold that are braided like cords and to fasten the chains to the settings.”

## Exodus 28:15

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

**the work of a skillful workman, fashioned like the ephod**

“a skillful workman will make it like the ephod”

### Translation Words - ULT

- judge, judgment
- gold, golden
- purple

### Translation Words - UST

- judge, judgment
- gold, golden
- purple

### ULT

**15** You must make a breastpiece for decision making, the work of a skillful workman, fashioned like the ephod. Make it of gold, of blue, purple, and scarlet wool, and of fine linen.

### UST

**15** Tell the skilled workman to make a sacred pouch for Aaron to wear over his chest. He will use this to find out what I want the people to do. They must make it of the same materials as the sacred apron, and they must embroider it in the same way with gold, blue, purple, and red fine linen.

## Exodus 28:16

### span

A span is 22 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> It is to be square. You must fold the breastpiece double. It must be one span long and one span wide.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> It is to be square, and the material must be folded double so that it is 23 centimeters long and 23 centimeters wide.

## Exodus 28:17

### General Information:

Twelve kinds of stone are listed here. Scholars are not sure which kinds of stones the Hebrew words refer to. Some translations list different stones.

### precious stones

“valuable gems” or “treasured gems.” See how you translated these in [Exodus 25:7](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### ruby...topaz...garnet

These are precious stones. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### ULT

**17** You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The first row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet.

### UST

**17** The skilled workman must fasten four rows of valuable stones onto the pouch. In the first row, he must put a red ruby, a yellow topaz, and a red garnet.



## Exodus 28:18

### emerald...diamond

These are precious stones.

### sapphire

This is a gemstone that is blue in color. See how you translated this in [Exodus 24:10](#).

#### ULT

**18** The second row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond.

#### UST

**18** In the second row, he must put a green emerald, a blue sapphire, and a diamond.

## Exodus 28:19

### jacinth...agate...amethyst

These are precious stones

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> The third row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst.

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> In the third row he must put a red jacinth, a white agate, and a purple amethyst.

## Exodus 28:20

### beryl...jasper

These are precious stones. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### onyx

This is a valuable stone that has layers of white and black, red or brown. See how you translated these in [Exodus 25:7](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### They must be mounted in gold settings

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must mount them in gold settings" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> The fourth row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> In the fourth row, he must put a yellow beryl, an onyx, and a green jasper. All of these stones must be mounted in gold settings.

## Exodus 28:21

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### The stones must be arranged

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must arrange the stones" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### signet ring

A signet is an engraved stone used to stamp a design into a wax seal. Here the stone is mounted on a ring. See how you translated "signet" in [Exodus 28:11](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- name
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- name
- name
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> The stones must be arranged by the names of Israel's twelve sons, each in order by name. They must be like the engraving on a signet ring, each name standing for one of the twelve tribes.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> A gem cutter should engrave on each of these twelve stones the name of one of the sons of Jacob. These names will represent the twelve tribes of Israel.

## Exodus 28:22

### chains like cords, braided work of pure gold

“chains that are made of pure gold and are braided like cords.” See how you translated similar phrases in [Exodus 28:14](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### ULT

**22** You must make on the breastpiece chains like cords, braided work of pure gold.

#### UST

**22** The two chains that are made from pure gold and braided like cords are for attaching the sacred pouch to the sacred apron.

## Exodus 28:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> You must make two rings of gold for the breastpiece and must attach them to the two ends of the breastpiece.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> The workman must make two gold rings and attach them to the upper corners of the sacred pouch.

## Exodus 28:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> You must attach the two golden chains to the two corners of the breastpiece.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> He must make two gold cords and fasten one end of each cord to one of the rings.

## Exodus 28:25

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### braided chains

“chains braided like cords.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:14](#).

### to the two settings

These are two settings that enclose the stones. This can be clearly stated in the translation. Alternate translation: “to the two settings that enclose the stones” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [face](#), [facial](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [face](#), [facial](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> You must attach the other ends of the two braided chains to the two settings. Then you must attach those to the shoulder pieces of the ephod at its front.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> He must fasten the other end of each cord to the two settings that enclose the stones. In that way, the sacred pouch will be attached to the shoulder straps of the sacred apron.



## Exodus 28:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- gold, golden
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- gold, golden
- house

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> You must make two rings of gold, and you must put them on the other two corners of the breastpiece, on the edge next to the inner border.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> Then he must make two more gold rings and attach them to the lower corners of the sacred pouch on the inside edges next to the sacred apron.

## Exodus 28:27

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### finely-woven waistband

This was a cloth belt made from narrow linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:8](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- face, facial
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- face, facial
- gold, golden

### ULT

**27** You must make two more gold rings, and you must attach them to the bottom of the two shoulder pieces of the front of the ephod, close to its seam above the finely-woven waistband of the ephod.

### UST

**27** He must make two more gold rings and attach them to the lower part of the front of the shoulder straps near to where the shoulder straps are joined to the sacred apron just above the sash.

## Exodus 28:28

### so that it might be attached

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that they may attach it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the breastpiece might not become unattached from the ephod

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “the breastpiece would stay attached to the ephod” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

#### ULT

**28** They must tie the breastpiece by its rings to the ephod's rings with a blue cord, so that it might be attached just above the ephod's woven waistband. This is so that the breastpiece might not become unattached from the ephod.

#### UST

**28** The skilled workman must tie the rings on the sacred pouch to the rings on the sacred apron with a blue cord so that the sacred pouch is above the sash and does not come loose from the sacred apron.

## Exodus 28:29

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### he must carry the names of the people of Israel over his heart in the breastpiece

This refers to the names of the tribes engraved on the twelve stones the breastplate as described in [Exodus 28:17-21](#).

### over his heart

“over Aaron’s heart” or “on his chest”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- heart
- Yahweh
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Aaron
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- heart
- Yahweh
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Aaron
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> When Aaron goes into the holy place, he must carry the names of the people of Israel over his heart in the breastpiece for decision making, as a continuing memorial before Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> In that way, Aaron will have the names of the twelve tribes of Israel in the sacred pouch close to his chest for making decisions when he enters the holy place.

## Exodus 28:30

### the Urim and the Thummim...the means for making decisions

The second phrase appears to refer to the Urim and Thummim and explain their purpose.

### the Urim and the Thummim

It not clear what these are. They were objects, possibly stones, that the priest used to determine somehow the will of God. (See:

[Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> You are to put the Urim and the Thummim in the breastpiece for decision making, so they may be over Aaron's heart when he goes in before Yahweh. Thus Aaron will always carry the means for making decisions for the people of Israel over his heart before Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> Put into the sacred pouch the two things—named Urim and Thummim—that the priest will use to determine my answers to the questions he asks. In that way, they will be close to his chest when he enters the holy place to talk to me. He will use them to determine what my will is for the Israelite people."

## Exodus 28:31

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

#### ULT

**31** You will make the robe of the ephod entirely of blue fabric.

#### UST

**31** "Tell the workmen to weave only purple cloth for the robe that is to be worn underneath the priest's sacred apron.

## Exodus 28:32

### This must be the work of a weaver

This can be stated as a command. Alternate translation: "A weaver must make this robe"

#### a weaver

"a person who weaves" or "a person who creates cloth using thread"

### Translation Words - ULT

- head

### Translation Words - UST

- head

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> It must have an opening for the head in the middle. The opening must have a woven edge round about so that it does not tear. This must be the work of a weaver.

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> It is to have an opening through which the priest can put his head. They must sew a border around this opening to keep the material from tearing.

## Exodus 28:33

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people do.

### pomegranates

A pomegranate is a round fruit with a red outer skin. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gold, golden](#)
- [purple](#)
- [pomegranate](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gold, golden](#)
- [purple](#)
- [pomegranate](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> On the bottom hem, you must make pomegranates of blue, purple, and scarlet yarn all around. Gold bells must be between them all around.

### UST

<sup>33</sup> At the lower edge on the robe, they must fasten decorations that look like pomegranate fruit. They must be woven from blue, purple, and red yarn.



## Exodus 28:34

### a golden bell and a pomegranate

This phrase is repeated to show the pattern of the design on the robe.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden
- gold, golden

#### Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden
- gold, golden

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> There must be a golden bell and a pomegranate, a golden bell and a pomegranate—and so on—all around the hem of the robe.

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> Between each of these decorations, they must fasten a tiny gold bell.

## Exodus 28:35

### The robe is to be on Aaron when he serves

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Aaron must wear the robe when he serves" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### so that its sound can be heard

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that the bells make a sound" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### This is so that he does not die

It is implied that he would die because he did not obey Yahweh. This can be stated. Alternate translation: "As a result, he will not die because of disobeying my instructions" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> The robe is to be on Aaron when he serves, so that its sound can be heard when he goes into the holy place before Yahweh and when he leaves. This is so that he does not die.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> When Aaron enters the holy place in the sacred tent to do his work as a priest and when he leaves the sacred tent, the bells will ring as he walks. As a result, he will not die because of disobeying my instructions.

## Exodus 28:36

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### engrave on it, like the engraving on a signet

“write on it in the same way a person engraves on a seal.” See how you translated similar words in [Exodus 28:11](#)

### Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- clean, wash
- Yahweh
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- clean, wash
- Yahweh
- gold, golden

### ULT

**36** You must make a plate of pure gold and engrave on it, like the engraving on a signet, “Holy to Yahweh.”

### UST

**36** Tell them to make a tiny ornament of pure gold, and tell a skilled workman to engrave on it the words, ‘Dedicated to Yahweh.’

## Exodus 28:37

### turban

This was a tall head covering made from cloth wrapped around the head several times. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:4](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [face](#), [facial](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [face](#), [facial](#)

#### ULT

**37** You must attach this plate by a blue cord to the front of the turban.

#### UST

**37** They should fasten this ornament to the front of the turban by a blue cord.

## Exodus 28:38

### It must be on Aaron's forehead

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Aaron must wear it on his forehead" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### The turban must be always on his forehead

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Aaron must always wear the turban on his forehead" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [son](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [iniquity](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [son](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [iniquity](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### ULT

**38** It must be on Aaron's forehead; he must always bear any guilt that might attach to the offering of the holy gifts that the Israelites set apart to Yahweh. The turban must be always on his forehead so that Yahweh may accept their gifts.

### UST

**38** Aaron must always wear the turban on his forehead. Aaron himself must accept the guilt of the Israelite people because of any failure to offer their holy gifts to Yahweh as he commanded. When Aaron does this, Yahweh may accept their gifts.

## Exodus 28:39

### General Information:

God continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

#### turban

This was a tall head covering made from cloth wrapped around the head several times. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:4](#).

#### sash

A sash is a decorative piece of cloth that a person wears around his waist or across his chest. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:4](#).

#### the work of an embroiderer

An embroiderer is a person who sews designs into cloth. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:36](#).

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> You must make the coat with fine linen, and you must make a turban of fine linen. You must also make a sash, the work of an embroiderer.

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> Tell them to weave the long-sleeved tunic from fine linen. Also they must make from fine linen a turban and a sash, and they must embroider designs on it.

## Exodus 28:40

### General Information:

God continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### sashes

A sash is a decorative piece of cloth that a person wears around his waist or across his chest. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:4](#).

### headbands

A headband is a narrow, decorative strip of cloth that is worn around the head above the eyes.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### ULT

**40** For Aaron's sons you must make coats, sashes, and headbands for their honor and splendor.

### UST

**40** Tell them to make beautiful long-sleeved tunics, sashes, waistbands, and caps for Aaron's sons. Make ones that will be suitable for those who have this dignified work.

## Exodus 28:41

### You must clothe Aaron your brother

Aaron was the older brother of Moses. You can state this clearly in the translation. Alternate translation: “Put these clothes on your older brother Aaron” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- set apart
- Aaron
- hand

#### Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- set apart
- Aaron
- hand

#### ULT

**41** You must clothe Aaron your brother, and his sons with him. You must anoint them, ordain them, and set them apart to me, so that they may serve me as priests.

#### UST

**41** Put these clothes on your older brother Aaron and on his sons. Then set them apart for this work by anointing them with olive oil in order that they may serve me by being priests.



## Exodus 28:42

### General Information:

God continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### undergarments

These are underwear, clothing worn under the outer clothes, next to the skin.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [flesh](#)

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> You must make for them linen undergarments to cover their naked flesh, that will cover them from the waist to the thighs.

### UST

<sup>42</sup> Also tell them to make linen undershorts for them. The undershorts should extend from their waists to their thighs in order that no one can see their private parts.

## Exodus 28:43

### tent of meeting

This is another name for the tabernacle. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:21](#).

### a permanent law

“a law the will not end”

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- son
- iniquity
- Aaron
- feast, feasting
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- son
- iniquity
- Aaron
- feast, feasting
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### ULT

**43** Aaron and his sons must wear these garments when they enter the tent of meeting or when they approach the altar to serve in the holy place. They must do this so they would not be guilty or else they would die. This is a permanent law for Aaron and his descendants after him.

### UST

**43** Aaron and his sons must always wear those undershorts when they enter the sacred tent or when they come near to the altar to offer sacrifices in the holy place. If they do not obey this ritual, I will cause them to die. Aaron and all his male descendants must obey this rule forever.”

## **Exodus 29**

### **Exodus 29 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Consecrating priests**

This chapter records the process of consecrating priests. The priests were to be set apart from the rest of Israel because Yahweh is holy. (See: [consecrate](#), [consecrated](#), [consecration](#) and [priest](#), [priesthood](#) and [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#))

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **“I will live among the Israelites”**

As God, Yahweh is everywhere and cannot be limited to a single space. This phrase indicates that he permanently remains within Israel in a special way while they have the ark.

## Exodus 29:1

### Now

The word “now” marks a change in topic from garments for priests to consecrating priests.

### you must do

Here “you” refers to Moses.

### to set them apart

“to set apart Aaron and his sons”

### serve me

Here “me” refers to Yahweh.

### one young bull

a male cow

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- set apart
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- set apart
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now this is what you must do to set them apart to me so that they may serve me as priests. Take one young bull and two rams without blemish,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> “Do the following things to dedicate Aaron and his sons to serve me by being priests. Select one young bull and two rams that do not have any defects.

## Exodus 29:2

### Also take wafers without yeast rubbed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Also take wafers without yeast and rub them with oil" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### bread...cakes...wafers

These are different kinds of food made from flour.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- unleavened bread
- unleavened bread
- unleavened bread
- bread
- wheat

#### Translation Words - UST

- unleavened bread
- unleavened bread
- unleavened bread
- bread
- wheat

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> bread without yeast, and cakes without yeast mixed with oil. Also take wafers without yeast rubbed with oil. Make the wafers using fine wheat flour.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> Bake three kinds of bread using finely ground wheat flour without yeast. Bake some buns that do not have any olive oil in them, bake some buns that have olive oil in the dough, and bake some thin wafers that will be smeared with olive oil after they are baked.

## Exodus 29:3

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak to Moses

### You must put them

“You must put the bread, cake, and wafer”

### present them with the bull and the two rams

Here “present” means to offer as a sacrifice. The full meaning of this can be translated clearly. Alternate translation: “offer them to me when you sacrifice the bull and the two rams” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> You must put them into a single basket, bring them in the basket, and present them with the bull and the two rams.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Put them in a basket and offer them to me when you sacrifice the young bull and the two rams.

## Exodus 29:4

### tent of meeting

This is another name for the tabernacle. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:21](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [clean, wash](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [clean, wash](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> You must present Aaron and his sons at the entrance to the tent of meeting. You must wash Aaron and his sons in water.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Take Aaron and his sons to the entrance of the sacred tent, and wash them with water.

## Exodus 29:5

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

#### coat

This was a coat with a design woven into it. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:4](#).

#### finely-woven waistband

This was a cloth belt made from narrow linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:8](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Aaron](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Aaron](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> You must take the garments and clothe Aaron with the coat, the robe of the ephod, the ephod, and the breastpiece, fastening the finely-woven waistband of the ephod around him.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Then put the special clothes on Aaron —the long-sleeved tunic, the robe that will be worn underneath the sacred apron, the sacred apron, the sacred pouch, and the sash.



## Exodus 29:6

### turban

This was a tall head covering made from cloth wrapped around the head several times. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:4](#).

### holy crown

This crown is described in [Exodus 29:6](#) as being engraved with the words “dedicated to Yahweh” and made of pure gold.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [head](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [head](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> You must set the turban on his head and put the holy crown on the turban.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Put the turban on his head, and fasten to the turban the ornament that has the words ‘Dedicated to Yahweh’ engraved on it.

## Exodus 29:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- head
- olive

### Translation Words - UST

- head
- olive

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then take the anointing oil and pour it on his head, and in this way anoint him.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Then take the oil and pour some on his head to dedicate him.

## Exodus 29:8

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### bring his sons

“bring Aaron’s sons”

### coats

These were coats with a design woven into them. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:4](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> You must bring his sons and put coats on them.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then bring his sons and put the long-sleeved tunics on them.

## Exodus 29:9

### sashes

A sash is a decorative piece of cloth that people wear around their waist or across their chest. See how you translated this word in [Exodus 28:4](#).

### headbands

A headband is a narrow, decorative strip of cloth that is worn around the head above the eyes. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:40](#).

### The work of the priesthood

“the duty of being priests”

### will belong to them

The duty of being priests will also belong to the descendants of Aaron’s sons. You can state this clearly in the translation. Alternate translation: “will belong to them and their descendants” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### permanent law

“a law the will not end.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:43](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> You must clothe Aaron and his sons with sashes and put headbands on them. The work of the priesthood will belong to them by permanent law. In this way you must consecrate Aaron and his sons for them to serve me.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Put the sashes around their waists and the caps on their heads. That is the ritual by which you are to dedicate them to be priests. Aaron and his male descendants must serve me by being priests forever.

## Exodus 29:10

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### tent of meeting

This is another name for the tabernacle. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:21](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [hand](#)
- [head](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [hand](#)
- [head](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

### ULT

**10** You must all bring the bull before the tent of meeting, and Aaron and his sons must lay their hands on its head.

### UST

**10** Then bring the young bull to the entrance of the sacred tent. Tell Aaron and his sons to put their hands on the head of the young bull.

## Exodus 29:11

### You must kill the bull

The bull offering was to be killed by Moses, not the priests, at the doorway, not inside the tent of meeting.

### kill the bull

Since the following verses will tell what to do with the blood from the bull, use a term for “kill” that will imply a method similar to “slitting its throat and catch the blood in a bowl.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- slaughter, slaughtered
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- slaughter, slaughtered
- feast, feasting

### ULT

**11** You must kill the bull before Yahweh at the entrance to the tent of meeting.

### UST

**11** Then, while they are doing that, kill the young bull by slitting its throat and catch the blood in a bowl.

## Exodus 29:12

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### the horns

These were projections that looked like ox horns attached to the four corners of the altar. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:2](#).

### the rest of the blood

“the remaining blood”

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- altar

### ULT

**12** You must take some of the bull's blood and put it on the horns of the altar with your finger, and you must pour out the rest of the blood at the base of the altar.

### UST

**12** Take some of that blood with your finger and smear it on the projections of the altar. Throw the rest of the blood against the base of the altar.

## Exodus 29:13

### covers the inner parts

“covers the organs”

### liver...kidneys

These are organs in the body.

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar

### Translation Words - UST

- altar

### ULT

**13** You must take all the fat that covers the inner parts, and also take the covering of the liver and the two kidneys with the fat that is on them; burn it all on the altar.

### UST

**13** Take all the fat that covers the inner organs of the young bull, the fatty covering of the liver and the two kidneys with the fat on them, and burn all these on the altar as an offering to me.



## Exodus 29:14

### But as for the bull's flesh, as well as its skin and dung

"But as for the remaining parts of the bull"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- flesh
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

#### Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- flesh
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

#### ULT

**14** But as for the bull's flesh, as well as its skin and dung, you must burn it up outside the camp. It will be a sin offering.

#### UST

**14** But the meat of the young bull and its hide and intestines must be burned outside the camp. That will be an offering for your sins.

## Exodus 29:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Aaron
- hand
- head

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Aaron
- hand
- head

#### ULT

**15** You must also take the one ram, and Aaron and his sons must lay their hands on its head.

#### UST

**15** Then select one of the rams, and tell Aaron and his sons to put their hands on its head.

## Exodus 29:16

### You must kill the ram

For these consecration sacrifices for the priests, it was Moses, not Aaron or his sons, who had to kill the animals.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- blood
- slaughter, slaughtered

#### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- blood
- slaughter, slaughtered

#### ULT

**16** You must kill the ram, then take its blood and sprinkle it on all sides of the altar.

#### UST

**16** Then kill the ram by slitting its throat. Catch some of the blood and sprinkle it upon all four sides of the altar.

## Exodus 29:17

### the inner parts

“the organs.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 29:13](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)
- [head](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [head](#)

#### ULT

**17** You must cut the ram into pieces and wash its inner parts and its legs, and you must put the inner parts, together with its pieces and with its head,

#### UST

**17** Then cut the ram into pieces. Wash its inner organs and its legs, and put those with the head.

## Exodus 29:18

### on the altar

Unlike the bull offering that was burned outside of the tent, the ram was to be burned on the inner altar.

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- burnt offering, offering by fire

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- burnt offering, offering by fire

### ULT

**18** on the altar. Then burn the whole ram. It will be a burnt offering to Yahweh, a sweet aroma, an offering made to Yahweh by fire.

### UST

**18** Then burn them completely on the altar with the rest of the ram. That will be a burnt offering to me, Yahweh, and the smell will please me.

## Exodus 29:19

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Aaron
- hand
- head

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Aaron
- hand
- head

### ULT

**19** You must then take the other ram, and Aaron and his sons must lay their hands on its head.

### UST

**19** Take the other ram that was selected for these rituals, and tell Aaron and his sons to put their hands on its head.

## Exodus 29:20

### Then you must kill the ram

The ram was killed by cutting its throat. This can be stated clearly in the translation. Alternate translation: “Then kill the ram by slitting its throat” or “Then kill the ram by cutting its throat” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- son
- Aaron
- hand
- slaughter, slaughtered

#### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- son
- Aaron
- hand
- slaughter, slaughtered

#### ULT

**20** Then you must kill the ram and take some of its blood. Put it on the tip of Aaron's right ear, and on the tip of his sons' right ears, on the thumb of their right hands, and on the great toe of their right feet. Then you must sprinkle the blood against the altar on every side.

#### UST

**20** Then kill the ram by slitting its throat, and catch some of the blood in a bowl. Smear some of the blood on the lobe of the right ears of Aaron and his sons, and on the thumbs of their right hands, and on the big toes of their right feet. Throw the rest of the blood against the four sides of the altar.

## Exodus 29:21

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### Aaron will then be set apart for me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "By doing this, you will dedicate Aaron to me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- son
- son
- son
- son (2)
- set apart
- Aaron

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- son
- son
- son
- son (2)
- set apart
- Aaron

### ULT

**21** You must take some of the blood that is on the altar and some of the anointing oil, and sprinkle it all on Aaron and on his garments, and also on his sons and on their garments. Aaron will then be set apart for me, as well as his garments, his sons and his sons' garments with him.

### UST

**21** Wipe up some of the blood that is on the altar, mix it with some of the oil for anointing, and sprinkle it on Aaron and his clothes, and on his sons and their clothes. By doing this, you will dedicate them and their clothes to me.



## Exodus 29:22

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### inner parts...liver...kidney

These refer to organs inside the body. See how you translated this in [Exodus 29:13](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

### ULT

**22** You must take the ram's fat, the fat tail, the fat that covers the inner parts, the covering of the liver, the two kidneys and the fat on them, and the right thigh—for this ram is for the priests' consecration to me.

### UST

**22** Also, cut off the ram's fat, its fat tail, and the fat that covers the inner organs, the covering of the liver, the two kidneys with the fat on them, and the right thigh. (This ram is for setting Aaron and his sons apart for me as priests.)

## Exodus 29:23

### Take one loaf...before Yahweh

For 29:23 see how you translated similar words in [Exodus 29:2](#).

### that is before Yahweh

“that you have placed before Yahweh”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [bread](#)
- [bread](#)
- [olive](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [bread](#)
- [bread](#)
- [olive](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Take one loaf of bread, one cake of bread made with oil, and one wafer out of the basket of bread without yeast that is before Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> From the basket, also take one of each of the kinds of bread that was baked without yeast—one made with no oil, one with oil, and one thin wafer.

## Exodus 29:24

### General Information:

God continues speaking to Moses.

### You must put these

Here “these” refers to the parts of the sacrifice mentioned in the previous verses.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Aaron
- hand
- hand (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Aaron
- hand
- hand (2)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> You must put these in Aaron's hands and in the hands of his sons and wave them before me for a wave offering before Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Put all these things in the hands of Aaron and his sons. Then tell them to lift them up high to dedicate them to me.

## Exodus 29:25

### it will be an offering made to me by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “burn it as an offering to me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hand

#### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hand

#### ULT

**25** You must then take the food from their hands and burn it on the altar with the burnt offering. It will produce a sweet aroma for me; it will be an offering made to me by fire.

#### UST

**25** Then take them from their hands and burn them on the altar, on top of the other things that were placed there. That also will be an offering to me, and its smell will please me.

## Exodus 29:26

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### ram of dedication

“ram that you dedicated” or “ram that you killed”

### Aaron’s ram of dedication

“the ram that you used to dedicate Aaron”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> You must take the breast of Aaron’s ram of dedication and wave it for a wave offering before Yahweh, and it will be your share.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> Then take the breast of the second ram that was killed, and lift it up high for an offering to me. But then this part of the animal will be for you to eat.

## Exodus 29:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- set apart

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- set apart

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> You must set apart to me the breast of the wave offering that is waved, and the thigh that is the contribution for the priests—both the breast that was waved and the thigh that was contributed for Aaron and his sons.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> Set apart for me the ram's breast that you lifted high to offer to me. Also set apart for me the ram's thigh that you presented to me, both of these pieces that came from the ram that was slaughtered when you set apart for me Aaron and his sons as priests.

## Exodus 29:28

### This will be a perpetual share for Aaron and his sons

"This is what Aaron and his sons will always receive from the people"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

#### ULT

**28** This will be a perpetual share for Aaron and his sons. It will be a contribution from the people of Israel to give to Yahweh from their peace offerings.

#### UST

**28** In the future, whenever the Israelite people present to me, Yahweh, offerings to restore fellowship with each other, the breast and the thigh of animals that they present to me will be for Aaron and his male descendants to eat.

## Exodus 29:29

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### The holy garments of Aaron must also be reserved for his sons after him

These garments belong to the priesthood and are not just Aaron's personal clothing. Alternate translation: "Aaron must reserve the holy garments for his sons after him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### They are to be anointed in them and ordained to me in them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They must wear the holy garments when you anoint his sons and ordain them to me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> The holy garments of Aaron must also be reserved for his sons after him. They are to be anointed in them and ordained to me in them.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> After Aaron dies, the special clothes that he wore will belong to his sons. They are to wear those clothes when they are set apart to become priests.



## Exodus 29:30

### tent of meeting

This is another name for the tabernacle. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:21](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- priest, priesthood
- feast, feasting

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- priest, priesthood
- feast, feasting

#### ULT

**30** The priest who succeeds him from among his sons, who comes into the tent of meeting to serve me in the holy place, is to wear those garments for seven days.

#### UST

**30** Aaron's son who becomes priest and enters the sacred tent and performs rituals in the holy place must stay in the sacred tent, wearing these special clothes, for seven days.

## Exodus 29:31

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### the ram for the installation of the priests

“the ram you killed when you installed the priests”

### in a holy place

This is not the same as the holy place outside of the most holy place.

This refers to a place within the courtyard. Alternate translation: “at the entrance to the tent of meeting” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

**31** You must take the ram for the installation of the priests to me and boil its meat in a holy place.

### UST

**31** Take the meat of the other ram that was sacrificed to set apart Aaron and his sons, and boil it in the courtyard.

### Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- flesh
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- flesh
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

## Exodus 29:32

### tent of meeting

This is another name for the tabernacle. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:21](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Aaron and his sons must eat the ram's meat and the bread that is in the basket at the entrance to the tent of meeting.

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> After it is cooked, Aaron and his sons must eat it, along with the bread that is left in the basket, at the entrance to the sacred tent.

## Exodus 29:33

### that were given

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that you sacrificed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [hand](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [hand](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)

#### ULT

**33** They must eat the meat and bread that were given to atone for them and to ordain them, to be set apart to me. No one else may eat that food, because they must treat it as consecrated to me, reserved for me.

#### UST

**33** They must eat the meat of the ram that was sacrificed to cover your sins when they were dedicated to do this work. They are the only ones who are permitted to eat this meat. Those who are not priests are not allowed to eat it because it is reserved for the priests.

## Exodus 29:34

### It must not be eaten

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “No one must eat it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### because it has been set apart to me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “because you have set it apart to me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> If any of the meat of the ordination offering, or any of the bread, remains to the next morning, then you must burn it. It must not be eaten because it has been set apart to me.

### UST

<sup>34</sup> If any of this meat or some of the bread is not eaten that night, no one is permitted to eat any of it the next day. It must be completely burned because it is sacred.

## Exodus 29:35

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

**In this way, by following all that I have commanded you to do, you must treat Aaron and his sons**

“I have commanded you to treat Aaron and his sons this way”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> In this way, by following all that I have commanded you to do, you must treat Aaron and his sons. For seven days you must prepare them.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> These are the rituals that you must follow during those seven days when you dedicate Aaron and his sons for this work. You must do all that I have commanded you.

## Exodus 29:36

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- set apart

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- set apart

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Every day you must offer a bull as a sin offering for atonement. You must purify the altar by making atonement for it, and you must anoint it in order to set it apart to me.

### UST

<sup>36</sup> Each of those seven days you must also sacrifice a young bull for an offering to me in order that I may forgive sins. Also you must make another offering to make the altar pure in my sight. You must also anoint the altar with olive oil to set it apart.

## Exodus 29:37

### Then the altar will be completely set apart to me

"Then the altar will be most holy"

### will be set apart to Yahweh

"will also be very holy"

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- set apart

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- altar
- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- set apart

### ULT

**37** For seven days you must make atonement for the altar and set it apart it to Yahweh. Then the altar will be completely set apart to me. Whatever touches the altar will be set apart to Yahweh.

### UST

**37** Perform these rituals every day for seven days to set apart the altar and make it pure. Then the altar will be most holy, and whatever touches it must be treated as holy.



## Exodus 29:38

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### You must regularly offer on the altar every day

“You must daily offer on the altar”

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- lamb, Lamb of God
- son

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- lamb, Lamb of God
- son

### ULT

**38** You must regularly offer on the altar every day two lambs a year old.

### UST

**38** You must also sacrifice lambs and burn them on the altar. Each of those seven days you must sacrifice two lambs.

## Exodus 29:39

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> One lamb you must offer in the morning, and the other lamb you must offer about sundown.

### UST

<sup>39</sup> One lamb must be sacrificed in the morning, and one must be sacrificed in the evening.

## Exodus 29:40

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### a tenth...the fourth part

"1/10...1/4" (See: [Fractions](#))

### ephah

An ephah is 22 liters. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### hin

A hin is 3.7 liters. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [drink offering](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [drink offering](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> With the first lamb, offer a tenth of an ephah of fine flour mixed with the fourth part of a hin of oil from pressed olives, and the fourth part of a hin of wine as a drink offering.

### UST

<sup>40</sup> With the first lamb, also offer two liters of finely ground wheat flour mixed with a liter of the best kind of olive oil, and one liter of wine as an offering.

## Exodus 29:41

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### it will be an offering made to me by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it will be a burnt offering to me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**41** You must offer the second lamb about sunset. You must offer the same grain offering as in the morning, and the same drink offering. These will produce a sweet aroma for me; it will be an offering made to me by fire.

### UST

**41** In the evening, when you sacrifice the other lamb, offer the same amounts of flour, olive oil, and wine as you did in the morning. This will be an offering to me, Yahweh, that will be burned, and its smell will please me.

## Exodus 29:42

### throughout your generations

“through all the generations of your descendants.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 12:14](#).

### tent of meeting

This is another name for the tabernacle. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:21](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [generation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [generation](#)

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> These must be regular burnt offerings throughout your generations, at the entrance to the tent of meeting before Yahweh, where I will meet with you to speak to you there.

### UST

<sup>42</sup> You and your descendants must continue making these offerings to me, Yahweh, throughout all future generations. You must offer them at the entrance to the sacred tent. That is where I will meet with you and speak to you.

## Exodus 29:43

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### the tent will be set apart for me by my glory

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "My awesome presence will dedicate the tent to me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> That is where I will meet with the Israelites; the tent will be set apart for me by my glory.

### UST

<sup>43</sup> That is where I will meet with the Israelite people, and the brilliant light of my presence will cause that place to be holy.

## Exodus 29:44

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- son
- set apart
- Aaron
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- son
- set apart
- Aaron
- feast, feasting

### ULT

<sup>44</sup> I will set apart the tent of meeting and the altar for these to belong to me alone. I will also set apart Aaron and his sons to serve me as priests.

### UST

<sup>44</sup> I will dedicate the sacred tent and the altar. I will also dedicate Aaron and his sons to serve me by being priests.

## Exodus 29:45

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- Israel, Israelites

### ULT

<sup>45</sup> I will live among the Israelites and will be their God.

### UST

<sup>45</sup> I will live among the Israelite people, and I will be their God.



## Exodus 29:46

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>46</sup> They will know that I am Yahweh, their God, who brought them out from the land of Egypt so that I might live among them. I am Yahweh, their God.

### UST

<sup>46</sup> They will know that I am Yahweh God, the one who brought them out of Egypt in order that I might live among them. I am Yahweh, the God whom they worship."

## Exodus 30

### Exodus 30 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Atonement

The atonement offered by the priests was very important in the religious life of Israel. In order to offer sacrifices, the priests had to maintain ritual cleanliness by washing themselves. (See: [atonement](#), [atone](#), [atoned](#) and [priest](#), [priesthood](#) and [clean](#), [wash](#))

## Exodus 30:1

### General Information:

Yahweh tells Moses how to build the worship equipment.

### You must make

Here “you” refers to Moses and the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [altar](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> You must make an altar to burn incense. You must make it with acacia wood.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> “Tell the skilled workers to make an altar from acacia wood for burning incense.

## Exodus 30:2

### Its horns must be made

These were projections that looked like ox horns attached to the four corners of the altar. See how you translated “horns” in [Exodus 27:2](#). Alternate translation: “You must make its horns” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Its length must be one cubit, and its width one cubit. It must be square, and its height must be two cubits. Its horns must be made as one piece with it.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> It is to be square, one-half meter on each side. It is to be one meter high. Tell them to make a projection that looks like a horn on each of the top corners. The projections must be carved from the same block of wood from which the altar is made.

## Exodus 30:3

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### the incense altar

“an altar to burn incense”

### Translation Words - ULT

- clean, wash
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- clean, wash
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> You must cover the incense altar with pure gold—its top, its sides, and its horns. You must make a surrounding border of gold for it.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> They must cover the top and the four sides, including the projections, with pure gold. Put a gold border around the altar near the top.

## Exodus 30:4

### to be attached to it

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which you will attach to the altar” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden
- house

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> You must make two golden rings to be attached to it under its border on its two opposite sides. The rings must be holders for poles to carry the altar.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> They must make two gold rings for carrying the altar. They must attach them to the altar below the border, one on each side of the altar. These rings are for the poles for carrying the altar.

## Exodus 30:5

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> You must make the poles of acacia wood, and you must cover them with gold.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Tell them to make these two poles from acacia wood and cover them with gold.

## Exodus 30:6

### ark of the testimony

The ark is the chest that contains the commandments. This can be stated clearly in the translation. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:33](#). Alternate translation: “the chest containing the commandments” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### atonement lid

This is the lid that sits on top of the ark where the atonement offering was made. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:17](#).

### where I will meet with you

Here “you” refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> You must put the incense altar before the curtain that is by the ark of the testimony. It will be before the atonement lid that is over the ark of the testimony, where I will meet with you.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> They must put this incense altar outside the curtain that hangs in front of the sacred chest and its lid. That is the place where I will talk with you.



## Exodus 30:7

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Aaron

### Translation Words - UST

- Aaron

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Aaron must burn fragrant incense every morning. He must burn it when he tends the lamps,

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Aaron must burn sweet-smelling incense on this altar. He must burn some every morning when he takes care of the lamps,

## Exodus 30:8

### throughout your generations

“through all the generations of your descendants.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 12:14](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [generation](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [generation](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> and Aaron lights the lamps again in the evening so incense will burn on it regularly before Yahweh, throughout your generations.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> and he must burn some in the evening when he lights the lamps. The incense must always be burning throughout all future generations.

## Exodus 30:9

### But you must offer

Though the word “you” is addressed to Moses, the instruction is given specifically to Aaron and his descendants as to when and what they are to offer on the altar of incense.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- drink offering
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- grain offering

#### Translation Words - UST

- drink offering
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- grain offering

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But you must offer no other incense on the incense altar, nor any burnt offering or grain offering. You must pour no drink offering on it.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> The priests must not burn on the altar any incense that I have not told you to burn, or burn any animal on it, nor any flour offering for me, nor pour any wine on it as an offering.

## Exodus 30:10

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### horns

These were projections that looked like ox horns attached to the four corners of the altar. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:2](#).

### throughout your generations

“through all the generations of your descendants.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 12:14](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [generation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [generation](#)

### ULT

**10** Aaron must make atonement on its horns once a year. With the blood of the sin offering he will make atonement for it once a year throughout your generations. It is completely set apart to Yahweh.”

### UST

**10** One time every year Aaron must perform the ritual for making this altar pure. He must do it by putting on its four projections some of the blood from the animal that was sacrificed to cover people’s sins. Aaron and his descendants must do this ritual throughout all future generations. This altar must be dedicated to me, Yahweh.”

## Exodus 30:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> Yahweh said to Moses,

## Exodus 30:12

### When you take

Possible meanings are 1) “you” refers to just Moses or 2) “you” refers to Moses and the leaders of Israel in future generations when they take a census. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### a census of the Israelites

The leaders only counted the Israelite men.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [head](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [head](#)

### ULT

**12** “When you take a census of the Israelites, then each person must give a ransom for his life to Yahweh. You must do this after you count them, so that there will be no plague among them when you count them.

### UST

**12** “When your leaders take a census of the Israelite people, each man who is counted must pay to me a price to save his life. They must do this in order that no disaster will happen to them while the people are being counted.

## Exodus 30:13

### Everyone who is counted

This can be stated in active form. They counted only the men.  
 Alternate translation: "Everyone you count" or "Every man you count"  
 (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### half a shekel of silver

"1/2 a shekel of silver." Translators may use a unit of measure that people understand and a round number: "5.5 grams of silver" or "six grams of silver" (See: [Biblical Money](#) and [Biblical Weight and Fractions](#))

### according to the weight of the shekel of the sanctuary

There were evidently shekels of more than one weight at the time.  
 This specified which one was to be used.

### twenty gerahs

"20 gerahs." A gerah is a unit that people used for measuring how much something very small weighed. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### ULT

**13** Everyone who is counted in the census is to pay half a shekel of silver, according to the weight of the shekel of the sanctuary (a shekel is the same as twenty gerahs). This half shekel will be an offering to Yahweh.

### UST

**13** Every man who is counted must pay to me six grams of silver. They must use the official standard of the tabernacle when they weigh the silver. This silver is to be an offering to Yahweh.

## Exodus 30:14

### from twenty years old and up

Larger numbers are spoken of as being up or above smaller numbers. Alternate translation: “from twenty years old and more” or “who is twenty years old or older” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [sacrifice](#), [sacrifices](#), [offering](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [sacrifice](#), [sacrifices](#), [offering](#)

#### ULT

**14** Everyone who is counted, from twenty years old and up, must give this offering to me.

#### UST

**14** All the men who are at least twenty years old must pay this amount to me when the people are counted.



## Exodus 30:15

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### the people

Only the men made this offering.

### the half shekel

Translators may use a unit of measure that people understand and a round number: "the 5.5 grams of silver" or "the 6 grams of silver." See how you translated this in [Exodus 3:13](#). (See: [Biblical Money](#) and [Biblical Weight](#) and [Fractions](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- atonement, atone, atoned
- Yahweh
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- atonement, atone, atoned
- Yahweh
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### ULT

**15** When the people give this offering to me to make atonement for their lives, the rich must not give more than the half shekel, and the poor must not give less.

### UST

**15** Rich men must not pay more than this amount, and poor men must not pay less than this amount when they pay this money to save their lives.

## Exodus 30:16

### It must be a reminder to the Israelites before me, to make atonement for your lives

Possible meanings are 1) "It will remind the Israelites to make atonement for their lives" or 2) "It will remind the Israelites that they have made atonement for their lives."

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- son
- atonement, atone, atoned
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- silver
- feast, feasting

#### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- son
- atonement, atone, atoned
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- silver
- feast, feasting

#### ULT

**16** You must receive this atonement money from the Israelites and you must allocate it to the work of the tent of meeting. It must be a reminder to the Israelites before me, to make atonement for your lives."

#### UST

**16** Your leaders must collect this money from the Israelite people and give it to those who will take care of the sacred tent. You Israelites will see the leaders collect this money and remember that you need to make payment to me so you can live."

## Exodus 30:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> Yahweh said to Moses,

## Exodus 30:18

### You must also make

Here “you” refers to Moses and the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### bronze basin

“bronze bowl” or “bronze tub”

### a bronze stand

This is what the basin would be put on.

### a basin for washing

This phrase explains what the priests were to use the large bronze basin for.

### the altar

the altar of sacrifice

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- feast, feasting
- bronze
- bronze

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- feast, feasting
- bronze
- bronze

### ULT

**18** “You must also make a large bronze basin with a bronze stand, a basin for washing. You must put it between the tent of meeting and the altar, and you must put water in it.

### UST

**18** “Tell the skilled workers to make a bronze washbasin and a bronze base for it. They must put it between the sacred tent and the altar and must fill it with water.

## Exodus 30:19

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### water in it

“water in the basin”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- clean, wash
- Aaron
- hand

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- clean, wash
- Aaron
- hand

### ULT

**19** Aaron and his sons must wash their hands and their feet with the water in it.

### UST

**19** Aaron and his sons must wash their hands and their feet with this water

## Exodus 30:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Yahweh
- feast, feasting

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> When they go into the tent of meeting or when they go near to the altar to serve me by burning an offering, they must wash with water so that they do not die.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> before they enter the sacred tent and before they come to the altar to burn offerings as sacrifices. If they wash, they will obey my instructions and will not die.

## Exodus 30:21

### for Aaron and his descendants throughout their people's generations

"for Aaron and all the generations of his descendants." See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 12:14](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)
- [hand](#)
- [statute](#)
- [generation](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [hand](#)
- [statute](#)
- [generation](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> They must wash their hands and feet so that they do not die. This must be a permanent law for Aaron and his descendants throughout their people's generations."

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> They must wash their hands and their feet in order that they will not die. They and the males descended from them must obey this ritual throughout all generations."

## Exodus 30:22

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> Yahweh said to Moses,



## Exodus 30:23

### spices

dried plants that people grind into a powder and put in oil or food to give it a nice smell or flavor. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:6](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### five hundred shekels...250 shekels

"500 shekels...two hundred and fifty shekels." A shekel is about 11 grams. Translators may use units that people know and round numbers: "5.7 kilograms...11.4 kilograms" or "six kilograms...three kilograms" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#) and [Fractions](#))

### cinnamon...cane

These are sweet spices. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [head](#)

### ULT

**23** "Take these fine spices: five hundred shekels of flowing myrrh, 250 shekels of sweet-smelling cinnamon, 250 shekels of sweet-smelling cane,

### UST

**23** "Tell the people to collect some of the finest spices—six kilograms of liquid myrrh, three kilograms of sweet-smelling cinnamon, three kilograms of a sweet-smelling cane,

## Exodus 30:24

### cassia

This is a sweet spice. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### the weight of the shekel of the sanctuary

There were evidently shekels of more than one weight at the time. This specified which one was to be used. See how you translated this in [Exodus 30:13](#). (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### one hin

Translators may use units that people know and round numbers: “3.7 liters” or “four liters” (See: [Biblical Volume](#) and [Fractions](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [olive](#)
- [oil](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [olive](#)
- [oil](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> five hundred shekels of cassia, measured by the weight of the shekel of the sanctuary, and one hin of olive oil.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> and six kilograms of cassia. Be sure that they use the official standard when they weigh these things.

## Exodus 30:25

### with these ingredients

“with these items”

### the work of a perfumer

Possible meanings are 1) Moses was to have a perfumer do the work or 2) Moses was to do the work himself the way a perfumer would do it.

### a perfumer

a person who is skilled in mixing spices and oils

### Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- olive
- olive

### Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- olive
- olive

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> You must make holy anointing oil with these ingredients, the work of a perfumer. It will be a holy anointing oil, reserved for me.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Tell an expert perfumer to mix these with four liters of olive oil to make sacred oil for anointing.

## Exodus 30:26

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### You must anoint

Here “you” refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### ark of the testimony

The ark is the chest that contains the commandments. This can be stated clearly in the translation. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:33](#). Alternate translation: “the chest containing the commandments” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> You must anoint the tent of meeting with this oil, as well as the ark of the testimony,

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> Use this oil for anointing the sacred tent, the sacred chest,

### Translation Words - ULT

- [feast, feasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [feast, feasting](#)

## Exodus 30:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar

### Translation Words - UST

- altar

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> the table and all its utensils, the lampstand and its equipment, the incense altar,

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> the table and all the things that are used with it, the lampstand and all the things that are used to take care of it, the altar for burning incense,

## Exodus 30:28

### the altar for burnt offerings

“the altar on which offering were burnt”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar

#### Translation Words - UST

- altar

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> the altar for burnt offerings with all its equipment, and the basin with its stand.

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> and the altar for offering sacrifices that the priests will burn, along with all the things that are used with it, and the basin and its stand.

## Exodus 30:29

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### set them apart

This refers to the items listed in [Exodus 30:26-28](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- set apart

### Translation Words - UST

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- set apart

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> You must set them apart to me so that they may be holy to me. Anything that touches them will also be holy.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> Dedicate them by anointing them in order that they will be reserved for me. If any person or thing that is not allowed to do so touches the altar, no one will be allowed to touch that person or thing.

## Exodus 30:30

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- set apart
- Aaron

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- set apart
- Aaron

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> You must anoint Aaron and his sons and set them aside to me so that they may serve me as priests.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> Anoint Aaron and his sons. By doing that, you will dedicate them to serve me by being priests.



## Exodus 30:31

### throughout your people's generations

"all the generations of your descendants." See how you translated this in [Exodus 12:14](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Israel, Israelites
- olive
- generation

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Israel, Israelites
- olive
- generation

#### ULT

**31** You must say to the Israelites, 'This must be an anointing oil that is set apart to Yahweh throughout your people's generations.'

#### UST

**31** Tell the Israelite people, 'This oil will be my special oil that must be used throughout all future generations.'

## Exodus 30:32

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what Moses must tell the people.

### It must not be applied to people's skin

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must not put the anointing oil that is dedicated to Yahweh on a person's skin" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### with the same formula

"with the same ingredients" or "with the same items"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [flesh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [flesh](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> It must not be applied to people's skin, nor must you make any oil like it with the same formula, because it is set apart to Yahweh. You must regard it in this manner.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> You must not pour it on the bodies of people who are not priests, and you must not make other oil to be like it by mixing those same things. This oil is reserved for me, and you must consider it to be such.

## Exodus 30:33

### that person must be cut off from his people

The metaphor “cut off” has at least three possible meanings. They can be expressed in active form: 1) “I will no longer consider him to be one of the people of Israel” 2) “the people of Israel must send him away” or 3) “the people of Israel must kill him.” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [cut off](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [cut off](#)

#### ULT

**33** Whoever makes perfume like it, or whoever puts any of it on someone, that person must be cut off from his people.”

#### UST

**33** Yahweh will view anyone who makes ointment like this for any other purpose, or anyone who puts any of this ointment on someone who is not a priest, as no longer belonging to his people.”

## Exodus 30:34

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what to do. Yahweh gives the commands only to Moses: all instances of “you” are singular. However, the words “blended by a perfumer” might mean that Moses could have the perfumer take the spices, blend them, grind them, and give them to Moses so Moses could put part of the mixture in front of the ark, as in UST.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, “Take spices—stacte, onycha, and galbanum—sweet spices along with pure frankincense, each in equal amounts.

### UST

<sup>34</sup> Yahweh also said to Moses, “Have an expert perfumer take equal parts of several sweet spices: Stacte—a resin from certain gum plants, onycha—from certain shellfish or mollusks, galbanum—another kind of gum resin, and pure frankincense—yet another sort of gum resin.

## Exodus 30:35

### Make it into the form of incense, blended by a perfumer

The phrase with “blended” can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “Make it into the form of incense that a perfumer has blended” or “A perfumer must blend it into a kind of incense” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### blended by a perfumer

Possible meanings are 1) Moses was to have a perfumer do the work or 2) Moses was to do the work himself the way a perfumer would do it. See how you translated these words in [Exodus 30:25](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [clean, wash](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [clean, wash](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Make it into the form of incense, blended by a perfumer, seasoned with salt, pure and set apart.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> Have him mix them together to make some perfume and add some salt to keep it pure and special for me.

## Exodus 30:36

### You will grind it

"You will crush it." Here "you" refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### You will regard

Here "you" is plural and refers to Moses and all the people. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

### ULT

**36** You will grind it into a very fine mixture. Put part of it in front of the ark of the testimony, which is in the tent of meeting, where I will meet with you. You will regard it as very holy to me.

### UST

**36** Have him beat some of it into a fine powder. Then I want you to take some of it into the sacred tent and sprinkle it in front of the sacred chest. You all must consider this incense to be completely reserved for me.

## Exodus 30:37

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### you must not make any

The word “you” here refers to the people of Israel.

### with the same formula

“with the same ingredients” or “with the same items.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 30:32](#).

### It must be most holy to you

“You must consider it to be most holy”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> As for this incense that you will make, you must not make any with the same formula for yourselves. It must be most holy to you.

### UST

<sup>37</sup> The people must not mix the same spices to make incense for themselves. This incense must be dedicated to me, Yahweh.

## Exodus 30:38

### perfume

This is a pleasant smelling liquid a person puts on his or her body.

### must be cut off from his people

The metaphor “cut off” has at least three possible meanings. They can be expressed in active form: 1) “I will no longer consider him to be one of the people of Israel” 2) “the people of Israel must send him away” or 3) “the people of Israel must kill him.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 30:33](#). (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- cut off

### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- cut off

### ULT

**38** Whoever makes anything like it to use as a perfume must be cut off from his people.”

### UST

**38** I will view anyone who makes incense like this to use it for perfume as no longer belonging to my people.”



## **Exodus 31**

### **Exodus 31 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter is the end of Exodus' recording of the law of Moses. (See: [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), the [law](#))

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Sabbath**

As described in this chapter, the Sabbath is more than just a day of worship or celebration. Its significance extends beyond a way to help people rest. It is a major part of the identity of the Hebrew people. (See: [Sabbath](#))

## Exodus 31:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh said to Moses,

## Exodus 31:2

### I have called by name

God speaks of choosing specific people as calling them by name.  
Alternate translation: "I have chosen" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Bezalel...Uri...Hur

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- son
- son
- name
- Judea
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- son
- son
- name
- Judea
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> "See, I have called by name Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur, from the tribe of Judah.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> "I have chosen Bezalel son of Uri and grandson of Hur, from the tribe of Judah.

## Exodus 31:3

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### I have filled Bezalel with my Spirit

Yahweh speaks of giving Bezalel his Spirit as if Bezalel were a container and God's Spirit were a liquid. Alternate translation: "I have given my Spirit to Bezalel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### for all kinds of craftsmanship

The abstract noun "craftsmanship" can be translated as "making crafts" or "making things." Alternate translation: "for making all kinds of crafts" or "so that he can make all kinds of things" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> I have filled Bezalel with my Spirit, to give him wisdom, understanding, and knowledge, for all kinds of craftsmanship,

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> I have filled him with my Spirit, and I have given him special ability to make things; I have enabled him to know how to do very skilled work.

## Exodus 31:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> to make artistic designs and to work in gold, silver, and bronze;

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> He can engrave skillful designs in gold, silver, and bronze.

## Exodus 31:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> also to cut and set stones and to carve wood—to do all kinds of craftsmanship.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> He can cut jewels and enclose them in tiny gold settings. He can carve things from wood and do other skilled work.

## Exodus 31:6

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### Oholiab...Ahisamak

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### I have put skill into the hearts of all who are wise

God speaks of making people able to make things as if he were putting the ability into their hearts. Alternate translation: "I have given skill to all who are wise" or "I have made all who are wise able to make things well"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [heart](#)
- [wise men, advisor](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [heart](#)
- [wise men, advisor](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> In addition to him, I have appointed Oholiab son of Ahisamak, from the tribe of Dan. I have put skill into the hearts of all who are wise so that they may make all that I have commanded you. This includes

### UST

<sup>6</sup> I have also appointed Oholiab son of Ahisamak, from the tribe of Dan, to work with him. I have given special ability to other men also in order that they can make all the things that I have commanded you to be made.

## Exodus 31:7

### tent of meeting

This is another name for the tabernacle. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:21](#).

### ark of the testimony

The ark is the chest that contains the commandments. This can be stated clearly in the translation. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:33](#). Alternate translation: “the chest containing the commandments” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### atonement lid

This is the lid that sits on top of the ark where the atonement offering was made. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:17](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [feast, feasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [feast, feasting](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> the tent of meeting, the ark of the testimony, the atonement lid on the ark, and all the furniture of the tent—

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Those things include: The sacred tent, the sacred chest and its lid, all the other things that will be inside the sacred tent,



## Exodus 31:8

### incense altar

“altar to burn incense.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 30:3](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [altar](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> the table and its utensils, the pure lampstand with all its equipment, the incense altar,

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> the table and all the things that are used with it, the pure gold lampstand and all the things that are used to take care of it, the altar for burning incense,

## Exodus 31:9

### altar for burnt offerings

“altar on which offering were burnt.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 30:28](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar

#### Translation Words - UST

- altar

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> the altar for burnt offerings with all its equipment, and the large basin with its base.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> the altar for offering sacrifices that will be burned and all the things that will be used with it, and the washbasin and its base.

## Exodus 31:10

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- priest, priesthood

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- priest, priesthood

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> This also includes the finely-woven garments—the holy garments for Aaron the priest and those of his sons, reserved for me so that they may serve as priests.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Also included in these things were all the beautiful, special clothes for Aaron and his sons to wear when they work as priests;

## Exodus 31:11

### These craftsmen

"These people who are skilled in making beautiful things"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [olive](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [olive](#)

### ULT

**11** This also includes the anointing oil and the sweet incense for the holy place. These craftsmen must make all these things just as I have commanded you."

### UST

**11** the oil for anointing, and the sweet-smelling incense for the holy place. The craftsmen must make all these things exactly as I have told you that they should do."

## Exodus 31:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said,

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> Yahweh said to Moses,

## Exodus 31:13

### You must certainly keep Yahweh's Sabbath days

God speaks of obeying his instructions about the Sabbath as keeping the Sabbath. Alternate translation: "You must certainly obey Yahweh's instructions about the Sabbath" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### throughout your people's generations

"through all the generations of your descendants." See how you translated this in [Exodus 12:14](#).

### who sets you apart for himself

God speaks of choosing people to be his as setting them apart for himself. Alternate translation: "who has chosen you to be his people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sign, proof, reminder](#)
- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)
- [generation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sign, proof, reminder](#)
- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)
- [generation](#)

### ULT

**13** "Tell the Israelites: 'You must certainly keep Yahweh's Sabbath days, for these will be a sign between him and you throughout your people's generations so that you may know that he is Yahweh, who sets you apart for himself.'

### UST

**13** "Tell the Israelite people, 'Obey my instructions regarding the Sabbath days for rest. Those days will remind me and you and your descendants, throughout all future generations, that I, Yahweh, have set you apart to be my people.'

## Exodus 31:14

### for it must be treated by you as holy

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “for you must treat it as holy” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Everyone who defiles it

God speaks of treating the Sabbath with disrespect as defiling it. Alternate translation: “Everyone who treats the Sabbath with disrespect” or “Everyone who does not obey the laws about the Sabbath” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### must surely be put to death

“must surely be killed.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must surely kill” or “you must surely execute” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### must surely be cut off from his people

The metaphor “cut off” has at least three possible meanings. They can be expressed in active form: 1) “Yahweh will no longer consider him to be one of his people” 2) “you must surely send him away” or 3) “you must surely kill him.” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [cut off](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [cut off](#)

#### ULT

**14** So you must keep the Sabbath, for it must be treated by you as holy, reserved for him. Everyone who defiles it must surely be put to death. Whoever works on the Sabbath, that person must surely be cut off from his people.

#### UST

**14** You must obey my rules about the Sabbath days for rest because you must regard them as special for me. Those who treat these days with disrespect must be killed; this will show that I no longer consider them to belong to my people.

## Exodus 31:15

### but the seventh day

“but day 7” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Sabbath](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Sabbath](#)

#### ULT

**15** Work will be done for six days, but the seventh day is to be a Sabbath of complete rest, holy before Yahweh. Whoever does any work on the Sabbath day must surely be put to death.

#### UST

**15** You may work for six days each week, but the seventh day of each week is a solemn rest day, dedicated to me, Yahweh. Anyone who does any work on a Sabbath day of rest is to be killed.



## Exodus 31:16

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what he must tell the people of Israel.

### must keep the Sabbath

God speaks of obeying his instructions about the Sabbath as keeping the Sabbath. Alternate translation: “must obey Yahweh’s instructions about the Sabbath” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### They must observe it throughout their people’s generations

“They and all the generations of their descendants must observe it.” See how you translated “throughout their people’s generations” in [Exodus 12:42](#).

### lasting covenant

“a covenant that will always exist.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:43](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [generation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [generation](#)

### ULT

**16** Therefore the Israelites must keep the Sabbath. They must observe it throughout their people’s generations as a lasting covenant.

### UST

**16** You Israelite people must respect the Sabbath days of rest, and you and your descendants must observe them throughout all future generations. I will always require this of you.

## Exodus 31:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- sign, proof, reminder
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- sign, proof, reminder
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

**17** The Sabbath will always be a sign between Yahweh and the Israelites, for in six days Yahweh made heaven and earth, and on the seventh day he rested and was refreshed.”

### UST

**17** The Sabbath days of rest will remind you Israelite people and me of our covenant because I, Yahweh, created the heavens and the earth in six days, and on the seventh day I stopped doing that work and rested.”

## Exodus 31:18

### written on by his own hand

This can be translated with an active verb. Alternate translation: “which Yahweh wrote on with his own hand” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

**18** When God had finished talking with Moses on Mount Sinai, he gave him two tablets of covenant decrees, made of stone, written on by his own hand.

#### UST

**18** When Yahweh finished talking with Moses on the top of Mount Sinai, he gave him the two stone slabs on which he had engraved his commandments with his own fingers.

## **Exodus 32**

### **Exodus 32 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

The events of this chapter occur while Moses spoke with God and therefore happen at the same time as the events in chapters 20-31.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 32:18.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Idolatry**

The making of the golden calf was considered a form of idolatry. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Exodus 32:1

### the people saw

Here understanding something is spoken of as if it were being seen.  
Alternate translation: "the people realized" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Come, make us an idol

The word "come" strengthens the force of the command following it.  
The people were demanding that Aaron make an idol for them.

### go before us

"lead us" or "be our leader"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> When the people saw that Moses delayed in coming down the mountain, they gathered around Aaron and said to him, "Come, make us an idol that will go before us. As for this Moses, the man who brought us up out of the land of Egypt, we do not know what has happened to him."

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Moses stayed on top of the mountain a long time. When the people saw that he was not returning, they went to Aaron and said to him, "Make us gods who will lead us on our journey. We do not know what happened to that man Moses, who brought us here out of Egypt."

## Exodus 32:2

### bring them to me

The word “them” refers to the golden rings.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Aaron
- gold, golden

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Aaron
- gold, golden

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> So Aaron said to them, “Take off the golden rings that are on your wives’ ears, and the ears of your sons and daughters, and bring them to me.”

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> Aaron said to them, “All right, I will do that. Tell your wives and your children to take off all their gold earrings and bring them to me.”

## Exodus 32:3

### All the people

This refers to all the people who rejected Moses as their leader and Moses' God as their God.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Aaron
- people, people group,
- gold, golden

#### Translation Words - UST

- Aaron
- people, people group,
- gold, golden

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> All the people took off the golden rings that were on their ears and brought them to Aaron.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> So the people took off all their gold earrings and brought them to Aaron.

## Exodus 32:4

### fashioned it with an engraving tool and he made a cast idol in the shape of a calf

Aaron melted the gold and poured it into a mold that had the shape of a calf. When the gold became hard, he removed the mold, and the hardened gold had the shape of a calf.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> He received the gold from their hand and fashioned it with an engraving tool and he made a cast idol in the shape of a calf. Then they said, "These are your gods, Israel, who brought you up out of the land of Egypt."

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> He melted the gold in a fire. He poured the gold into a mold and made a statue that looked like a young bull. The people saw it and said, "This is the god of the Israelite people! This is the one who rescued us from the land of Egypt!"



## Exodus 32:5

### When Aaron saw this

You may need to make explicit what he saw. "When Aaron saw what the people did" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- Aaron
- Aaron
- feast, feasting
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Yahweh
- Aaron
- Aaron
- feast, feasting
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> When Aaron saw this, he built an altar before the calf and made a proclamation; he said, "Tomorrow will be a festival in Yahweh's honor."

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> When Aaron saw how the people reacted, he built an altar in front of the bull. Then he announced, "Tomorrow we will have a festival to honor Yahweh!"

## Exodus 32:6

### to carouse in wild celebration

“to have a wild party.” The people likely behaved in sexually immoral ways at the party.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- burnt offering, offering by fire

#### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- burnt offering, offering by fire

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> The people arose early the next day and offered burnt offerings and brought fellowship offerings. Then they sat down to eat and to drink, and then got up to carouse in wild celebration.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> So the people got up early the next morning and brought animals to kill and burn as sacrifices on the altar. They also brought sacrifices to restore fellowship with others. Then they sat down to eat and to drink wine. After a while, they got up and had a wild party.

## Exodus 32:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses, “Go quickly, for your people, whom you brought up out of the land of Egypt, have corrupted themselves.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Go down from the mountain because your people, the ones that you brought up here from Egypt, have become bad.

## Exodus 32:8

### left the way that I commanded them

Here God speaks of the people disobeying what he commanded them as if he had told them to walk on a certain road and they left that road. Alternate translation: “stopped doing what I commanded them to do” or “have stopped obeying what I commanded them to do” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> They have quickly left the way that I commanded them. They have made a cast idol in the shape of a calf and have worshiped it and sacrificed to it. They have said, ‘These are your gods, Israel, who brought you up out of the land of Egypt.’”

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> They have already left the road that I showed them and have stopped obeying me! They have made a statue of a young bull from melted gold. They have worshiped it and offered sacrifices to it. They are saying, ‘This is the god of the Israelite people! This is the one who brought us up from Egypt!’

## Exodus 32:9

### I have seen this people

Here Yahweh compares knowing the people to seeing them.  
Alternate translation: "I know this people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### a stiff-necked people

Yahweh speaks of the people being stubborn as if they had stiff necks. Alternate translation: "a stubborn people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, "I have seen this people. Look, they are a stiff-necked people.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> I know that these people are very stubborn.

## Exodus 32:10

### Now then

The word “now” is used here to mark a break in what Yahweh was telling Moses. Here Yahweh tells what he will do to the people.

### My anger will burn hot against them

Yahweh speaks of his anger as if it were a fire that could burn hot. Alternate translation: “My anger towards them will be terrible” or “I am extremely angry with them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### from you

The word “you” refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [nation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [nation](#)

### ULT

**10** Now then, do not try to stop me. My anger will burn hot against them, so I will destroy them. Then I will make a great nation from you.”

### UST

**10** I am very angry with them, so I am going to get rid of them. Do not try to stop me! Then I will cause you and your descendants to become a great nation.”

## Exodus 32:11

### why does your anger burn against your people...a mighty hand?

Moses used this question to try to persuade Yahweh not to be so angry with his people. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Do not let your anger burn against your people...a mighty hand." or "Do not be so angry with your people...a mighty hand." (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

### great power...mighty hand

These two phrases share similar meanings and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Doublet](#))

### a mighty hand

Here the word "hand" refers to the things Yahweh did. Alternate translation: "and the powerful things you did" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**11** But Moses tried to calm down Yahweh his God. He said, "Yahweh, why does your anger burn against your people, whom you have brought out of the land of Egypt with great power and with a mighty hand?"

### UST

**11** But Moses pleaded with his God, Yahweh, and said, "Yahweh, you should not be angry with your people! These are the people whom you saved from Egypt with very great power!"

## Exodus 32:12

### General Information:

Moses continues to reason with God not to destroy Israel.

### Why should the Egyptians say, 'He led them out...to destroy them from the face of the earth?'

Moses used this question to try to persuade God not to destroy his people. This rhetorical question can be translated with a statement. Alternate translation: If you destroy your people, the Egyptians might say, 'He led them out...to destroy them from the face of the earth.' (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### face of the earth

"from the surface of the earth" or "from the earth"

### Turn from your burning anger

"Stop your burning anger" or "Stop being so angry"

### your burning anger

Moses speaks of God's anger as if it were a fire that was burning. Alternate translation: "your terrible anger" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [restore](#), restoration
- [evil](#), wicked, unpleasant
- [evil](#), wicked, unpleasant
- [people](#), people group,
- [die](#), dead, deadly, death,
- [face](#), facial
- [know](#), knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- [restore](#), restoration
- [evil](#), wicked, unpleasant
- [evil](#), wicked, unpleasant
- [people](#), people group,
- [die](#), dead, deadly, death,
- [face](#), facial
- [know](#), knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**12** Why should the Egyptians say, 'He led them out with evil intent, to kill them in the mountains and to destroy them from the face of the earth?' Turn from your burning anger and relent from this punishment on your people.

### UST

**12** Do not do anything that would allow the people of Egypt to say, 'Their god led them out from our country, but he did that only because he wanted to kill them in the mountains and get rid of them completely! Do not do to your people this terrible thing that you have just said that you will do! Stop being so angry! Change your mind!'



## Exodus 32:13

### Call to mind Abraham

“Remember Abraham” or “Think about Abraham”

### you swore

“you made an oath” or “you solemnly promised”

### They will inherit it forever

God speaks about them possessing the land as if they would inherit it. Alternate translation: “They will possess it forever” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [seed, semen](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [seed, semen](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

### ULT

**13** Call to mind Abraham and Isaac and Israel, your servants, to whom you swore by your own self and said to them, ‘I will make your descendants as many as the stars in the heavens, and I will give to your descendants all this land of which I have spoken. They will inherit it forever.’”

### UST

**13** Think about your servants Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. You solemnly promised them, saying, ‘I will enable you to have as many descendants as the stars that are in the sky.’ You said to them, ‘I will give to your descendants all the land that I am promising to give them. It will be their land forever.’”

## Exodus 32:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Then Yahweh relented from the punishment that he had said he would inflict on his people.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> So Yahweh changed his mind. He did not do to his people the terrible thing that he said he would do.

## Exodus 32:15

### tablets of the covenant decrees

These are the two stone slabs on which God had engraved his commandments.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)

#### ULT

**15** Then Moses turned around and went down the mountain, carrying the two tablets of the covenant decrees in his hand. The tablets were written on both their sides, on both the front and the back.

#### UST

**15** Then Moses left from where God was; he went down the mountain, carrying in his hands the two stone slabs on which Yahweh had engraved his commandments. He had written on both sides of the slabs.

## Exodus 32:16

### The tablets were God's own work, and the writing was God's own writing

These two phrases share similar meanings. The second explains how the tablets were "God's own work." (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> The tablets were God's own work, and the writing was God's own writing, engraved on the tablets.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> God himself had made the slabs, and he was the one who had engraved the commandments on them.

## Exodus 32:17

### he said to Moses

It is assumed that Joshua met Moses while Moses was going back to the camp. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

#### ULT

**17** When Joshua heard the noise of the people as they shouted, he said to Moses, "There is the noise of combat in the camp."

#### UST

**17** Joshua heard the people shouting very loudly. So when Moses got near the camp, Joshua met him and said, "There is a noise in the camp that sounds like the noise of a battle!"

## Exodus 32:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer

### Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer

#### ULT

**18** But Moses said, "It is not the sound of a victor, and not the sound of defeated people, but the sound of singing that I hear."

#### UST

**18** But Moses said, "No, that does not sound as though the people have won a victory; it does not sound as though they have been defeated in a battle! It sounds as though they are singing!"

## Exodus 32:19

### the tablets

“the two stone slabs that Yahweh had written on”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)

#### ULT

**19** When Moses approached the camp, he saw the calf and the people dancing. He became very angry. He threw the tablets out of his hands and broke them at the bottom of the mountain.

#### UST

**19** As soon as Moses came close to the camp and saw the statue of the bull and the people dancing, he became very angry. He threw the stone tablets down onto the ground at the base of the mountain, and they broke.

## Exodus 32:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- face, facial

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- face, facial

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> He took the calf that the people had made, burned it, ground it to powder, and poured it into the water. Then he made the people of Israel drink it.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Then he took the statue of the bull that they had made and melted it in the fire. When it cooled, he ground it into fine powder. Then he mixed the powder with water and forced the Israelite people to drink it.



## Exodus 32:21

### Then Moses said to Aaron, "What did this people...a great sin on them?"

This can be stated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "Then Moses asked Aaron what the people do to him, that he have brought such a great sin on them" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### you have brought such a great sin on them

Moses spoke of causing people to sin as if sin were an object and Aaron put it on them. Alternate translation: "you have caused them to sin so terribly" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Then Moses said to Aaron, "What did this people do to you, that you have brought such a great sin on them?"

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Then Moses said to Aaron, "Did these people do something to you that led you to make them sin in this way?"

## Exodus 32:22

### Do not let your anger burn hot

Aaron spoke of Moses' anger as if it were a fire that could burn. "Do not be so angry" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### they are set on doing evil

Being determined to do evil is spoken of as being set on evil.  
Alternate translation: "they are determined to do what is evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Aaron
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Aaron
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Aaron said, "Do not let your anger burn hot, my master. You know these people, how they are set on doing evil.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Aaron replied, "Please do not be angry with me, my lord. You know that these people are likely to do wicked things.

## Exodus 32:23

### this Moses

People showed disrespect by putting the word “this” before his name, as if Moses were someone they did not know and could not trust.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- walk, walked
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- walk, walked
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> They said to me, ‘Make us a god who will go before us. As for this Moses, the man who brought us up out of the land of Egypt, we do not know what has happened to him.’

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> They said to me, ‘Make for us an idol who will lead us on our journey! As for that man Moses, the one who brought us up here from the land of Egypt, we do not know what has happened to him.’

## Exodus 32:24

**So I said to them, 'Whoever has any gold, let him take it off.'**

This can be stated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "So I told them that whoever had any gold should take it off" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**I threw it into the fire, and out came this calf**

Instead of taking ownership for making the calf, Aaron claims the calf came out of the fire supernaturally.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [fire](#), [firebrands](#), [firepans](#), [fireplace](#), [firepot](#)
- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [fire](#), [firebrands](#), [firepans](#), [fireplace](#), [firepot](#)
- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> So I said to them, 'Whoever has any gold, let him take it off.' They gave me the gold and I threw it into the fire, and out came this calf."

### UST

<sup>24</sup> So I said to them, 'Everyone who is wearing gold earrings should take them off.' So they took them off and gave them to me. I threw them into the fire, and out came this statue of a young bull!"

## Exodus 32:25

### were running wild

“were behaving wildly” or “were not controlling themselves”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Aaron
- people, people group,

#### Translation Words - UST

- Moses
- Aaron
- people, people group,

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Moses saw that the people were running wild (for Aaron had let them get out of control, causing their enemies to mock them).

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> Moses saw that Aaron had allowed the people to get out of control and to do things that would make their enemies think the Israelite people were foolish.

## Exodus 32:26

### Then Moses stood at the entrance...“Whoever is on Yahweh’s side, come to me.”

This can be stated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: “Then Moses stood at the entrance to the camp and said that whoever was on Yahweh’s side should come to him” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Whoever is on Yahweh’s side

Moses speaks of being loyal to Yahweh as being on Yahweh’s side. Alternate translation: “Whoever is loyal to Yahweh” or “Whoever serves Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Then Moses stood at the entrance to the camp and said, “Whoever is on Yahweh’s side, come to me.” All the Levites gathered around him.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> So he stood at the entrance to the camp and shouted, “Everyone who is loyal to Yahweh should come close to me!” So all the men in the tribe of Levi gathered around him.

## Exodus 32:27

### go back and forth from entrance to entrance

“go from side of the camp to the other, starting at one entrance to the camp and going to the entrance on the other side of the camp”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- sword, swordsmen
- return

#### Translation Words - UST

- brother
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- sword, swordsmen
- return

#### ULT

**27** He said to them, “Yahweh, the God of Israel, says this: ‘Let each man fasten his sword on his side and go back and forth from entrance to entrance throughout the camp, and kill his brother, his companion, and his neighbor.’”

#### UST

**27** Then he said to them, “Yahweh, the God of the Israelite people, commands that every one of you should fasten your sword to your side, and then go through the camp from this gate to the other one. Each one of you must kill the other men, whether they are your brother, your friend, or your neighbor.”

## Exodus 32:28

### three thousand of the people

“3000 of the people” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

#### ULT

**28** The Levites did what Moses ordered. That day about three thousand of the people died.

#### UST

**28** The men in the tribe of Levi did what Moses told them to do, and they killed three thousand men on that day.



## Exodus 32:29

### You have been placed into Yahweh's service

This probably means "You have been chosen to serve Yahweh" or "You have become Yahweh's servants."

### for each of you has taken action against his son and his brother

The fact that they did this in obedience to God can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "for you have obeyed Yahweh and killed your sons and your brothers" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)

#### ULT

**29** Moses said to the Levites, "You have been placed into Yahweh's service today, for each of you has taken action against his son and his brother, so Yahweh might give you a blessing today."

#### UST

**29** Moses said to the men in the tribe of Levi, "Today you have become special servants of Yahweh by killing even your own sons and your brothers. As a result Yahweh has blessed you."

## Exodus 32:30

### You have committed a very great sin

They worshiped an idol.

### Perhaps I can make atonement for your sin

Moses spoke of persuading God to forgive the people as if he could make atonement for their sin. Alternate translation: "Perhaps I can persuade Yahweh to forgive you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),

#### Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> The next day Moses said to the people, "You have committed a very great sin. Now I will go up to Yahweh. Perhaps I can make atonement for your sin."

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> The next day, Moses said to the people, "You have sinned very greatly. But I will now climb up the mountain again to talk with Yahweh. Perhaps I can persuade him to forgive you for sinning like this."

## Exodus 32:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- God
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- Moses
- people, people group,
- gold, golden
- return

### Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- God
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- Moses
- people, people group,
- gold, golden
- return

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Moses returned to Yahweh and said, "Oh, these people have committed a great sin and made themselves an idol of gold.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> So Moses went up the mountain and said to Yahweh, "I am sorry to admit that these people sinned very greatly when they made for themselves a gold idol and worshiped it.

## Exodus 32:32

### blot me out of the book

The word “me” here refers to the name of Moses. Alternate translation: “erase my name from the book” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the book that you have written

What God had written in the book can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “the book in which you have written the names of your people” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [blot out](#), [wipe out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [blot out](#), [wipe out](#)

### ULT

**32** But now, please forgive their sin; but if you do not, blot me out of the book that you have written.”

### UST

**32** But now I ask you to forgive them for their sin. If you will not forgive them, then erase my name from the book in which you have written the names of your people.”

## Exodus 32:33

### that person I will blot out of my book

The phrase “that person” represents “that person’s name.” Alternate translation: “I will erase that person’s name from my book” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### my book

This refers to the book of Yahweh that Moses spoke of in [Exodus 32:32](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [blot out](#), [wipe out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [blot out](#), [wipe out](#)

### ULT

**33** Yahweh said to Moses, “Whoever has sinned against me, that person I will blot out of my book.

### UST

**33** But Yahweh said to Moses, “It is only those who have sinned against me whose names I will erase from that book.

## Exodus 32:34

### But on the day that I punish them, I will punish them

On the day that God decides to punish them, it will be clear that it is God who is judging them.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- command, commandment
- appoint, appointed
- people, people group,
- messenger
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

#### Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- command, commandment
- appoint, appointed
- people, people group,
- messenger
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

#### ULT

**34** So now go, lead the people to the place of which I have spoken to you. See, my angel will go before you. But on the day that I punish them, I will punish them for their sin."

#### UST

**34** Now go back down and lead the Israelite people to the place about which I told you. Keep in mind that my angel will go in front of you. But, at the time that I decide, I will punish them for their sin."

## Exodus 32:35

### Yahweh sent a plague on the people

This plague may have been a serious illness. Alternate translation: "Yahweh made the people very sick"

### they had made the calf, the one that Aaron made

Even though Aaron made the calf, the people were also guilty because they told Aaron to do it. Alternate translation: "they told Aaron to make the calf"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Aaron
- people, people group,

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Aaron
- people, people group,

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Yahweh sent a plague on the people because they had made the calf, the one that Aaron made.

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> Later Yahweh caused the people to become sick because they had told Aaron to make the statue of a young bull.

## **Exodus 33**

### **Exodus 33 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Covenant**

While the covenants Yahweh made may not be conditioned upon the obedience of Israel, it is clear that their conquering of the Promised Land was conditioned on their obedience to Yahweh. (See: [covenant](#) and [Promised Land](#))



## Exodus 33:1

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses of his anger.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses, “Go from here, you and the people whom you have brought up out of the land of Egypt. Go to the land about which I made an oath to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, when I said, ‘I will give it to your descendants.’

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Leave this place and go with the people whom you led out of Egypt. Go to the land that I promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that I would give to their descendants.

## Exodus 33:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Amorite
- Hivite
- Jebus, Jebusite
- Perizzite
- messenger

### Translation Words - UST

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Amorite
- Hivite
- Jebus, Jebusite
- Perizzite
- messenger

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> I will send an angel before you, and I will drive out the Canaanites, Amorites, Hittites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> I will send my angel ahead of you, and I will remove from that land the people of Canaan, Amor, Heth, Periz, Hiv, and Jebus.

## Exodus 33:3

### that land, which is flowing with milk and honey

The land was good for raising livestock and growing crops. See how you translated this in [Exodus 3:8](#). Alternate translation: “a land that is excellent for raising livestock and growing crops” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### flowing with

“full of” or “with an abundance of”

### milk

Since milk comes from cows and goats, this represents food produced by livestock. Alternate translation: “food from livestock” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### honey

Since honey is produced from flowers, this represents food from crops. Alternate translation: “food from crops” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### a stubborn people

“people who refuse to change”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [honey](#), [honeycomb](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [consume](#), [devour](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [honey](#), [honeycomb](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [consume](#), [devour](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Go to that land, which is flowing with milk and honey, but I will not go up with you, because you are a stubborn people. I might destroy you on the way.”

### UST

<sup>3</sup> You will go to a land that will be very good for raising livestock and growing crops. But I will not go with you myself because if I did that, I might annihilate you while you are traveling because you are very stubborn people.”

## Exodus 33:4

### jewelry

beautiful clothing as well as chains and rings with jewels in them

#### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- people, people group,
- mourn, mourner, weeping

#### Translation Words - UST

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- people, people group,
- mourn, mourner, weeping

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> When the people heard these troubling words, they mourned, and no one put on any jewelry.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> When the people heard these words, they were sad, and no one wore fancy clothing anymore.

## Exodus 33:5

### a stubborn people

“people who refuse to change.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 33:3](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Yahweh had said to Moses, “Say to the Israelites, ‘You are a stubborn people. If I went among you for even one moment, I would destroy you. So now, take off your jewelry so that I may decide what to do with you.’”

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Yahweh had said to Moses, “Tell the Israelite people, ‘You are very stubborn. If I were to go with you for even a moment, I would kill you. Now take off your fine clothing to show that you are sorry for your sin. Then I will decide how I will punish you.’”

## Exodus 33:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So the Israelites wore no jewelry from Mount Horeb onward.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> After the Israelite people left Mount Sinai, they wore no more fancy clothing.

## Exodus 33:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- feast, feasting
- feast, feasting
- seek, search, look for
- declare, proclaim, announce
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- feast, feasting
- feast, feasting
- seek, search, look for
- declare, proclaim, announce
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Moses took a tent and pitched it outside the camp, some distance from the camp. He called it the tent of meeting. Everyone who asked Yahweh for anything went out to the tent of meeting, outside the camp.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> As the Israelite people were traveling, whenever they stopped and set up their tents, Moses set up the sacred tent outside the camp, far from the camp. He called it "the tent of meeting." Everyone who wanted Yahweh to decide something for them would go out of the camp to the tent of meeting.

## Exodus 33:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Moses
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- Moses
- Moses
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> When Moses would go out to the tent, all the people would stand up at their tent entrances and look at Moses until he had gone inside.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Whenever Moses went out to the tent of meeting, all the people would stand at their own tent entrances and watch him until he had walked into the tent of meeting.



## Exodus 33:9

### the pillar of cloud

The cloud had the shape of a pillar. See how you translated this in [Exodus 13:22](#). Alternate translation: “the cloud shaped like a pillar” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### would come down

Where it came down from can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “would come down from the sky” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Whenever Moses entered the tent, the pillar of cloud would come down and stand at the tent entrance, and Yahweh would speak with Moses.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Whenever Moses went into the tent of meeting, the tall cloud would come down and stay at the tent entrance, and then Yahweh would talk with Moses.

## Exodus 33:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- prostrate, worship
- people, people group,
- people, people group, (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- prostrate, worship
- people, people group,
- people, people group, (2)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Whenever all the people saw the pillar of cloud stand at the entrance to the tent, they would get up and worship, every man at his own tent entrance.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> When the people saw the tall cloud at the entrance of the tent of meeting, they would all worship Yahweh at their own tent entrances.

## Exodus 33:11

### Yahweh would speak to Moses face to face

Speaking directly rather than through dreams and visions, is spoken of as if Moses and God saw each other's faces while they spoke.

Alternate translation: "Yahweh would speak directly to Moses" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### young man

Joshua was old enough to be a soldier, but he was much younger than Moses

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [return](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [return](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**11** Yahweh would speak to Moses face to face, as a man speaks to his friend. Then Moses would return to the camp, but his servant Joshua son of Nun, a young man, would stay in the tent.

### UST

**11** Yahweh would speak to Moses face to face like someone speaks to his friend. Then Moses would return to the camp. But his young helper, Joshua son of Nun, would stay in the tent of meeting.

## Exodus 33:12

### See

“Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

### I know you by name

To know someone by name is to know them well. Alternate translation: “I know you well” (See: [Idiom](#))

### you have also found favor in my eyes

Here “found favor” is an idiom that means be approved of or that God is pleased with Moses. Here “eyes” are a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing God’s evaluation. Alternate translation: “I have evaluated you and approve” or “I am pleased with you” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Yahweh
- name
- Moses
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Yahweh
- name
- Moses
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Moses said to Yahweh, “See, you have been saying to me, ‘Take this people on their journey,’ but you have not let me know whom you will send with me. You have said, ‘I know you by name, and you have also found favor in my eyes.’”

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Moses said to Yahweh, “It is true that you have told me, ‘Lead the people to the land that I will show you,’ but you have not told me whom you will send with me! Nevertheless, you have said that you know me well and that you are pleased with me.”

## Exodus 33:13

### Now if I have found favor in your eyes

Here “found favor” is an idiom that means be approved of or that God is pleased with Moses. Here “eyes” are a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing God’s evaluation. Alternate translation: “Now If you are pleased with me” or “Now if you approve of me” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### show me your ways

Possible meanings: 1) “show me what you are going to do in the future” or 2) “show me how people can do what pleases you.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- people, people group,
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- people, people group,
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**13** Now if I have found favor in your eyes, show me your ways so that I may know you and continue to find favor in your eyes. Remember that this nation is your people.”

### UST

**13** So now, if you are truly pleased with me, I ask you, please tell me the things that you are going to do in order that I may know you better and continue to please you. Please remember that the Israelite people are the people whom you chose to belong to you.”

## Exodus 33:14

### My own presence will go

God's presence represents himself. Alternate translation: "I will go"  
(See: [Metonymy](#))

### go with you...give you

The word "you" here refers to Moses. It is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### I will give you rest

"I will let you rest"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [face](#), [facial](#)
- [walk](#), [walked](#)
- [rest](#), [rested](#), [restless](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [face](#), [facial](#)
- [walk](#), [walked](#)
- [rest](#), [rested](#), [restless](#)

#### ULT

**14** Yahweh answered, "My own presence will go with you, and I will give you rest."

#### UST

**14** Yahweh replied, "I will go with you, and I will give you rest."

## Exodus 33:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- face, facial
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- face, facial
- walk, walked

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Moses said to him, “If your presence does not go with us, do not take us up from here.

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> Moses replied, “If you do not go with me, do not make us leave this place.

## Exodus 33:16

### For otherwise

"For if your presence does not go with us"

### how will it be known

This can be expressed with an active form. Alternate translation: how will people know" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### how will it be known...people?

Moses used this question in order to emphasize that if God does not go with them, no one will know that Moses had found favor in God's sight. Alternate translation: "no one will know...people." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Will it not only be if

"Will it not only be known if"

### Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- face, facial
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- face, facial
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**16** For otherwise, how will it be known that I have found favor in your eyes, I and your people? Will it not only be if you go with us so that I and your people are different from all the other peoples that are on the surface of the earth?"

### UST

**16** The only way that others will know that you are pleased with me and with your people is if you go with us! If you go with us, it will show that we are different from all the other people on the earth."



## Exodus 33:17

### General Information:

When Yahweh uses the word “you” in this verse, it is singular and refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### you have found favor in my eyes

Here “found favor” is an idiom that means that God is pleased with Moses. Here “eyes” are a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing his evaluation. See how you translated this in [Exodus 33:12](#). Alternate translation: “I am pleased with you” or “I approve of you” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### I know you by name

To know someone by name is to know them well. See how you translated this in [Exodus 33:12](#). Alternate translation: “I know you well” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**17** Yahweh said to Moses, “I will also do this thing that you have requested, for you have found favor in my eyes, and I know you by name.”

### UST

**17** Yahweh replied to Moses, “I will do what you have asked because I know you well and I am pleased with you.”

## Exodus 33:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- glory, glorious, glorify

### Translation Words - UST

- glory, glorious, glorify

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Moses said, "Please show me your glory."

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> Then Moses said, "Please let me see you in all your power."

## Exodus 33:19

### I will make all my goodness pass before you

God speaks of walking past Moses so that Moses can see his goodness as if only his goodness would go past Moses. Alternate translation: "I will move past you so that you may see my goodness" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- name
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- face, facial
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- name
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- face, facial
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### ULT

**19** Yahweh said, "I will make all my goodness pass before you, and I will proclaim my name 'Yahweh' before you. I will be gracious to whom I will be gracious, and I will show mercy on whom I will show mercy."

#### UST

**19** Yahweh replied, "I will let you see how great and powerful I am, and I will tell you clearly that my name is Yahweh. I will act very kindly and be merciful to all those whom I choose."

## Exodus 33:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- face, facial

### Translation Words - UST

- face, facial

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> But Yahweh said, "You may not see my face, for no one can see me and live."

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> But I will not let you see my face because anyone who sees my face will die.

## Exodus 33:21

### See

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Yahweh said, “See, here is a place by me; you will stand on this rock.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> But look! Here is a place close to me where you can stand on a large rock.

## Exodus 33:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- glory, glorious, glorify
- appoint, appointed
- hand

### Translation Words - UST

- glory, glorious, glorify
- appoint, appointed
- hand

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> While my glory passes by, I will put you in a crevice of the rock and cover you with my hand until I have passed by.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> When I come past you in all my power, I will put you in a large hole in the rock, and I will cover your face with my hand until I have passed by.

## Exodus 33:23

### you will see my back

This is because Yahweh will be walking away from Moses.

### but my face will not be seen

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: "but you will not see my face" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [face, facial](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [face, facial](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Then I will take away my hand, and you will see my back, but my face will not be seen."

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> Then I will take my hand away, and you will see my back, but you will not see my face."

## **Exodus 34**

### **Exodus 34 General Notes**

#### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

##### **“He will bring the punishment for the fathers’ sin on their children”**

This phrase does not mean that a child is necessarily punished for the sins of their parents. Many scholars believe that this passage indicates that a parent’s sins will have consequences that will affect their children and grandchildren. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))



## Exodus 34:1

### tablets of stone

“flat slabs of stone.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:18](#)

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, “Cut two tablets of stone like the first tablets. I will write on these tablets the words that were on the first tablets, the tablets that you broke.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, “Cut two slabs of stone that will be like the first slabs, the ones that you broke. Then I will write on them the words that were on the first slabs.

## Exodus 34:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- head

### Translation Words - UST

- head

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Be ready by morning and come up Mount Sinai, and present yourself there to me on the mountain top.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> Get ready tomorrow morning, and come up to the top of Mount Sinai again to talk with me there.

## Exodus 34:3

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### Do not let anyone else be seen anywhere on the mountain

Being seen doing something represents doing that. Alternate translation: "Do not let anyone else be anywhere on the mountain" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### No flocks or herds are even to graze in front of the mountain

"Even flocks or herds are not allowed to come near the mountain to eat."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> No one is to come up with you. Do not let anyone else be seen anywhere on the mountain. No flocks or herds are even to graze in front of the mountain."

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Do not allow anyone to come up with you. I do not want anyone else to be anywhere on the mountain. Do not even allow any sheep or cattle to graze at the base of the mountain."

## Exodus 34:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> So Moses cut two tablets of stone like the first ones, and he got up early in the morning and went up Mount Sinai, as Yahweh had instructed him. Moses carried the tablets of stone in his hand.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> So Moses cut two slabs of stone that were like the first ones. He rose early the next morning, picked up the slabs, and carried them in his hands up to the top of Mount Sinai, as Yahweh had told him.

## Exodus 34:5

### stood with Moses there

“stood with Moses on the mountain”

### he pronounced the name “Yahweh.”

Possible meanings are 1) “he spoke the name ‘Yahweh.’” or 2) “he proclaimed who Yahweh is.” For the second meaning, “name” would represent who God is. (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Yahweh came down in the cloud and stood with Moses there, and he pronounced the name “Yahweh.”

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Then Yahweh came down in the tall cloud and stood with Moses there. Then he pronounced his own name, Yahweh, in front of Moses.

## Exodus 34:6

### Yahweh, Yahweh, God is merciful and gracious

God is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, Yahweh, am God, and I am merciful and gracious" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### abounding in covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness

"always showing covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness"

### abounding in covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness

The abstract nouns "faithfulness" and "trustworthiness" can be stated as "faithful" and "trustworthy." Alternate translation: "always being faithful to my covenant and always being trustworthy" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love](#)
- [true, truth](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love](#)
- [true, truth](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Yahweh passed by before him and proclaimed, "Yahweh, Yahweh, God is merciful and gracious, slow to anger, and abounding in covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness,

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Yahweh passed in front of him and said, "I am Yahweh God. I always act mercifully and kindly toward people and I do not get angry quickly. I truly love people and I do what I promise to do for them.

## Exodus 34:7

### keeping covenant faithfulness for thousands of generations

The abstract noun “faithfulness” can be stated as “faithfully” or “faithful.” See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 20:6](#). Alternate translation: “faithfully loving thousands of generations” or “faithful to his covenant with thousands of generation” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### But he will

Yahweh is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: “But I will” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### he will by no means clear the guilty

Yahweh is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: “I will by no means clear the guilty” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### will by no means clear the guilty

“will certainly not clear the guilty” or “will certainly not say that the guilty are innocent” or “will certainly not free guilty people”

### He will bring the punishment for the fathers’ sin on their children

Punishing people is spoken of as if punishment were an object that someone could bring on people. Alternate translation: “He will punish the children for their fathers’ sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### their children

The word “children” represents descendants. Alternate translation: “their descendants” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#)
- [iniquity](#)
- [iniquity](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#)
- [iniquity](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> keeping covenant faithfulness for thousands of generations, forgiving iniquities, transgressions, and sins. But he will by no means clear the guilty. He will bring the punishment for the fathers’ sin on their children and on their children’s children, as far as the third and fourth generations.”

### UST

<sup>7</sup> I love people for thousands of generations. I forgive people for all kinds of sins. But I will certainly punish those who are guilty. I will punish not only them, but also I will punish their descendants, down to the third and fourth generation.”

- iniquity
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather



## Exodus 34:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- prostrate, worship
- Moses
- earth, earthen, earthly
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### Translation Words - UST

- prostrate, worship
- Moses
- earth, earthen, earthly
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Moses quickly bowed his head to the ground and worshiped.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Moses bowed low down on the ground and worshiped Yahweh.

## Exodus 34:9

### If now I have found favor in your eyes

Here “found favor” is an idiom that means be approved of or that God is pleased with Moses. Here “eyes” are a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing his evaluation. See how you translated this in [Exodus 33:12](#). Alternate translation: “Now If you are pleased with me” or “Now if you approve of me” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### our iniquity and our sin

The words “iniquity” and “sin” mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. Alternate translation: “all our sins” (See: [Doublet](#))

### take us as your inheritance

Something that someone possesses forever is spoken of as if it were something that they had inherited. Alternate translation: “take us as the people that you possess forever” or “accept us as the people who belong to you forever” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then he said, “If now I have found favor in your eyes, my Lord, please go among us, for this people is stubborn. Pardon our iniquity and our sin, and take us as your inheritance.”

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> He said, “My Lord, if you are now pleased with me, I ask that you go with us. These people are very stubborn, but forgive us for all our sins, and accept us as the people who belong to you forever.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- people, people group,
- sin offering
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- people, people group,
- sin offering
- walk, walked

## Exodus 34:10

### your people

Here “your” refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### it is a fearful thing that I am doing with you

A fearful thing is a thing that causes people to be afraid. In this case, people will fear God when they see what he does. Alternate translation: “what I do for you will cause people to fear me” (See: [Idiom](#))

### I am doing with you

Here “you” refers to Moses and the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- miracle, wonder, sign
- covenant
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- cut off
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- miracle, wonder, sign
- covenant
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- cut off
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Yahweh said, “See, I am about to make a covenant. Before all your people, I will do marvels such as have not been done in all the earth nor in any nation. All the people among you will see my deeds, for it is a fearful thing that I am doing with you.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Yahweh replied, “I am about to make a covenant with your people, the Israelite people. As they are watching, I will perform great miracles. They will see miracles that no one has ever done on the earth in any people group. Everyone among your people will see the great things that I, Yahweh, will do. I will do things for you all that will make you fear me.

## Exodus 34:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- pray, prayer
- Amorite
- Jebus, Jebusite
- Perizzite
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- pray, prayer
- Amorite
- Jebus, Jebusite
- Perizzite
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### ULT

**11** Obey what I command you today. I am about to drive out before you the Amorites, Canaanites, Hittites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites.

### UST

**11** Do what I tell you to do today. I am about to make the Amor, Canaan, Heth, Periz, Hiv, and Jebus people groups leave the land.

## Exodus 34:12

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses. Here he tells him what Moses and the people must do.

### they will become a trap among you

People who tempt others to sin are spoken of as if they were a trap.  
Alternate translation: “they will tempt you to sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)

### ULT

**12** Be careful not to make a covenant with the inhabitants of the land where you are going, or they will become a trap among you.

### UST

**12** But be careful that you do not make a covenant to live peacefully with any of the people who live in the land into which you are going because if you do that, you will begin to do the evil things that they do. It will be like falling into a trap.

## Exodus 34:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- cut off

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- cut off

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Instead, you must break down their altars, smash their stone pillars, and cut down their Asherah poles.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> You must tear down their altars, destroy their idols, and cut down the poles that they use to worship Asherah.

## Exodus 34:14

### Yahweh, whose name is Jealous

The word “Jealous” here means that God is concerned to keep his honor. If his people worship other gods, he loses honor, because when his people do not honor him, other people also will not honor him. Alternate translation: “I, Yahweh, always guard my honor” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### whose name is Jealous,

The word “name” here represents God’s character. Alternate translation: “I, Yahweh, who am always jealous” or “I, Yahweh, am always jealous” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)

### ULT

**14** For you must worship no other god, for Yahweh, whose name is Jealous, is a jealous God.

### UST

**14** You must worship only me, and not worship any other god because I, Yahweh, always guard my honor, and I will not allow you to worship any other gods.

## Exodus 34:15

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses how his people are to behave towards outsiders.

### for they prostitute themselves to their gods

God speaks of people worshiping other gods as if they were prostitutes going to other men. Alternate translation: “for they worship other gods” or “because they worship other gods like prostitutes who go to other men” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### you will eat some of his sacrifice

The consequence of eating food that is sacrificed to another god can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “you will eat some of his sacrifice and become guilty of worshiping his gods” or “and you will prostitute yourself to his god by eating some of his sacrifice” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- covenant
- devour
- cut off
- earth, earthen, earthly
- declare, proclaim, announce

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- covenant
- devour
- cut off
- earth, earthen, earthly
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

**15** So be careful not to make a covenant with the inhabitants of the land, for they prostitute themselves to their gods, and they sacrifice to their gods. Then one of them will invite you and you will eat some of his sacrifice,

### UST

**15** Do not make a covenant to live peacefully with any group that lives in that land. When they worship their gods and offer sacrifices to them and invite you to join them, do not join them. If you join them, you will eat the food that they sacrifice to their gods, and you will not be faithful to me. You will be like women who commit adultery, who are not faithful to their husbands.



## Exodus 34:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- God
- God

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- God
- God

### ULT

**16** and then you will even take some of his daughters for your sons, and his daughters will prostitute themselves to their gods, and they will make your sons prostitute themselves to their gods.

### UST

**16** If you take some of their women to be wives for your sons, these women will worship their own gods, and they will also make your sons worship their gods.

## Exodus 34:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Do not make for yourselves gods of molten metal.

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> Do not pour melted metal into molds to make statues to worship.

## Exodus 34:18

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### seven days

"7 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

### in the month of Aviv

This is the name of the first month of the Hebrew calendar. Aviv is during the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. See how you translated "Aviv" in [Exodus 13:4](#). (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [unleavened bread](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [devour](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [unleavened bread](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [devour](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**18** You must keep the Festival of Unleavened Bread. As I commanded you, you must eat bread without yeast for seven days at the fixed time in the month of Aviv, for it was in the month of Aviv you came out from Egypt.

### UST

**18** Each year, during the month of Aviv, celebrate the Festival of Bread with no Yeast. During that festival, for seven days you must not eat bread made with yeast, as I commanded you, because it was in that month that you left Egypt.

## Exodus 34:19

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### Translation Words - ULT

- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### ULT

**19** All the firstborn are mine, even every male firstborn of your cattle, both of oxen and sheep.

### UST

**19** Your firstborn sons and the firstborn male animals of your cattle and sheep and goats belong to me.

## Exodus 34:20

### buy back

Firstborn sons and firstborn donkeys belonged to Yahweh, but Yahweh did not want them sacrificed to Him. Instead, the Israelites were to sacrifice a lamb in their place. This allowed the Israelites to buy the donkeys and sons back from Yahweh.

### No one may appear before me empty-handed

God speaks of the offering as if the person was to carry it in his hands. Alternate translation: "No one may come to me without an offering" or "Everyone who comes to me must bring me an offering" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- donkey, mule
- face, facial
- firstborn

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- donkey, mule
- face, facial
- firstborn

### ULT

**20** You must buy back the firstborn of a donkey with a lamb, but if you do not buy it back, then you must break its neck. You must buy back all the firstborn of your sons. No one may appear before me empty-handed.

### UST

**20** The firstborn of your male donkeys also belong to me. But you may buy them back by offering to me lambs in their place. If you do not do that, you must kill these animals by breaking their necks. You must also buy back your firstborn sons. You must bring an offering to me each time you come to worship me.

## Exodus 34:21

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### Even at plowing time and in harvest

“Even when you are preparing the soil or gathering the crops”

### Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

**21** You may work for six days, but on the seventh day you must rest. Even at plowing time and in harvest, you must rest.

### UST

**21** Each week you may work for six days, but on the seventh day you must rest. Even during the times when you are plowing the ground and harvesting your crops, you must rest on the seventh day.

## Exodus 34:22

### Festival of Ingathering

This festival was also known as the Festival of Shelters or the Festival of Booths. The idea came from the practice of the farmers living in temporary booths, or huts, out in the fields to guard the crop as it ripened. The word “Ingathering” means when they harvest their crop.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- firstfruits
- harvest, reap
- wheat

#### Translation Words - UST

- firstfruits
- harvest, reap
- wheat

#### ULT

**22** You must observe the Festival of Weeks with the first yield of the wheat harvest, and you must observe the Festival of Ingathering at the year's end.

#### UST

**22** Each year celebrate the Festival of Harvest when you begin to harvest the first crop of wheat, and also celebrate the Festival of Finished Harvest when you finish harvesting the grain and fruit.

## Exodus 34:23

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- face, facial

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- face, facial

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Three times a year all your men must appear before Lord Yahweh, the God of Israel.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Three times each year all the men must come to worship me, Yahweh, the God of the Israelite people.



## Exodus 34:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- nation
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- nation
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> For I will drive out nations before you and expand your borders. No one will desire to have your land as their own when you go up to appear before Yahweh your God three times in a year.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> I will make the people groups leave the land, and I will make your territory larger. No one will try to conquer your country when you come to worship Yahweh your God three times each year, during your festivals.

## Exodus 34:25

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### the blood of my sacrifice

The fact that the blood is from an animal can be stated clearly.  
Alternate translation: "the blood of an animal that you sacrifice to me" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### with any yeast

The fact that any yeast would be in bread can be stated clearly.  
Alternate translation: "with bread that has yeast in it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- Passover
- feast, feasting
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Translation Words - UST

- blood
- Passover
- feast, feasting
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### ULT

**25** You must not offer the blood of my sacrifice with any yeast, nor may any meat from the sacrifice at the Festival of the Passover be left over to the morning.

### UST

**25** When you sacrifice an animal to me, do not offer bread that is made with yeast. During the Passover festival, when you sacrifice lambs, do not keep any of the meat until the next morning.

## Exodus 34:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- firstfruits
- firstfruits
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- firstfruits
- firstfruits
- house

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> You must bring the best of the firstfruits from your fields to my house. You must not boil a young goat in its mother's milk."

### UST

<sup>26</sup> You must bring to my tent of meeting the first part of the grain that you harvest every year. When you kill a young animal, do not cook it by boiling it in its mother's milk."

## Exodus 34:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [cut off](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [cut off](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, "Write down these words, for in accordance with these words I have made a covenant with you and with Israel."

### UST

<sup>27</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, "Write down the words that I have told you. By giving you these commands, I have made a covenant with you and with the Israelite people."

## Exodus 34:28

### Moses was there

"Moses was on the mountain"

### forty days

"40 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

### for forty days and nights

"for forty days, both day and night"

### He wrote

"Moses wrote"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Moses was there with Yahweh for forty days and nights; he did not eat any food nor drink any water. He wrote on the tablets the words of the covenant, the Ten Commandments.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> Moses was there on the top of the mountain with Yahweh for forty days and nights. During that time he did not eat or drink anything. He engraved on the stone slabs the words of the Ten Commandments which belonged to Yahweh's covenant.

## Exodus 34:29

### had become radiant

“had started to shine”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

**29** When Moses came down from Mount Sinai with the two tablets of the covenant decrees in his hand, he did not know that the skin of his face had become radiant while speaking with God.

#### UST

**29** When Moses came back down the mountain carrying in his hand the two stone slabs on which were written the Ten Commandments, he did not know that his face was shining.

## Exodus 34:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Aaron
- face, facial

### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Aaron
- face, facial

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> When Aaron and the Israelites saw Moses, the skin of his face was shining, and they were afraid to come near him.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> When Aaron and the Israelite people saw Moses, they were amazed that his face was shining, and they were afraid to come near him.

## Exodus 34:31

### came up to him

“approached him” or “went to him.” They did not go up the mountain.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Moses
- Aaron
- return
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### Translation Words - UST

- Moses
- Moses
- Aaron
- return
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### ULT

**31** But Moses called to them, and Aaron and all the leaders of the community came up to him. Then Moses spoke with them.

#### UST

**31** But Moses called to them, and Aaron and the other Israelite leaders came to him, and he talked with them.



## Exodus 34:32

### all the commands that Yahweh had given him

Telling commands is spoken of as if the commands were objects that could be given. Alternate translation: “all the commands that Yahweh had told him” or “everything that Yahweh had commanded them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> After this, all the people of Israel came up to Moses, and he told them all the commands that Yahweh had given him on Mount Sinai.

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> Afterwards, all the Israelite people came near, and he told them all the commands that Yahweh had given to him on Mount Sinai.

## Exodus 34:33

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- face, facial

### Translation Words - UST

- Moses
- face, facial

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> When Moses had finished speaking with them, he put a veil over his face.

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> When Moses finished talking to the people, he covered his face with a cloth.

## Exodus 34:34

### he would remove

"Moses would remove"

### what he was commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what Yahweh had commanded him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**34** Whenever Moses went before Yahweh to speak with him, he would remove the veil, until he came out. When he came out, he would tell the Israelites what he was commanded to say.

### UST

**34** Whenever Moses entered the tent of meeting to talk with Yahweh, he would remove the cloth. When he came back out, he would always tell the Israelite people everything that Yahweh had commanded him to tell them.

## Exodus 34:35

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Moses
- Moses
- face, facial
- face, facial (2)
- face, facial
- return

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Moses
- Moses
- face, facial
- face, facial (2)
- face, facial
- return

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> When the Israelites saw Moses' face shining, he would put the veil over his face again until he went back in to speak with Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> The Israelite people would see that Moses' face was still shining. Then he would put the cloth back on his face again until the next time that he went to talk with Yahweh.

## **Exodus 35**

### **Exodus 35 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Sacrifice**

All of the people offered sacrifices to Yahweh. This was a form of worship and a sign of repentance from making the golden calf idol. (See: [prostrate](#), [worship](#) and [repent](#), [repentance](#))

## Exodus 35:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Moses assembled all the community of the Israelites and said to them, "These are the things that Yahweh has commanded you to do."

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Moses gathered all the Israelite people together and said to them, "This is what Yahweh has commanded you to do."

## Exodus 35:2

### the seventh day

“day number seven” or “Saturday” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Whoever does any work on that day must be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “You must kill anyone who does work on that day” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Sabbath](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Sabbath](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> On six days work may be done, but for you, the seventh day must be a holy day, a Sabbath day of complete rest, holy to Yahweh. Whoever does any work on that day must be put to death.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Each week you may work for six days, but on the seventh day, you must rest. It is a sacred day, dedicated to Yahweh. Anyone who does any work on the seventh day must be killed.

## Exodus 35:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Sabbath
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### Translation Words - UST

- Sabbath
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> You must not light a fire in any of your homes on the Sabbath day."

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Do not light a fire in your homes on the rest days."



## Exodus 35:4

### General Information:

In Exodus 35:4-9, Moses tells the Israelites to make the things Yahweh commanded him in [Exodus 25:3-7](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Moses spoke to all the community of the Israelites, saying, "This is the thing that Yahweh commanded.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Moses also said to all the Israelite people, "This is what Yahweh has commanded.

## Exodus 35:5

### General Information:

In Exodus 35:4-9, Moses tells the Israelites to make the things Yahweh commanded him in [Exodus 25:3-7](#).

### Take an offering for Yahweh

“Take up a collection for Yahweh”

### all of you who have a willing heart

Here “heart” refers to the person bringing the offering. Alternate translation: “everyone who is willing” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Take an offering for Yahweh, all of you who have a willing heart. Bring an offering to Yahweh—gold, silver, bronze,

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Make offerings to Yahweh. Everyone who wants to should bring to Yahweh an offering. The offerings can be gold, silver, or bronze,

## Exodus 35:6

### General Information:

In Exodus 35:4-9, Moses tells the Israelites to make the things Yahweh commanded him in [Exodus 25:3-7](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- purple

### Translation Words - UST

- purple

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> blue, purple, and scarlet wool and fine linen; goats' hair;

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> fine white linen, blue, purple or red woolen cloth, cloth made from goats' hair,

## Exodus 35:7

### General Information:

In Exodus 35:4-9, Moses tells the Israelites to make the things Yahweh commanded him in [Exodus 25:3-7](#).

### ram skins dyed red and fine leather hides

See how you translated similar phrases in [Exodus 25:5](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

### ULT

7 ram skins dyed red and fine leather hides; acacia wood;

### UST

7 rams' skins that are tanned, fine leather skins, wood from acacia trees,

## Exodus 35:8

### General Information:

In Exodus 35:4-9, Moses tells the Israelites to make the things Yahweh commanded him in [Exodus 25:3-7](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- oil

### Translation Words - UST

- oil

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> oil for the sanctuary lamps, spices for the anointing oil and the fragrant incense,

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> oil for the lamps, spices to put into the olive oil for anointing and to put into the sweet-smelling incense,

## Exodus 35:9

### General Information:

In Exodus 35:4-9, Moses tells the Israelites to make the things Yahweh commanded him in [Exodus 25:3-7](#).

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> onyx stones and other precious stones to be set for the ephod and breastpiece.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> onyx stones or other valuable stones to fasten onto the priest's sacred apron and to put on his sacred chest pouch.

## Exodus 35:10

### General Information:

Moses continues telling the people what God commanded them to do.

### Every skilled man

“Every man with a skill”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [wise men, advisor](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [wise men, advisor](#)

### ULT

**10** Every skilled man among you is to come and make everything that Yahweh has commanded—

### UST

**10** All the skilled workers among you should come and make all the things that Yahweh has commanded—

## Exodus 35:11

### clasps

The clasps fit into the loops to hold the curtains together. See how you translated these in [Exodus 26:6](#).

### bases

These are heavy objects that rest on the ground and keep the object attached to them from moving. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:31](#).

### ULT

**11** the tabernacle with its tent, its covering, its clasps, frames, bars, posts, and bases;

### UST

**11** the sacred tent with its covering, its fasteners, its frames, its crossbars, its posts, and its bases:



## Exodus 35:12

### atonement lid

This is the lid that sits on top of the ark where the atonement offering was made. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:17](#).

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> also the ark with its poles, the atonement lid, and the curtain to conceal it.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> the sacred chest with its poles and its lid; the curtain that will separate the holy place from the very holy place.

## Exodus 35:13

### They brought

“The people of Israel brought”

### bread of the presence

This bread represented the presence of God. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:30](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bread](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bread](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> They brought the table with its poles, all its utensils, and the bread of the presence;

### UST

<sup>13</sup> The workers also made the table with the poles for carrying it and all the things that will be used with the table; the bread to display before God;

## Exodus 35:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- olive

### Translation Words - UST

- olive

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> the lampstand for the lights, with its accessories, its lamps, and the oil for the lamps;

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> the lampstand for the lamps with all the things that will be used to take care of them; the oil for the lamps;

## Exodus 35:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- olive

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- olive

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> the incense altar with its poles, the anointing oil and the fragrant incense; the hanging for the tabernacle entrance;

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> the altar for burning incense and the poles for carrying the altar; the oil for anointing and the sweet-smelling incense; the curtain for the entrance of the sacred tent;

**Exodus 35:16****bronze grate**

This is a frame of crossed bronze bars for holding wood when burning. See how you translated “grate” in [Exodus 27:4](#).

**Translation Words - ULT**

- altar
- bronze

**Translation Words - UST**

- altar
- bronze

**ULT**

**16** the altar for burnt offerings with its bronze grate and its poles and utensils; and the large basin with its base.

**UST**

**16** the altar for offering sacrifices that will be burned and its bronze grating; the poles for carrying the altar and all the things that will be used with it; the washbasin and its base.

## Exodus 35:17

### hangings

These were large curtains made of cloth. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:36](#).

### posts

These were strong pieces of wood set upright and used as supports. See how you translated these in [Exodus 27:10](#).

### bases

These were blocks that had a slot in them to keep the board in place. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:19](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)

### ULT

**17** They brought the hangings for the courtyard with its posts and bases, and the curtain for the courtyard entrance;

### UST

**17** They workers made the curtains to surround the courtyard and the posts and bases for the posts to support the curtains; the curtain for the entrance to the courtyard;

## Exodus 35:18

### tent pegs

sharp pieces of wood or metal used to secure the corners of a tent to the ground. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:19](#).

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> and the tent pegs for the tabernacle and courtyard, together with their ropes.

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> the pegs and ropes for the sacred tent;

## Exodus 35:19

### finely-woven garments

This was clothing made from narrow linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:8](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- priest, priesthood

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- priest, priesthood

#### ULT

**19** They brought the finely-woven garments for serving in the holy place, the holy garments for Aaron the priest and his sons, for them to serve as priests."

#### UST

**19** and the beautiful clothes that Aaron and his sons are to wear when they do their work in the holy place."



## Exodus 35:20

### all the tribes of Israel

This refers to the people in the tribes. Alternate translation: “the people from all the tribes of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

**20** Then all the tribes of Israel left and went away from Moses's presence.

#### UST

**20** Then all the Israelite people returned to their tents.

## Exodus 35:21

### whose heart stirred him up

Here “heart” refers to the person. The heart that responded to God is spoken of as if it were water stirred up by a storm. Alternate translation: “who responded to God” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### whom his spirit made willing

Here “spirit” refers to the person. Alternate translation: “who was willing” or “who wanted to” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [heart](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [freewill offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [heart](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [freewill offering](#)

### ULT

**21** Everyone whose heart stirred him up and whom his spirit made willing came and brought an offering to Yahweh for the construction of the tabernacle, for all the items of service in it, and for the holy garments.

### UST

**21** Everyone who wished to bring an offering to Yahweh did so. They brought some of the things that would be used to make the sacred tent, all the other items that would be used in the rituals, and everything needed to make the sacred clothes for the priests.

## Exodus 35:22

### all who had a willing heart

Here “heart” refers to the person. Alternate translation: “everyone who was willing” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### brooches, earrings, rings, and ornaments

These are different kinds of jewelry.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### ULT

**22** They came, both men and women, all who had a willing heart. They brought brooches, earrings, rings, and ornaments, all kinds of gold jewelry. They all presented offerings of gold as a wave offering to Yahweh.

#### UST

**22** All the men and women who wished to brought gold ornaments, earrings, rings, necklaces, and many other kinds of things made of gold, and they dedicated them to Yahweh.

## Exodus 35:23

### Everyone who had...brought them

For 35:23 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:4-5](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)
- [purple](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)
- [purple](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Everyone who had blue, purple, or scarlet wool, fine linen, goat hair, ram skins dyed red, or fine leather skins brought them.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> Many people who had blue, purple, or red woolen cloth or fine white linen or cloth made from goats' hair, or rams' skins that were tanned, or leather made from fine skins, brought some of these things.

## Exodus 35:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- silver
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- silver
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Everyone making an offering of silver or bronze brought it as an offering to Yahweh, and everyone who had acacia wood for any use in the work brought it.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> All those who had silver or bronze brought them as offerings to Yahweh. All those who had some acacia wood that could be used for any of the work for the people to worship Yahweh brought it.

## Exodus 35:25

### blue, purple, or scarlet wool

Possible meanings are 1) “material that is dyed blue, purple, and scarlet,” probably wool yarn, or 2) “blue, purple and scarlet dye” to dye the linen. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 25:4](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [hand](#)
- [wise men, advisor](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [hand](#)
- [wise men, advisor](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Every skilled woman spun wool with her hands and brought what she had spun—blue, purple, or scarlet wool, or fine linen.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> All the women who were skilled to make cloth brought fine linen thread and blue, purple, or red woolen yarn that they had made.

## Exodus 35:26

### whose hearts stirred them up

Here “hearts” refers to the women. The hearts of the women who responded to God are spoken of as if they were water stirred up by a storm. Alternate translation: “who responded to God” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> All the women whose hearts stirred them up and who had skill spun goats' hair.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> All the women who wanted to made thread from goats' hair.

## Exodus 35:27

### The leaders brought...breastpiece

For 35:27 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:7](#).

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> The leaders brought onyx stones and other gems to be set into the ephod and the breastpiece;

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> All the leaders brought onyx stones and other fine stones to be fastened to Aaron's sacred apron and his sacred chest pouch.



## Exodus 35:28

### they brought spices...fragrant incense

For 35:28 see how you translated many similar words in [Exodus 25:6](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> they brought spices and oil for the lamps, for the anointing oil, and for the fragrant incense.

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> They also brought spices to put into the sweet-smelling incense, and they brought olive oil for the lamps and for the oil for anointing and for putting in the sweet-smelling incense.

## Exodus 35:29

### whose heart was willing

Here “heart” refers to the people. Alternate translation: “who was willing” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [freewill offering](#)
- [freewill offering](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [freewill offering](#)
- [freewill offering](#)

#### ULT

**29** The Israelites brought a freewill offering to Yahweh; every man and woman whose heart was willing brought materials for all the work that Yahweh had commanded through Moses to be made.

#### UST

**29** All the Israelite men and women who wanted to brought these things to offer them to Yahweh for doing the work that he had commanded Moses to do.

## Exodus 35:30

### Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur, from the tribe of Judah

See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:2](#)

#### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- son
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- Moses
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

#### Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- son
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- Moses
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Moses said to the Israelites, “See, Yahweh has called by name on Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur, from the tribe of Judah.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> Moses said to the Israelite people, “Listen carefully. Yahweh has chosen Bezalel son of Uri and grandson of Hur, from the tribe of Judah.

## Exodus 35:31

### He has filled Bezalel with his Spirit

God's Spirit who gave Bezalel the ability to work is spoken of here as if he was something that filled up Bezalel. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### filled Bezalel...craftsmanship

See how you translated many similar words in [Exodus 31:3](#)

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)

#### ULT

**31** He has filled Bezalel with his Spirit, to give him wisdom, understanding, and knowledge, for all kinds of craftsmanship,

#### UST

**31** Yahweh has enabled his Spirit to live in Bezalel, has given him ability and knowledge, and has enabled him to know how to do very skilled work.

## Exodus 35:32

### to make artistic designs...bronze

See how you translated many similar words in [Exodus 31:4](#)

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> to make artistic designs and to work in gold, silver, and bronze;

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> He can engrave skillful designs in gold, silver, and bronze.

## Exodus 35:33

### also to cut and set stones...craftsmanship

See how you translated many similar words in [Exodus 31:5](#)

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> also to cut and set stones and to carve wood—to do all kinds of design and craftsmanship.

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> He can cut jewels and enclose them in tiny gold frames and can carve things from wood and do other skilled work.

## Exodus 35:34

### General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people.

### He has put it in his heart to teach

Here “heart” refers to Bezalel. The ability to teach is spoken of as if it something that could be placed in a heart. Alternate translation: “He gave Bezalel the ability to teach” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Oholiab son of Ahisamak, from the tribe of Dan

“Oholiab” and “Ahisamak” are names of men. See how you translated these names in [Exodus 31:6](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- heart
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- heart
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### ULT

**34** He has put it in his heart to teach, both he and Oholiab son of Ahisamak, from the tribe of Dan.

### UST

**34** Yahweh has also given to him and to Oholiab son of Ahisamak, from the tribe of Dan, the ability to teach their skills to others.

## Exodus 35:35

### filled them with skill

Skill to create beautiful objects is spoken of as if it was something that could fill up a person. Alternate translation: “made them very skillful” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### engravers

a person who cuts designs into a hard material such as wood, stone, or metal

### embroiderers

people who sew designs into cloth

### craftsmen

people who are skilled in making beautiful objects by hand

### weavers

a person who creates cloth using thread

### artistic designers

a person who creates beauty with materials

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)

### ULT

**35** He has filled them with skill to do all kinds of work, to work as craftsmen, as engravers, as embroiderers in blue, purple, and scarlet wool and fine linen, and as weavers. They are craftsmen in all sorts of work, and they are artistic designers.

### UST

**35** He has given to them the ability to do all kinds of work that is done by craftsmen—those who create artistic things, those who make fine white linen, those who embroider designs using blue, purple, or red woolen yarn, and those who make linen cloth. They are able to plan many kinds of artistic work.



## **Exodus 36**

### **Exodus 36 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Tent of meeting**

The tent of meeting, or tabernacle, mentioned in previous chapters is constructed in this chapter. (See: [tabernacle](#))

## Exodus 36:1

### General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people.

### Bezalel

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Oholiab

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:6](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### to whom Yahweh has given skill and ability

Here skill and ability are spoken of as if they are something that Yahweh can place inside a person. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### according to all that Yahweh has commanded

“just as Yahweh has commanded”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [wise men, advisor](#)
- [understand, understanding, thinking](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [wise men, advisor](#)
- [understand, understanding, thinking](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> So Bezalel and Oholiab and every skilled person to whom Yahweh has given skill and ability to know how to do any work in the construction of the holy place are to do the work according to all that Yahweh has commanded.”

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Bezalel and Oholiab will take up this work along with all the other gifted men to whom Yahweh had given skills and the understanding to do all the work needed to build up the sacred tent. These men followed all the instructions that Yahweh gave them.

## Exodus 36:2

### Bezalel

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Oholiab

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:6](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### in whose mind Yahweh had given skill

Here “mind” refers to the person who was made skillful by Yahweh. Alternate translation: “to whom Yahweh had given skill” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### whose heart stirred within him

Here “heart” refers to the person. The heart that responded to God is spoken of as if it were water stirred up by a storm. Alternate translation: “who responded to God” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [wise men, advisor](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [wise men, advisor](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Moses summoned Bezalel, Oholiab, and every skillful person in whose mind Yahweh had given skill, and whose heart stirred within him to come and do the work.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> So Moses called Bezalel and Oholiab and all the other skilled men to whom Yahweh had given special ability and who wanted to do some of the work.

## Exodus 36:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- freewill offering

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- freewill offering

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> They received from Moses all the offerings that the Israelites had brought for constructing the holy place. The people were still bringing freewill offerings every morning to Moses.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Moses gave them all the things that the people had brought as offerings to Yahweh for making the sacred tent. But the people continued bringing more things every morning.

## Exodus 36:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> So all the skilled people working on the holy place came from the work that they had been doing.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> As a result, the men who were doing various things to make the sacred tent came to Moses, each of them what Yahweh commanded them.

## Exodus 36:5

### The craftsmen told Moses...commanded us to do."

The can be stated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "The craftsmen told Moses that the people were bringing much more than enough for doing the work that Yahweh has commanded them to do" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### The craftsmen told Moses

"The men working on the sanctuary told Moses"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> The craftsmen told Moses, "The people are bringing much more than enough for doing the work that Yahweh has commanded us to do."

### UST

<sup>5</sup> So the craftsmen said to Moses, "The people are bringing more than we need to do the work that Yahweh has commanded us!"

## Exodus 36:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Moses
- people, people group,
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Moses
- people, people group,
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So Moses instructed that no one in the camp should bring any more offerings for the construction of the holy place. Then the people stopped bringing these gifts.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> So Moses gave them a message that others proclaimed throughout the camp, saying "No one should bring anything more as an offering to make the sacred tent!" When the people heard that, they did not bring anything more.

## Exodus 36:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> They had more than enough materials for all the work.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> What they had already brought was enough to do all the work. In fact, it was more than was needed!



## Exodus 36:8

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:1](#).

### ten curtains made from fine linen

These curtains are sheets of cloth woven and sewed together so that they can hang to form a wall or tent.

### Bezalel

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [wise men, advisor](#)
- [purple](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [wise men, advisor](#)
- [purple](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> So all the craftsmen among them constructed the tabernacle with ten curtains made from fine linen and blue, purple, and scarlet wool with the designs of cherubim. This was the work of Bezalel, the very skilled craftsman.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> All the most skilled men among the workmen made the sacred tent. They made it from ten strips of fine linen, and they carefully embroidered it using blue, purple, and red woolen yarn to make figures that resembled the winged creatures. Bezalel designed all this.

## Exodus 36:9

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:2](#).

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> The length of each curtain was twenty-eight cubits, the width four cubits. All the curtains were of the same size.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Each strip was twelve and four-fifths meters long and one and four-fifths meters wide.

## Exodus 36:10

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:3](#).

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Bezalel joined five curtains to each other, and the other five curtains he also joined to each other.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> Bezalel and his men sewed five strips together to make one set, and they sewed the other five strips together to make the other set.

## Exodus 36:11

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:4](#).

### He made

Here “he” refers to Bezalel, but it includes all the men working on the sanctuary.

### loops of blue

loops of blue cloth

### curtain

These were large, heavy sections of woven cloth that were used to form the covering and dividing walls of the tabernacle. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:1](#).

### ULT

**11** He made loops of blue along the outer edge of the end curtain of one set, and he did the same along the outer edge of the end curtain in the second set.

### UST

**11** For each set, Bezalel and his men made loops of blue cloth and fastened them on the outer edge of the strip, at the end of each set.

## Exodus 36:12

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:5](#).

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> He made fifty loops on the first curtain and fifty loops on the edge of the end curtain in the second set. So the loops were opposite to each another.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> They put 50 loops on the edge of the first set, and 50 loops on the edge of the second set.

## Exodus 36:13

### General Information

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:6](#).

### fifty gold clasps

"50 gold clasps" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### ULT

**13** He made fifty gold clasps and joined the curtains together with them so that the tabernacle became united.

### UST

**13** They made 50 gold fasteners to attach both of the sets together. In that way, the inside of the sacred tent was as though it were one piece.

## Exodus 36:14

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:7](#).

### made eleven

“made 11” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Bezalel made curtains of goat hair for a tent over the tabernacle; he made eleven of these curtains.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> Bezalel and his men made a cover for the sacred tent from 11 pieces of cloth made from goats' hair.

## Exodus 36:15

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:8](#).

### thirty cubits

“30 cubits” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> The length of each curtain was thirty cubits, and the width of each curtain was four cubits. Each of the eleven curtains was of the same size.

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> Each piece of cloth was eighteen and one-third meters long and one and four-fifths meters wide.



## Exodus 36:16

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:9](#).

#### ULT

**16** He joined five curtains to each other and the other six curtains to each other.

#### UST

**16** They sewed five of these pieces of cloth together to make one set, and they sewed the other six pieces of cloth together to make another set.

## Exodus 36:17

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:10](#).

### fifty loops

“50 loops” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### ULT

**17** He made fifty loops on the edge of the end curtain of the first set, and fifty loops along the edge of the end curtain that joined the second set.

#### UST

**17** They made one hundred loops of blue cloth. They fastened fifty of them to the outer edge of the one set and they fastened fifty to the outer edge of the other set.

## Exodus 36:18

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:11](#).

### fifty bronze clasps

“50 bronze clasps” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bronze](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bronze](#)

### ULT

**18** Bezalel made fifty bronze clasps to join the tent together so that it might be one piece.

### UST

**18** Bezalel and his men made 50 bronze clasps and joined the two sets together with them. In that way it formed one cover.

## Exodus 36:19

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:14](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

### ULT

**19** He made for the tabernacle a covering of ram skins dyed red, another covering of fine leather to go above that.

### UST

**19** They made two more covers for the sacred tent. They made one from rams' skins that had been tanned, and they made the top cover from goatskin leather.

## Exodus 36:20

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:15](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Bezalel made vertical frames out of acacia wood for the tabernacle.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> Bezalel and his men made forty-eight frames from acacia wood and set them up to support the covers for the sacred tent.

## Exodus 36:21

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:16](#).

### ten cubits...one and a half cubits

"10 cubits...1.5 cubits" (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Numbers and Fractions](#))

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> The length of each frame was ten cubits, and the width of each frame was one and a half cubits.

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> Each frame was four and three-fifths meters long and three-quarters of a meter wide.

## Exodus 36:22

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:17](#).

### two wooden pegs for joining

A wooden peg is a small piece of wood sticking out beyond the end of the board so it can be secured.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Each frame had two wooden pegs for joining the frames together. He did this for all the frames of the tabernacle.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> They made two projections at the bottom of each frame. These were for fastening the frames to the bases underneath them. Each frame had these projections.

## Exodus 36:23

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:18](#).

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> He made the frames for the tabernacle in this way: twenty frames for the south side.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> The skilled workmen made twenty frames for the south side of the sacred tent.



## Exodus 36:24

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:19](#).

### forty silver bases

"40 silver bases" (See: [Numbers](#))

### twenty frames

"20 frames" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Bezalel made forty silver bases to go under the twenty frames. There were two bases under one frame to join the frames together, and also two bases under each of the other frames to join frames together.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Bezalel and his men made forty silver bases to go underneath them. Two bases went under each frame. The projections on each frame fit into these bases.

## Exodus 36:25

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:20](#).

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> For the second side of the tabernacle, on the north side, he made twenty frames

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> Similarly, they made twenty frames for the north side of the sacred tent.

## Exodus 36:26

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:21](#).

### and so on

There will be two bases under each and every frame.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [silver](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> and their forty silver bases. There were two bases under the first frame, two bases under the next frame, and so on.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> They also made forty silver bases for them with two bases under each frame.

## Exodus 36:27

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:22](#).

### on the west

on the side that is on the west

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> For the back of the tabernacle on the west, Bezalel made six frames.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> For the rear of the sacred tent, on the west side, Bezalel and his men made six frames.

## Exodus 36:28

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:23](#).

### for the back corners

for the corners at the rear of the tabernacle

#### ULT

**28** He made two frames for the back corners of the tabernacle.

#### UST

**28** They also made two extra frames, one for each corner of the rear of the sacred tent, to provide extra support.

## Exodus 36:29

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:24](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [head](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> These frames were separate at the bottom, but joined at the top in one ring. He made two of them in this way for the two corners.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> The two corner frames were separate from each other at the bottom but joined together at the top. At the top of each of the two corner frames, Bezalel and his men fastened a gold ring for holding the crossbar.

## Exodus 36:30

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:25](#).

### sixteen bases in all

“16 bases in all” (See: [Numbers](#))

### and so on

There will be two bases under each and every frame.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [silver](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> There were eight frames, together with their silver bases. There were sixteen bases in all, two bases under the first frame, two bases under the next frame, and so on.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> In that way, for the rear of the sacred tent there were eight frames, and there were 16 bases, two bases under each frame.

## Exodus 36:31

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:26](#).

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Bezalel made crossbars of acacia wood—five for the frames of the one side of the tabernacle,

#### UST

<sup>31</sup> Bezalel and his men made 15 crossbars from acacia wood. Five of them were for the frames on the north side of the sacred tent,



## Exodus 36:32

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:27](#).

### to the west

on the west side

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> five crossbars for the frames of the other side of the tabernacle, and five crossbars for the frames for the back side of the tabernacle to the west.

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> five for the south side, and five for the frames at the rear of the sacred tent, the west side.

## Exodus 36:33

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:28](#).

### from end to end

from one side of the tabernacle to the other side

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> He made the crossbar in the center of the frames, that is, halfway up, to reach from end to end.

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> The workmen made crossbars on the north, south, and west sides of the sacred tent and fastened them to the middle of the frames. The two long crossbars extended from one end of the sacred tent to the other, and the crossbar on the west side extended from one side of the sacred tent to the other.

## Exodus 36:34

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:29](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

**34** He covered the frames with gold. He made their rings of gold, for them to serve as holders for the crossbars, and he covered the bars with gold.

### UST

**34** The workmen covered the frames with gold and fastened gold rings to the poles. They then put the crossbars into the rings. They also covered the crossbars with gold.

## Exodus 36:35

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:31](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- purple

### Translation Words - UST

- purple

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Bezalel made the curtain of blue, purple, and scarlet wool, and of fine linen, with designs of cherubim, the work of a skillful workman.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> Bezalel and his men made a curtain from fine white linen. Skilled craftsmen embroidered it with blue, purple, and red woolen yarn, making designs to represent the winged creatures.

## Exodus 36:36

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:32](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- silver
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

### ULT

**36** He made for the curtain four pillars of acacia wood, and he covered them with gold. He also made gold hooks for the pillars, and he cast for them four silver bases.

### UST

**36** They hung the curtain from four posts that were made from acacia wood and covered with gold. They set each post in a silver base.

## Exodus 36:37

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:36](#).

### He made

Here "he" refers to Bezalel and those working for him. "Bezalel and his men made"

### a hanging

a curtain

### Translation Words - ULT

- purple

### Translation Words - UST

- purple

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> He made a hanging for the tent entrance. It was made of blue, purple, and scarlet wool, using fine linen, the work of an embroiderer.

### UST

<sup>37</sup> Bezalel and his men made a curtain to cover the entrance of the sacred tent. They made it from fine linen, and a skilled weaver embroidered it with blue, purple, and red woolen yarn.

## Exodus 36:38

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:37](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [head](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

**38** He also made the hanging's five pillars with hooks. He covered their tops and their rods with gold. Their five bases were made of bronze.

### UST

**38** To support this curtain, they also made five posts from acacia wood and fastened gold clasps to them. They covered the posts and their rods with gold and made a bronze base for each of those posts.

## **Exodus 37**

### **Exodus 37 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **The ark of the covenant**

The ark, mentioned in previous chapters, is constructed in this chapter. There are other furnishings of the tabernacle that are also produced in this chapter. (See: [tabernacle](#))



## Exodus 37:1

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:10](#).

### Bezalel

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### two and a half cubits...one cubit and a half

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “2.5 cubits...1.5 cubits” or “115 centimeters...69 centimeters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Fractions](#))

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Bezalel made the ark of acacia wood. Its length was two and a half cubits; its width was one cubit and a half; and its height was one cubit and a half.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then Bezalel and his men made the sacred chest from acacia wood. It was one meter long, three-quarters of a meter wide, and three-quarters of a meter high.

## Exodus 37:2

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:11](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> He covered it inside and out with pure gold and made for it a border of gold around its top.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> They covered it with pure gold inside and outside the chest, and they made a gold border around the top of it.

## Exodus 37:3

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:12](#).

### its four feet

These four pieces of wood that supported the ark are spoken of as if they were human or animal feet. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> He cast four rings of gold for its four feet, with two rings on one side of it, and two rings on the other side.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> They made four rings from gold and fastened them to the legs of the chest. They put two rings on each side of the chest.

## Exodus 37:4

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:13](#).

### He made

Though “he” refers to Bezalel, “he” may include all of the workers who assisted him.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> He made poles of acacia wood and covered them with gold.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> They made two poles from acacia wood and covered them with gold.

## Exodus 37:5

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:14](#).

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> He put the poles into the rings on the ark's sides, in order to carry the ark.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> They put the poles into the rings on the sides of the chest, in order that Levites could carry the chest using the poles.

## Exodus 37:6

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:17](#).

### two and a half cubits...one and a half cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “2.5 cubits...1.5 cubits” or “115 centimeters...69 centimeters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Fractions](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> He made an atonement lid of pure gold. Its length was two and a half cubits, and its width was one and a half cubits.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> They made a lid for the chest. It also was one meter long and three-quarters of a meter wide.

## Exodus 37:7

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:18](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Bezalel made two cherubim of hammered gold for the two ends of the atonement lid.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Bezalel and his men made two winged creatures from hammered gold, to put them on the two ends of the chest's lid.

## Exodus 37:8

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:19](#).

### They were made as one piece

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "He made them as one piece" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> One cherub was for one end of the atonement lid, and other cherub was for the other end. They were made as one piece with the atonement lid.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> They put one creature at each end of the chest, and they joined the gold of the creatures to the gold of the lid so that the creatures were one piece with the lid.



## Exodus 37:9

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:20](#).

### The cherubim spread out their wings upward and overshadowed

Bezalel placed the statues of the cherubim as if they were real cherubim which were spreading their wings and overshadowing the atonement lid. Alternate translation: “They placed the winged creatures so that their wings touched each other and spread out over” (See: [Personification](#))

### The cherubim faced one another and looked toward

“The faces of the cherubim were towards each other, and they looked toward”

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- face, facial
- face, facial

### Translation Words - UST

- brother
- face, facial
- face, facial

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> The cherubim spread out their wings upward and overshadowed the atonement lid with them. The cherubim faced one another and looked toward the center of the atonement lid.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> They placed the winged creatures so that their wings touched each other and spread out over the lid. The creatures faced each other, looking toward the lid's center.

## Exodus 37:10

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:23](#).

### two cubits...one cubit...one and a half cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "2 cubits...1 cubit...1.5 cubits" or "92 centimeters...46 centimeters...69 centimeters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Fractions](#))

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Bezalel made the table of acacia wood. Its length was two cubits, its width was one cubit, and its height was one and a half cubits.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> Bezalel and his men made a table from acacia wood. It was one meter long, one-half meter wide, and three-quarters of a meter high.

## Exodus 37:11

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:24](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- clean, wash
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- clean, wash
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

#### ULT

**11** He covered it with pure gold and put a border of pure gold around the top.

#### UST

**11** They covered it with pure gold, and they put a gold border around it.

## Exodus 37:12

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:25](#).

### handbreadth

This was the width of a man's hand with fingers spread out. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> He made a surrounding frame for it one handbreadth wide, with a surrounding border of gold for the frame.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> They made a rim all around it, four-fifths of a meter wide. Then they put a gold border around the rim.

## Exodus 37:13

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:26](#).

### the four feet

These four pieces of wood that supported the ark are spoken of as if they were human or animal feet. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### ULT

**13** He cast for it four rings of gold and attached the rings to the four corners, where the four feet were.

### UST

**13** They made four rings from gold and fastened the rings to the four corners of the table, one ring close to each leg of the table.

## Exodus 37:14

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:27](#).

### The rings were attached

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Bezalel attached the rings" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)

### ULT

**14** The rings were attached to the frame to provide places for the poles, in order to carry the table.

### UST

**14** Bezalel and his men fastened the rings to the table near the rim.

## Exodus 37:15

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:28](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> He made the poles out of acacia wood and covered them with gold, in order to carry the table.

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> They made two poles from acacia wood and covered them with gold. They then inserted the poles for carrying the table into the rings.

## Exodus 37:16

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:29](#).

### dishes, spoons, the bowls, and pitchers to be used to pour out the offerings

It is only the bowls and pitchers that are used to pour out the offerings. Alternate translation: “plates and cups, and also the jars and bowls which the priests will use for pouring out the offerings” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)
- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

**16** He made the objects that would be on the table—the dishes, spoons, the bowls, and pitchers to be used to pour out the offerings. He made them out of pure gold.

### UST

**16** They also made from pure gold all the things for the table—the plates, the cups, the jars and the bowls to be used when the priests poured out wine to offer to Yahweh.



## Exodus 37:17

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:31](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

### Its cups, its leafy bases, and its flowers were all made of one piece with it

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "He made the cups, its leafy bases, and its flowers as one piece with the lampstand" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

**17** He made the lampstand of pure hammered gold. He made the lampstand with its base and shaft. Its cups, its leafy bases, and its flowers were all made of one piece with it.

### UST

**17** Bezalel and his men made the lampstand from pure gold. Its base and shaft were hammered from one large lump of gold. The cups for holding the oil, the flower buds and the petals that decorated the branches of the lamp, the base, and the shaft were all hammered from one big lump of gold.

## Exodus 37:18

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:32](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

### ULT

**18** Six branches extended out from its sides—three branches extended from one side, and three branches of the lampstand extended from the other side.

### UST

**18** There were six branches on the lampstand, three on each side of the shaft.

## Exodus 37:19

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:33](#).

### three cups made like almond blossoms

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he made the 3 cups look like almond blossoms" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### almond blossoms

An almond blossom is a white or pink flower with five petals that grows on an almond tree.

### ULT

**19** The first branch had three cups made like almond blossoms, with a leafy base and a flower, and three cups made like almond blossoms in the other branch, with a leafy base and a flower. It was the same for all six branches extending out from the lampstand.

### UST

**19** Each of the six branches had on it three things that looked like almond blossoms. These things also had flower buds and flower petals.

## Exodus 37:20

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:34](#).

### there were four cups made like almond blossoms

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "there were 4 cups which Bezalel made to look like almond blossoms" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> On the lampstand itself, the central shaft, there were four cups made like almond blossoms, with their leafy bases and the flowers.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> On the shaft of the lampstand there were four gold cups that also looked like almond blossoms, each one with flower buds and flower petals.

## Exodus 37:21

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:35](#).

### made as one piece with it

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which he made as one piece with the lampstand” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> There was a leafy base under the first pair of branches—made as one piece with it, and a leafy base under the second pair of branches—also made as one piece with it. In the same way there was a leafy base under the third pair of branches, made as one piece with it. It was the same for all six branches extending out from the lampstand.

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> On each side, beneath and extending from each branch, there was one flower bud.

## Exodus 37:22

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:36](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Their leafy bases and branches were all one piece with it, one beaten piece of work of pure gold.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> All these flower buds and branches, along with the shaft, were hammered from one large lump of pure gold.

## Exodus 37:23

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:37-38](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

### tongs

This is a tool made from two sticks of wood or metal connected at one end and used for picking up objects.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Bezalel made the lampstand and its seven lamps, its tongs and their trays of pure gold.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Bezalel and his men also made seven small cups for holding oil. They made from pure gold the tongs for removing the burned wicks and the trays in which to put the burned wicks.

## Exodus 37:24

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:39](#).

### one talent

“33 kilograms” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> He made the lampstand and its accessories with one talent of pure gold.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> They used thirty-three kilograms of pure gold to make the lampstand and all the things that the priests would use to take care of it.



## Exodus 37:25

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 30:1-2](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

### cubit

A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Its horns were made as one piece with it

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "He made the horns as one piece with the altar" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar

### Translation Words - UST

- altar

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Bezalel made the incense altar. He made it with acacia wood. Its length was one cubit, and its width one cubit. It was square, and its height was two cubits. Its horns were made as one piece with it.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Bezalel and his men made the altar for burning incense from acacia wood. It was square, one-half meter on each side and one meter high. They made a projection that looked like a horn on each of the top corners. The projections were carved from the same block of wood as the altar.

## Exodus 37:26

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 30:3](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> He covered the incense altar with pure gold—its top, its sides, and its horns. He also made a surrounding border of gold for it.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> They covered the top and the four sides, including the projections, with pure gold. They put a gold border around the altar near the top.

## Exodus 37:27

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 30:4](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

### to be attached to it

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "which they attached to the altar" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gold, golden](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gold, golden](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> He made two golden rings to be attached to it under its border on its two opposite sides. The rings were holders for poles to carry the altar.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> Bezalel and his men made two gold rings for carrying the altar. Then they attached them to the altar below the border, one on each side of the altar. The poles for carrying the altar fit into those rings.

## Exodus 37:28

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 30:5](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> He made the poles of acacia wood, and he covered them with gold.

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> They made those two poles from acacia wood and covered them with gold.

## Exodus 37:29

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 30:25](#).

### fragrant incense

See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:6](#).

### the work of a perfumer

A perfumer is skilled in mixing spices and oils.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [clean](#), [wash](#)
- [olive](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [clean](#), [wash](#)
- [olive](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> He made the holy anointing oil and the pure fragrant incense, the work of a perfumer.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> They also made the sacred oil for anointing and the pure sweet-smelling incense. A skilled perfumer mixed the incense together.

## **Exodus 38**

### **Exodus 38 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **The altar**

The altar is constructed in this chapter. There are other furnishings of the tabernacle that are also produced in this chapter. (See: [tabernacle](#))

#### **Materials**

The list of materials being used is intended to give the reader an understanding of the scale of the tabernacle. It should fill the reader with awe concerning the power of Yahweh. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Exodus 38:1

### General Information

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:1](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

### cubits

One cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [altar](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Bezalel made the altar for burnt offerings of acacia wood. It was five cubits long and five cubits wide—a square—and three cubits high.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Bezalel and his men made the altar for burning sacrifices out of acacia wood. It was square, two and one-third meters on each side, and it was one and two-fifths meters high.

## Exodus 38:2

### General Information

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:2](#).

### The horns were made of one piece

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "He made the horns as one piece" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bronze](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bronze](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> He made extensions of its four corners shaped like ox horns. The horns were made of one piece with the altar, and he covered it with bronze.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> They made a projection that looked like a horn on each of the top corners. The projections were carved from the same block of wood from which the altar was made. They covered the whole altar with bronze.



## Exodus 38:3

### General Information

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:3](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [altar](#)
- [bronze](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [bronze](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> He made all the equipment for the altar—pots for ashes, shovels, basins, meat forks, and firepans. He made all this equipment with bronze.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> They made the pans in which to put the ashes from the animal sacrifices. They also made the shovels for cleaning out the ashes. They made the basins and forks for turning the meat as it cooked, and buckets for carrying hot coals. They made all of these things from bronze.

## Exodus 38:4

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:4](#) and [Exodus 27:5](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

### to be placed under the ledge

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "which they placed under the ledge" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bronze](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bronze](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> He made a grate for the altar, a network of bronze to be placed under the ledge, halfway down to the bottom.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> They also made a bronze grate to hold the wood and burning coals. They put the grate under the rim that was around the altar. They made it so that it was inside the altar, halfway down.

## Exodus 38:5

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:4](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- bronze
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- bronze
- house

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> He cast four rings for the four corners of the bronze grate, as holders for the poles.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> They made bronze rings in which to put the poles for carrying the altar, and fastened them to each of the corners of the altar.

## Exodus 38:6

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:6](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bronze](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bronze](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Bezalel made poles of acacia wood and covered them with bronze.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> They made the poles from acacia wood and covered them with bronze.

## Exodus 38:7

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:7-8](#).

### planks

a long, flat piece of wood that is thicker than a board

### Translation Words - ULT

- [altar](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> He put the poles through the rings on the sides of the altar, to carry it. He made the altar hollow, out of planks.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> They put the poles for carrying the altar through the rings on each side of the altar. The altar was like an open box, made from boards of acacia wood.

## Exodus 38:8

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

### large bronze basin with a bronze stand

The stand supported the bronze basin. See how you translated this in [Exodus 30:18](#).

### He made the basin out of mirrors

The bronze came from the mirrors. This can be stated clearly in the translation. Alternate translation: "The bronze for the basin came from the mirrors" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### mirrors

A mirror is a piece of polished metal or glass that reflects an image.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [feast, feasting](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [bronze](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [feast, feasting](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [bronze](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Bezalel made the large bronze basin with a bronze stand. He made the basin out of mirrors belonging to the women who served at the entrance to the tent of meeting.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Bezalel and his men made the washbasin and its base from bronze. The bronze was from the mirrors that belonged to the women who worked at the entrance of the sacred tent.

## Exodus 38:9

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:9](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

### one hundred

"100" (See: [Numbers](#))

### cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> He also made the courtyard. The hangings on the south side of the courtyard were of fine linen, one hundred cubits long.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Around the sacred tent Bezalel and his helpers made a courtyard. To form the courtyard, they made curtains of fine white linen. On the south side, the curtain was forty-five and three-quarters meters long.

## Exodus 38:10

### General Information

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:10](#).

### twenty

"20" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [bronze](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [silver](#)
- [bronze](#)

### ULT

**10** The hangings had twenty posts, with twenty bronze bases. There were hooks attached to the posts, as well as silver rods.

### UST

**10** To support the curtain, they made twenty bronze posts and twenty bronze bases, one for under each post. To fasten the curtains to the posts, they made silver hooks, and they made metal rods covered with silver.



## Exodus 38:11

### General Information

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:11](#).

### one hundred...twenty

“100...20” (See: [Numbers](#))

### cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [bronze](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [silver](#)
- [bronze](#)

### ULT

**11** Likewise along the north side, there were hangings one hundred cubits long with twenty posts, twenty bronze bases, hooks attached to the posts, and silver rods.

### UST

**11** They made the same kind of curtains, posts, bases and hooks for the north side of the courtyard.

## Exodus 38:12

### General Information

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:12](#).

### fifty...ten

"50...10" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [silver](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> The hangings of the west side were fifty cubits long, with ten posts and bases. The hooks and rods of the posts were silver.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> On the west side of the courtyard, they made a curtain twenty-three meters long. They also made ten posts to support the curtains and ten bases, with silver hooks and metal rods covered with silver.

## Exodus 38:13

### General Information

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:13](#).

#### **fifty**

“50” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### **cubits**

A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

#### **ULT**

**13** The courtyard was also fifty cubits long on the east side.

#### **UST**

**13** On the east side, where the entrance is, the courtyard was twenty-three meters wide.

## Exodus 38:14

### General Information

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:14](#).

### fifteen...three

"15...3" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> The hangings for one side of the entrance were fifteen cubits long. They had three posts with three bases.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> On one side of the entrance, Bezalel and his men made a curtain about seven meters wide with three posts and three bases.

## Exodus 38:15

### General Information

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:15](#).

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> On the other side of the entrance of the courtyard were also hangings fifteen cubits long, with three posts and three bases.

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> On the other side of the entrance, they made a curtain about seven meters wide with three posts and three bases.

## Exodus 38:16

### All the hangings around the courtyard were made of fine linen

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Bezalel and the workers made all the hangings around the courtyard with fine linen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> All the hangings around the courtyard were made of fine linen.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> They made all the curtains around the courtyard from fine linen.

## Exodus 38:17

### General Information

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:17](#).

### The bases for the posts were made of bronze

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Bezalel and the workers made the bases for the posts out of bronze" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### The hooks and rods for the posts were made of silver, and the covering for the tops of the posts was also made of silver

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They made the hooks, the rods for the posts, and the covering for the tops of the posts out of silver" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### All the courtyard posts were covered with silver

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They covered the courtyard posts with silver" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#) (2)
- [head](#)
- [bronze](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#) (2)
- [head](#)
- [bronze](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> The bases for the posts were made of bronze. The hooks and rods for the posts were made of silver, and the covering for the tops of the posts was also made of silver. All the courtyard posts were covered with silver.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> All the posts around the courtyard were made of bronze, but they covered the tops with silver. They connected the posts with metal rods that they covered with silver. They also made the clasps and hooks with silver.

## Exodus 38:18

### General Information

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:16](#).

### twenty...five

"20...5" (See: [Numbers](#))

### cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### The curtain was made of

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They made the curtain out of" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)
- [purple](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)
- [purple](#)

### ULT

**18** The curtain at the courtyard gate was twenty cubits long. The curtain was made of blue, purple, and scarlet linen, fine twined linen, and was twenty cubits long. It was twenty cubits in length and five cubits in height, like the courtyard curtains.

### UST

**18** For the entrance of the courtyard, they made a curtain from fine white linen, and a skilled weaver embroidered it with blue, purple, and red woolen yarn. The curtain was nine meters long and two and one-third meters high, just like the other curtains around the courtyard.



## Exodus 38:19

### General Information

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:17](#).

#### four

"4" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### The covering for their tops and its rods were made of silver

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They made the covering for the tops of the posts and their rods out of silver" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [head](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [column, pillar](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [head](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [column, pillar](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> It had four bronze bases and silver hooks. The covering for their tops and its rods were made of silver.

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> All the curtains were made of fine linen. They were supported by four posts, and under each post was a base made of bronze. All the posts around the courtyard were connected with metal rods covered with silver. The clasps were made of silver, and the tops of the posts were covered with silver.

## Exodus 38:20

### General Information

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:19](#).

### All the tent pegs for the tabernacle and courtyard were made of bronze

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They made all of the tent pegs for the tabernacle and courtyard out of bronze" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bronze](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bronze](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> All the tent pegs for the tabernacle and courtyard were made of bronze.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> All the tent pegs to support the sacred tent and the curtains around the courtyard were made of bronze.

## Exodus 38:21

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

### as it was taken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "which Moses instructed the Levites to write down" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Ithamar

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this name in [Exodus 6:23](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> This is the inventory of the tabernacle, the tabernacle of the covenant decrees, as it was taken following Moses' instructions. It was the work of the Levites under the direction of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Here is a list of the amounts of metal used to make the sacred tent. Moses told some men from the tribe of Levi to count all the materials used and write down the amounts. Ithamar son of Aaron the priest, supervised those men.

## Exodus 38:22

### Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur

“Bezalel” and “uri” are the name of men. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Yahweh had commanded Moses

“everything that Yahweh told Moses to do”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur, from the tribe of Judah, made everything that Yahweh had commanded Moses.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> Bezalel son of Uri and grandson of Hur made all the things that Yahweh had commanded Moses to make.

## Exodus 38:23

### Oholiab son of Ahisamak

“Oholiab” and “Ahisamak” are names of men. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:6](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### an engraver, as a skillful workman, and as an embroiderer

“as a skilled engraver and embroiderer”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Oholiab son of Ahisamak, from the tribe of Dan, worked with Bezalel as an engraver, as a skillful workman, and as an embroiderer in blue, purple, and scarlet wool, and in fine linen.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> Bezalel's helper was Oholiab son of Ahisamak, from the tribe of Dan. Oholiab was a skilled engraver who made artistic things. He embroidered designs using blue, purple, and red woolen yarn, and linen.

## Exodus 38:24

### All the gold that was used for the project

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "All the gold that the people used for the project" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### twenty-nine talents

A talent is about 33 kilograms. Alternate translation: "29 talents" or "about 960 kilograms" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

### 730 shekels

A shekel is 11 grams. Alternate translation: "seven hundred and thirty shekels" or "about 8 kilograms." (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

### measured by the standard of the sanctuary shekel

There were evidently shekels of more than one weight at the time. This specified which one was to be used. See how you translated this in [Exodus 30:13](#). (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> All the gold that was used for the project, in all the work connected with the holy place—the gold from the wave offering—was twenty-nine talents and 730 shekels, measured by the standard of the sanctuary shekel.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> All the gold that was used to make the sacred tent weighed 965 kilograms. They used the official standard when they weighed the gold.

## Exodus 38:25

### one hundred talents

A talent is about 33 kilograms. Alternate translation: “100 talents” or “about 330 kilograms” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

### 1,775 shekels

A shekel is 11 grams. “one thousand seven hundred and seventy-five shekels” or “about 20 kilograms” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

### The silver given by the community

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The silver which the community gave” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [silver](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [silver](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> The silver given by the community weighed one hundred talents and 1,775 shekels, according to the sanctuary shekel,

### UST

<sup>25</sup> All the silver that the people contributed when the leaders took the census weighed about 3,320 kilograms. They also used the official standard when they weighed the silver.

## Exodus 38:26

### one beka

A beka is 1/2 a shekel. (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### half a shekel

A shekel is 11 grams. Alternate translation: “1/2 a shekel” or “five and a half grams” or “5 1/2 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Fractions](#))

### This figure was reached on the basis of every person who was counted in the census

Every man who was 20 years old or older was included in the census and was required to give half a shekel.

### twenty years old

“20 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> or one beka per man, which is half a shekel, measured by the sanctuary shekel. This figure was reached on the basis of every person who was counted in the census, those twenty years old and older—603,550 men in all.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> All the men who were at least twenty years old were counted, and they each paid the required amount. That was a total of 603,550 men.



## Exodus 38:27

### One hundred talents of silver were cast

A talent is about 33 kilograms. Alternate translation: “The workers cast 100 talents of silver” or “The workers cast 3,300 kilograms of silver” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### One hundred talents

“100 talents” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> One hundred talents of silver were cast for the bases of the holy place and the curtain's bases—one hundred bases, one talent for each base.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> They used 33 kilograms of silver for making each of the one hundred bases to put under the posts to support the curtains of the sacred tent, for a total of 3,300 kilograms in all.

## Exodus 38:28

### 1,775 shekels

“one thousand seven hundred and seventy-five shekels” (See: [Numbers](#))

### shekels

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

### Bezalel

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [head](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> With the remaining 1,775 shekels of silver, Bezalel made the hooks for the posts, covered the tops of the posts, and made the rods for them.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> Bezalel and his helpers used the twenty kilograms of silver that was not used for the bases to make the rods and the hooks for the posts and to cover the tops of the posts.

## Exodus 38:29

### seventy talents and 2,400 shekels

"70 talents and two thousand four hundred shekels." This would be about 2,300 kilograms. (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> The bronze from wave offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> The bronze that the people contributed weighed about 2,300 kilograms.

## Exodus 38:30

### General Information:

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

### grate

This is a frame of crossed bars for holding wood when burning. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:4](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- feast, feasting
- bronze
- bronze

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- altar
- feast, feasting
- bronze
- bronze

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> With this he made the bases for the entrance to the tent of meeting, the bronze altar, its bronze grate, all the equipment for the altar,

### UST

<sup>30</sup> With the bronze Bezalel and his helpers made the bases to support the posts at the entrance of the sacred tent. They also made the altar for burning sacrifices with its grate and the tools to be used with it,

## Exodus 38:31

### tent pegs

These are sharp bronze stakes that were used to secure the corners of a tent to the ground. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:19](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> the bases for the courtyard, the bases for the courtyard entrance, all the tent pegs for the tabernacle, and all the tent pegs for the courtyard.

#### UST

<sup>31</sup> the bases for the posts that supported the curtains that surrounded the courtyard, the bases for the entrance to the courtyard, and the pegs for the sacred tent and for the curtains around the courtyard.

## **Exodus 39**

### **Exodus 39 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **The holy clothing**

The special, holy clothing mentioned in previous chapters is produced in this chapter to the correct specifications.  
(See: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#))

## Exodus 39:1

### General Information:

Bezalel's work crew shifts to making the priestly garments.

### they made

The word "they" refers to Bezalel, Oholiab, and the other workmen.

### as Yahweh had commanded Moses

"just as Yahweh told Moses to do"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> With the blue, purple, and scarlet wool, they made finely-woven garments for service in the holy place. They made Aaron's garments for the holy place, as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Bezalel, Oholiab, and the other skilled workmen made the beautiful clothes for Aaron to wear while he did his work as a priest in the holy place. They made them from blue, purple, and red woolen cloth, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

## Exodus 39:2

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:6](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments.

### Bezalel

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gold, golden](#)
- [purple](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gold, golden](#)
- [purple](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Bezalel made the ephod of gold, of blue, purple, and scarlet wool, and of fine twined linen.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> They made the sacred apron from fine white linen and from blue, purple, and red woolen cloth.



## Exodus 39:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> They hammered gold sheets and cut them into wires, to work them into the blue, purple, and scarlet wool, and into the fine linen, the work of a skillful workman.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> They hammered some thin sheets of gold and cut them into thin strips that they embroidered into the fine linen and into the blue, purple, and red cloth.

## Exodus 39:4

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:7](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments.

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> They made shoulder pieces for the ephod, attached at its two upper corners.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> The sacred apron had two shoulder straps, to join the front part to the back part at its sides.

## Exodus 39:5

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:8](#).

### it was made of one piece with the ephod, made of fine twined linen

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they made it as one piece with the ephod with fine twined linen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### as Yahweh had commanded Moses

“just as Yahweh told Moses to do.” See how you translated this phrase in [Exodus 39:1](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [gold](#), [golden](#)
- [purple](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [gold](#), [golden](#)
- [purple](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Its finely-woven waistband was like the ephod; it was made of one piece with the ephod, made of fine twined linen that was gold, blue, purple, and scarlet, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> A carefully woven belt, which was made from the same materials as the sacred apron, was sewn onto the sacred apron. This was made exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

## Exodus 39:6

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:9](#) and [Exodus 28:11](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments.

### signet

This was an engraved stone that was used to stamp a design in a wax seal. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:11](#).

### twelve sons

"12 sons" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> They crafted the onyx stones, enclosed in settings of gold, set with engravings as on a signet, and engraved with the names of Israel's twelve sons.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Bezalel and his men cut two onyx stones and enclosed them in a tiny frame, and a skilled gem cutter engraved on the stones the names of the twelve sons of Jacob.

## Exodus 39:7

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:12](#).

### as Yahweh had commanded Moses

“just as Yahweh told Moses to do.” See how you translated this phrase in [Exodus 39:1](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Bezalel put them on the shoulder pieces of the ephod, as stones to remind Yahweh of Israel's twelve sons, as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> They fastened the stones to the shoulder straps of the sacred apron to represent the twelve tribes of Israel, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

## Exodus 39:8

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:15](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments.

### He made

"Bezalel made" or "Bezalel and the workers made"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gold, golden](#)
- [purple](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gold, golden](#)
- [purple](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> He made the breastpiece, the work of a skillful workman, fashioned like the ephod. He made it of gold, of blue, purple, and scarlet wool, and of fine linen.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> They made the sacred chest pouch with the same materials as the sacred apron and embroidered it in the same way.

## Exodus 39:9

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:16](#).

### span

A span is 23 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> It was square. They folded the breastpiece double. It was one span long and one span wide.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> It was square, and the material was folded double, so that it was twenty-three centimeters on each side.

## Exodus 39:10

### General Information:

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments.

### They set in it

"The workers set in the breastpiece"

### ruby, a topaz, and a garnet

Some languages may not have words for each of these stones. The important fact is that they were valuable and different from one another. See how you translated these in [Exodus 28:17](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> They set in it four rows of precious stones. The first row had a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> They fastened four rows of valuable stones onto the pouch. In the first row, they put a red ruby, a yellow topaz, and a red garnet.



## Exodus 39:11

### an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond

Some languages may not have words for each of these stones. The important fact is that they were valuable and different from one another. See how you translated these in [Exodus 28:18](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

#### ULT

**11** The second row had an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond.

#### UST

**11** In the second row, they put a green emerald, a blue sapphire, and a white diamond.

## Exodus 39:12

### a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst

Some languages may not have words for each of these stones. The important fact is that they were valuable and different from one another. See how you translated these in [Exodus 28:19](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> The third row had a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> In the third row they put a red jacinth, a white agate, and a purple amethyst.

## Exodus 39:13

### a beryl, an onyx, and a jasper

Some languages may not have words for each of these stones. The important fact is that they were valuable and different from one another. See how you translated these in [Exodus 28:20](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### The stones were mounted in gold settings

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They mounted the stones in gold settings" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> The fourth row had a beryl, an onyx, and a jasper. The stones were mounted in gold settings.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> In the fourth row, they put a yellow beryl, a red carnelian, and a green jasper. They put tiny gold frames around each of the stones.

## Exodus 39:14

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:21](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments.

### The stones were arranged

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The workers arranged the stones" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

### ULT

**14** The stones were arranged by the names of Israel's twelve sons, each in order by name. They were like the engraving on a signet ring, each name standing for one of the twelve tribes.

### UST

**14** On each of the twelve stones they engraved the name of one of the sons of Jacob, to represent one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

## Exodus 39:15

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:22](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

**15** On the breastpiece they made chains like cords, braided work of pure gold.

### UST

**15** They made two chains from pure gold and braided them like cords, to attach the sacred pouch to the sacred apron.

## Exodus 39:16

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:23-24](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- gold, golden
- gold, golden

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> They made two settings of gold and two gold rings, and they attached the two rings to the two corners of the breastpiece.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> They made two gold rings, and they attached them to the upper corners of the sacred pouch.

## Exodus 39:17

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:24](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments.

### two braided chains

"chains that are made of pure gold and are braided like cords." See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:14](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### ULT

**17** They put the two braided chains of gold in the two rings at the corners of the breastpiece.

### UST

**17** They fastened one end of each gold chain to a ring.

## Exodus 39:18

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:25](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [face](#), [facial](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [face](#), [facial](#)

### ULT

**18** They attached the other two ends of the braided chains to the two settings. They attached them to the shoulder pieces of the ephod at its front.

### UST

**18** They fastened the other end of each chain to one of the two settings that enclosed the stones and then attached the sacred pouch to the shoulder straps of the sacred apron.



## Exodus 39:19

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:26](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

**19** They made two rings of gold and put them on the two other corners of the breastpiece, on the edge next to the inner border.

### UST

**19** Then they made two more gold rings and attached them to the lower corners of the sacred pouch, on the inside edges, next to the sacred apron.

## Exodus 39:20

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:27](#).

### finely-woven waistband

This was a cloth belt made from narrow linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:8](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [face, facial](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [face, facial](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> They made two more gold rings and attached them to the bottom of the two shoulder pieces of the front of the ephod, close to its seam above the finely-woven waistband of the ephod.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> They made two more gold rings and attached them to the lower part of the front of the shoulder straps, near to where the shoulder straps were joined to the sacred apron, just above the carefully woven sash.

## Exodus 39:21

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:28](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments.

### so that it might be attached

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so they could attach it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the breastpiece might not become unattached from the ephod

The double negative can be translated as a positive. Alternate translation: "the breastpiece would stay attached to the ephod" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> They tied the breastpiece by its rings to the ephod's rings with a blue cord, so that it might be attached just above the ephod's finely-woven waistband. This was so that the breastpiece might not become unattached from the ephod. This was done as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> They tied the rings on the sacred pouch to the rings on the sacred apron with a blue cord, so that the sacred pouch was above the sash and would not come loose from the sacred apron. They did these things just as Yahweh had instructed Moses to do.

## Exodus 39:22

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:31-32](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments.

### Bezalel

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Bezalel made the robe of the ephod entirely of blue fabric, the work of a weaver.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> They made the robe that was to be worn underneath the priest's sacred apron; they used only blue cloth.

## Exodus 39:23

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:32](#).

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> It had an opening for the head in the middle. The opening had a woven edge round about so that it did not tear.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> It had an opening through which the priest would put his head. They sewed a border around this opening to prevent the material from tearing.

## Exodus 39:24

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:33](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [purple](#)
- [pomegranate](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [purple](#)
- [pomegranate](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> On the bottom hem, they made pomegranates of blue, purple, and scarlet yarn and of fine linen.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> At the lower edge on the robe they fastened decorations that resembled pomegranate fruit. The decorations were woven from blue, purple, and red woolen yarn.

## Exodus 39:25

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:34-35](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments as commanded in [Exodus 28:34-35](#).

### bells of pure gold

These were tiny bells.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> They made bells of pure gold, and they put the bells between the pomegranates all around on the bottom edge the robe, between the pomegranates—

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Between each of these decorations, they fastened a tiny bell made from pure gold

## Exodus 39:26

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:34-35](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> a bell and a pomegranate, a bell and a pomegranate—on the edge of the robe for Aaron to serve in. This was as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> for Aaron to wear while he did his work as a priest. They made all these things exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.



## Exodus 39:27

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:39](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> They made the coats of fine linen for Aaron and for his sons.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> They wove long-sleeved tunics from fine linen for Aaron and his sons.

## Exodus 39:28

### turban

This is a head covering worn by men made of a long strip of cloth wound around the head. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:4](#).

### headbands

A headband is a narrow, decorative strip of cloth that is worn around the head above the eyes. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:40](#).

### undergarments

This is clothing worn under the outer clothes, next to the skin. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:42](#). Alternate translation: “underwear” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

**28** They made the turban of fine linen, the ornate headbands of fine linen, the linen undergarments of fine linen,

#### UST

**28** They also made a turban of fine linen for Aaron to wear around his head. They made the caps and the undershorts for Aaron's sons from fine linen.

## Exodus 39:29

### sash

This is a long piece of cloth worn over the shoulder or around the waist. See how you translated this word in [Exodus 28:4](#)

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [purple](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [purple](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> and the sash of fine linen and of blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, the work of an embroiderer. This was as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> They made the embroidered sash for Aaron from fine linen and from blue, purple, and red woolen cloth, and they embroidered designs on it using blue, purple, and red woolen yarn, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

## Exodus 39:30

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:36](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments..

### holy crown

This was an engraved crown made of pure gold. See how you translated this in [Exodus 29:6](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [clean](#), [wash](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [clean](#), [wash](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [gold](#), [golden](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> They made the plate of the holy crown of pure gold; they engraved on it, like the engraving on a signet, "Holy to Yahweh."

### UST

<sup>30</sup> They also made the tiny ornament of pure gold and had a skilled workman engrave on it the words, "Dedicated to Yahweh."

## Exodus 39:31

### General Information:

See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:37](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

**31** They attached to the turban a blue cord to the top of the turban. This was as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

### UST

**31** They fastened this to the front of the turban by a blue cord, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

## Exodus 39:32

### General Information:

The Israelites finish making the things Yahweh commanded in [Exodus 35:4-9](#) and [Exodus 35:10-12](#).

### **So the work on the tabernacle, the tent of meeting, was finished. The people of Israel did everything**

The “tabernacle” and “tent of meeting” are the same thing. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “So the people of Israel finished all of the work on the tabernacle” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> So the work on the tabernacle, the tent of meeting, was finished. The people of Israel did everything. They followed all the instructions that Yahweh had given to Moses.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> Finally, they finished all the work of making the sacred tent and brought everything to Moses. They had made them exactly as Yahweh had commanded them to.

## Exodus 39:33

### clasps

The clasps fit into the loops to hold the curtains together. See how you translated these in [Exodus 26:6](#).

### bases

These are heavy objects that rest on the ground and keep the object attached to them from moving. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:31](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [column, pillar](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [column, pillar](#)

### ULT

**33** They brought the tabernacle to Moses—the tent and all its equipment, its clasps, frames, bars, posts, and bases;

### UST

**33** They brought to him the sacred tent and all the things that were used with it—the hooks, the frames, the crossbars, the posts and their bases;

## Exodus 39:34

**the covering of ram skins dyed red, the covering of fine leather**

See how you translated similar phrases in this in [Exodus 25:5](#).

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> the covering of ram skins dyed red, the covering of fine leather, and the curtain to conceal

### UST

<sup>34</sup> the coverings for the sacred tent that were made of tanned rams' skins and goatskins; the curtains;



## Exodus 39:35

### atonement lid

This is the lid that sits on top of the ark where the atonement offering was made. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:17](#).

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> the ark of the testimony, as well as the poles and the atonement lid.

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> the sacred chest that contained the stone slabs on which the commandments were written and the lid for the chest.

## Exodus 39:36

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to present all that they made to Moses.

### bread of the presence

This bread represented the presence of God. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:30](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bread](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bread](#)

### ULT

**36** They brought the table, all its utensils, and the bread of the presence;

### UST

**36** The workers also finished these items for the sacred tent: The table with all the things to be used with it and the bread to display before God;

## Exodus 39:37

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- olive

### Translation Words - UST

- olive

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> the lampstand of pure gold and its lamps in a row, with its accessories and the oil for the lamps;

#### UST

<sup>37</sup> the lampstand made of pure gold with all its lamps and the things that were used to take care of it, and the oil for the lamps;

## Exodus 39:38

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- olive
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- olive
- gold, golden

#### ULT

<sup>38</sup> the golden altar, the anointing oil and the fragrant incense; the hanging for the tabernacle entrance;

#### UST

<sup>38</sup> the golden altar for burning incense, the oil for anointing, the sweet-smelling incense, and the curtain for the entrance to the sacred tent;

## Exodus 39:39

### grate

This is a frame of crossed bars that held wood while burning. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:4](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- bronze
- bronze

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- bronze
- bronze

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> the bronze altar with its bronze grate and its poles and utensil and the large basin with its base.

### UST

<sup>39</sup> the bronze altar for burning sacrifices with its bronze grating, the poles for carrying it, and all the other things that were used with it, as well as the washbasin and its base.

## Exodus 39:40

### Connecting Statement:

Bezalel's work crew continues to present all that they made to Moses.

### They brought

"The people of Israel brought"

### the tabernacle, the tent of meeting

These refer to the same place.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [feast, feasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [feast, feasting](#)

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> They brought the hangings for the courtyard with its posts and bases, and the curtain for the courtyard entrance; its ropes and tent pegs; and all the equipment for the service of the tabernacle, the tent of meeting.

### UST

<sup>40</sup> They also brought the curtains that would surround the courtyard, the posts and bases that supported them, the curtain for the entrance to the courtyard and its ropes, the tent pegs, and all the other things that would be used in the sacred tent;

## Exodus 39:41

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- priest, priesthood

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- priest, priesthood

### ULT

<sup>41</sup> They brought the fine woven garments for serving in the holy place, the holy garments for Aaron the priest and his sons, for them to serve as priests.

### UST

<sup>41</sup> the beautiful sacred clothes for Aaron and his sons to wear when they did their work in the holy place, and the clothes for his sons to wear as they did their work as priests.

## Exodus 39:42

### Thus the people

“And so the people”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>42</sup> Thus the people of Israel did all the work as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

#### UST

<sup>42</sup> The people of Israel had done all this work exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.



## Exodus 39:43

### behold

The word “behold” here draws attention to the information that follows.

### As Yahweh had commanded, in that way they did it

“They did it in the way that Yahweh had commanded them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> Moses examined all the work, and, behold, they had done it. As Yahweh had commanded, in that way they did it. Then Moses blessed them.

### UST

<sup>43</sup> Then Moses saw all the work that they had done. Truly, they had done everything exactly as Yahweh had commanded that it should be done. Then Moses blessed the workmen.

## **Exodus 40**

### **Exodus 40 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter is repetitive and should read as a series of instructions. It is repeated as well to show that Moses was obedient to every detail of Yahweh's command.

#### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

##### **“Yahweh’s glory filled the tabernacle”**

This phrase indicates that Yahweh began to dwell within the tabernacle, among Israel, in a special way. (See: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#) and [tabernacle](#))

## Exodus 40:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses,

## Exodus 40:2

### the first day of the first month of the new year

The new year marks the time when God rescued his people from Egypt. This happens around the middle of March on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [feast, feasting](#)
- [new moon](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [feast, feasting](#)
- [new moon](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> "On the first day of the first month of the new year you must set up the tabernacle, the tent of meeting.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> "Next year, on the first day of the first month, tell the people to set up the sacred tent.

## Exodus 40:3

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### place the ark of the testimony in it

“place the ark of the covenant decrees in the sacred chest”

### shield the ark with the curtain

“put the ark behind the curtain”

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed

### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> You must place the ark of the testimony in it, and you must shield the ark with the curtain.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Put inside it the sacred chest that contains the stone slabs on which are engraved the Ten Commandments, and hang its curtain in front of it.

## Exodus 40:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> You must bring in the table and set in order the things that belong on it. Then you must bring in the lampstand and set up the lamps.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Bring the table into the sacred tent, and place on it all the things that they made for it. Then bring in the lampstand and set the lamps in it.

## Exodus 40:5

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### ark of the testimony

This refers to the “sacred chest.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- appoint, appointed
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- appoint, appointed
- gold, golden

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> You must put the golden incense altar before the ark of the testimony, and you must put the curtain at the entrance to the tabernacle.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Put the gold altar for burning incense in front of the sacred chest, and set up the curtain at the entrance of the sacred tent.

## Exodus 40:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- feast, feasting

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> You must put the altar for burnt offerings in front of the entrance to the tabernacle, the tent of meeting.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Put the altar for burning sacrifices in front of the sacred tent.



## Exodus 40:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- feast, feasting

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> You must put the large basin between the tent of meeting and the altar and you must put water in it.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Put the washbasin between the sacred tent and the altar, and fill it with water.

## Exodus 40:8

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> You must set up the courtyard around it, and you must hang up the curtain at the courtyard entrance.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Hang the curtains around the courtyard, and also hang up the curtain that your workmen made for the entrance.

## Exodus 40:9

### all its furnishings

“all the things that are a part of it”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- set apart
- olive

#### Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- set apart
- olive

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> You must take the anointing oil and anoint the tabernacle and everything that is in it. You must set it apart and all its furnishings to me; then it will be holy.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Then take the oil for anointing and put it on the sacred tent and everything that is in it, to set it all apart for me. Then it will be very special, reserved only for me.

## Exodus 40:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- altar
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- set apart

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- altar
- altar
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- set apart

### ULT

**10** You must anoint the altar for burnt offerings and all its utensils. You must set apart the altar to me and it will become very holy to me.

### UST

**10** Also put some of the oil on the altar on which the priests will burn the sacrifices that they will offer to me. Also put some of the oil on all the things that they will use at the altar, and set them apart for me. Then they will be special, reserved only for me.

## Exodus 40:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- set apart

### Translation Words - UST

- set apart

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> You must anoint the bronze basin and its base and set it apart to me.

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> Also put some of the oil on the washbasin and its base, to set them apart for me.

## Exodus 40:12

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### You are to bring

Moses will do these things himself.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- clean, wash
- Aaron
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- clean, wash
- Aaron
- feast, feasting

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> You are to bring Aaron and his sons to the entrance of the tent of meeting and you must wash them with water.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Then bring Aaron and his sons to the entrance of the sacred tent, and wash them with water.

## Exodus 40:13

### that are set apart to me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that you have set apart to me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Aaron](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Aaron](#)

#### ULT

**13** You are to clothe Aaron with the garments that are set apart to me, anoint him and set him apart so that he may serve as my priest.

#### UST

**13** Then set Aaron apart for me by putting his special clothes on him and by pouring oil on him. Do this so he may serve me as a priest who comes before me.

## Exodus 40:14

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son

### Translation Words - UST

- son

### ULT

**14** You are to bring his sons and clothe them with coats.

### UST

**14** Also bring Aaron's sons and put their special tunics on them;



## Exodus 40:15

### throughout their people's generations

"through all the generations of their descendants." See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 12:14](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- generation

#### Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- generation

#### ULT

**15** You must anoint them as you anointed their father so that they may serve me as priests. Their anointing will make for them a permanent priesthood throughout their people's generations."

#### UST

**15** then pour oil on them just as you did on their father. Do this so that they also may worship me as priests. By pouring oil on them, you will cause them and their descendants to be priests throughout all their future generations."

## Exodus 40:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> This is what Moses did; he followed all that Yahweh had commanded him. He did all these things.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> Moses and the men working with him did all these things exactly as Yahweh had commanded him to do.

## Exodus 40:17

### So the tabernacle was set up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So the people set up the tabernacle" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the first day of the first month

This refers to exactly one year after God rescued his people from Egypt. This happens around the middle of March on Western calendars. See how you translated this in [Exodus 40:2](#). (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### in the second year

This is the second year after Yahweh brought his people out of Egypt. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

#### ULT

**17** So the tabernacle was set up on the first day of the first month in the second year.

#### UST

**17** On the first day of the first month of the next year, the year after the people had come out of Egypt, the people set up the sacred tent.

## Exodus 40:18

### Moses set up

Moses was the leader. The people helped him set up the tabernacle.  
(See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### posts

a strong piece of wood set upright and used as a support

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

**18** Moses set up the tabernacle, put its bases in place, set up its frames, attached its bars, and set up its pillars and posts.

### UST

**18** They did what Moses told them to do; they set up the sacred tent and its bases; they set up the frames, attached the crossbars, and put up the posts for the curtains.

## Exodus 40:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> He spread the covering over the tabernacle and put tent over it, as Yahweh had commanded him.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Then they spread out the coverings over the sacred tent, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

## Exodus 40:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed

### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> He took the covenant decrees and put them into the ark. He also placed the poles on the ark and put the atonement lid on it.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> Then Moses took the two stone slabs on which the commandments were written and put them into the sacred chest. He caused the workmen to put the carrying poles into the rings on the chest and put the lid on top of it.

## Exodus 40:21

### He brought

Moses was the leader. He had workers helping him.

### for it to shield

“in front of”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> He brought the ark into the tabernacle. He set up the curtain for it to shield the ark of the testimony, as Yahweh had commanded him.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Then Moses took the chest into the holy place inside the sacred tent and hung the curtain. After he did that, the people who were outside could not see the chest. He did all this exactly as Yahweh had commanded him.

## Exodus 40:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- feast, feasting

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> He put the table into the tent of meeting, on the north side of the tabernacle, outside the curtain.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> He caused the workmen to set the table inside the sacred tent, on the north side, outside the curtain.



## Exodus 40:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [bread](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [bread](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> He placed the bread in order on the table before Yahweh, as Yahweh had commanded him.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> They placed on the table the bread in order to display it before Yahweh, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses to do.

## Exodus 40:24

### He put the lampstand into the tent of meeting

Moses instructed his workers to move the lampstand. This can be stated clearly in the translation. Alternate translation: "Moses' workmen set the lampstand inside the sacred tent" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- feast, feasting

#### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- feast, feasting

#### ULT

**24** He put the lampstand into the tent of meeting, across from the table, on the south side of the tabernacle.

#### UST

**24** Moses's workmen set the lampstand inside the sacred tent, on the south side, on the other side of the table.

## Exodus 40:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> He lit the lamps before Yahweh, as Yahweh had commanded him.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> Then they set the lamps on the lampstand in Yahweh's presence, exactly as Yahweh had commanded.

## Exodus 40:26

### in front of the curtain

This curtain separated the holy place from the very holy place. This can be stated clearly in the translation. Alternate translation: “in front of the curtain that separated the holy place from the very holy place” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- appoint, appointed
- feast, feasting
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- appoint, appointed
- feast, feasting
- gold, golden

### ULT

**26** He put the golden incense altar into the tent of meeting in front of the curtain.

### UST

**26** Moses's workmen set the gold altar for burning incense inside the sacred tent, in front of the curtain that separated the holy place from the very holy place,

## Exodus 40:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> He burned fragrant incense on it, as Yahweh had commanded him.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> and they burned some sweet-smelling incense on it, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses to do.

## Exodus 40:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed

### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> He hung the curtain at the tabernacle entrance.

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> Moses's workmen hung the curtain at the entrance to the sacred tent.

## Exodus 40:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Moses
- feast, feasting
- grain offering

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Moses
- feast, feasting
- grain offering

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> He put the altar for the burnt offering at the entrance to the tabernacle, the tent of meeting. He offered on it the burnt offering and the grain offering, as Yahweh had commanded him.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> At the entrance to the sacred tent, they placed the altar for offering sacrifices that the priests were to burn. Then they burned on it the meat and the flour that they offered, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses to do.

## Exodus 40:30

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- appoint, appointed
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- appoint, appointed
- feast, feasting

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> He placed the basin between the tent of meeting and the altar, and he put water in it for washing.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> They set the washbasin between the sacred tent and the bronze altar, and they filled the washbasin with water.



## Exodus 40:31

### washed their hands and their feet from the basin

They washed with water from the basin. This can be stated clearly in the translation. Alternate translation: “washed their hands and their feet with water from the basin” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- clean, wash
- Moses
- hand

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- clean, wash
- Moses
- hand

#### ULT

**31** Moses, Aaron, and his sons washed their hands and their feet from the basin

#### UST

**31-32** Every time Moses, Aaron, or Aaron's sons went into the sacred tent or went up to the altar, they washed their hands and feet, exactly as Yahweh had commanded them through Moses to do.

## Exodus 40:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Moses
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Moses
- feast, feasting

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> whenever they would go into the tent of meeting and whenever they would go up to the altar. They washed themselves, as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

### UST

<sup>31-32</sup> Every time Moses, Aaron, or Aaron's sons went into the sacred tent or went up to the altar, they washed their hands and feet, exactly as Yahweh had commanded them through Moses to do.

## Exodus 40:33

### In this way

“And so”

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Moses
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Moses
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Moses set up the courtyard around the tabernacle and the altar. He set up the curtain at the courtyard entrance. In this way, Moses finished the work.

### UST

<sup>33</sup> Moses's workmen hung up the curtains that surrounded the courtyard and the altar, and they hung the curtain at the entrance to the courtyard. In this way Moses caused the people to complete all that work.

## Exodus 40:34

### Yahweh's glory filled

"Yahweh's awesome presence filled"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- feast, feasting

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- feast, feasting

#### ULT

**34** Then the cloud covered the tent of meeting, and Yahweh's glory filled the tabernacle.

#### UST

**34** Then the tall cloud covered the sacred tent, and Yahweh's power and brilliant light filled the sacred tent.

## Exodus 40:35

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- feast, feasting

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Moses was not able to enter the tent of meeting because the cloud had settled on it, and because Yahweh's glory filled the tabernacle.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> Because the light was very bright, Moses was not able to enter the sacred tent.

## Exodus 40:36

### was taken up from over

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “rose up from” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Whenever the cloud was taken up from over the tabernacle, the people of Israel would set out on their journey.

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> From that day, whenever the people of Israel wanted to move to another place, they went only when the cloud rose from above the sacred tent and moved on.

## Exodus 40:37

### that it was lifted up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “when it rose up” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> But if the cloud did not rise up from the tabernacle, then the people would not travel. They would stay until the day that it was lifted up.

#### UST

<sup>37</sup> If the cloud did not rise, they stayed where they were and waited for the cloud to rise and move.

## Exodus 40:38

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- house

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> For Yahweh's cloud was over the tabernacle by day, and his fire was over it by night, in plain view of all the people of Israel throughout their journey.

### UST

<sup>38</sup> Wherever they traveled, the cloud that showed Yahweh's presence was above the sacred tent during the day, and a bright fire was over it at night. All the people of Israel could see it at any time, for as long as they were traveling to the land that God had promised to give them.





# **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Version 12**

## Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

### Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

### Examples from the Bible

...from **\*childhood\*** you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

## Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...**from** childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

**But** godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**.  
But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**.  
But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

**Today** salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved**...  
Today God **has saved** the people in this house...

**The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider** slowness

to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

**He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the** purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [Exodus 12:12](#); [12:30](#); [20:6](#); [31:3](#); [34:6](#); [34:7](#))

## Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

## Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** **My father** built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

## Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

## Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed**, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal **was broken down**... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

## Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

**A loaf of bread** was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

**The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

**It would be better for him if a millstone** were put

around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

**A loaf of bread** was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: Exodus 1:7; 3:19; Notes; 5:19; 6:3; 8:24; 10:6; 10:7; 10:11; 10:15; 10:21; 10:26; 12:8; 12:10; 12:15; 12:16; 12:19; 12:20; 12:34; 12:39; 12:42; 12:44; 12:46; 12:48; 13:3; 13:7; 14:4; 14:5; 14:21; 14:25; 15:9; 17:16; 18:5; 19:12; 19:13; 20:24; 21:8; 21:12; 21:14; 21:15; 21:16; 21:17; 21:18; 21:20; 21:22; 21:28; 21:29; 21:30; 21:32; 21:36; 22:2; 22:3; 22:4; 22:7; 22:11; 22:12; 22:13; 22:15; 22:20; 23:12; 24:7; 25:7; 25:19; 25:27; 25:28; 25:29; 25:31; 25:35; 25:38; 25:40; 26:3; 26:19; 26:24; 26:30; 26:33; 26:35; 27:2; 27:7; 27:8; 27:9; 27:10; 27:16; 27:19; 28:2; 28:8; 28:20; 28:21; 28:28; 28:35; 28:38; 29:2; 29:21; 29:25; 29:29; 29:33; 29:34; 29:41; 29:43; 30:2; 30:4; 30:13; 30:32; 30:33; 30:35; 30:38; 31:14; 31:18; 33:16; 33:23; 34:34; 35:2; 37:8; 37:14; 37:17; 37:19; 37:20; 37:21; 37:25; 37:27; 38:2; 38:4; 38:16; 38:17; 38:18; 38:19; 38:20; 38:21; 38:24; 38:25; 38:27; 39:5; 39:13; 39:14; 39:21; 39:32; 40:13; 40:17; 40:36; 40:37)

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.
- When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways:
  - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
  - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

## Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "**Foxes** have holes

, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

**it will be more tolerable for** Tyre and Sidon

at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for **those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, at the day of judgment than for you.  
or:  
...it will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you.

**Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For** they do not wash their hands



when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

**Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

**it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**

or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Exodus 1 General Notes](#); [1:22](#); [2:3](#); [Notes](#); [7:15](#); [7:20](#); [8:3](#); [10:17](#); [11:8](#); [12:4](#); [12:11](#); [12:13](#); [12:27](#); [12:33](#); [13:3](#); [Notes](#); [15:1](#); [15:17](#); [15:21](#); [16:7](#); [16:8](#); [17:3](#); [18:2](#); [18:5](#); [18:23](#); [18:25](#); [19:8](#); [20:6](#); [21:3](#); [21:13](#); [21:19](#); [21:21](#); [21:23](#); [21:24](#); [21:30](#); [21:34](#); [21:36](#); [22:15](#); [23:11](#); [23:17](#); [23:24](#); [24:8](#); [24:12](#); [26:21](#); [26:25](#); [26:33](#); [26:35](#); [27:5](#); [27:6](#); [28:25](#); [28:35](#); [28:41](#); [29:3](#); [29:9](#); [29:11](#); [29:20](#); [29:31](#); [30:6](#); [30:26](#); [31:7](#); [Notes](#); [32:5](#); [32:17](#); [32:29](#); [32:32](#); [33:9](#); [34:15](#); [34:25](#); [37:16](#); [Notes](#); [38:8](#); [39:28](#); [40:18](#); [40:24](#); [40:26](#); [40:31](#))

# Biblical Distance

## Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man’s hand.
- The **span** or handspace was the width of a man’s hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man’s forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong”, which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)  
[Fractions](#)

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
“long” cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

## Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as “.46 meters” or even as “46 centimeters”, readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a meter”, “45 centimeters”, or “50 centimeters”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

## Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

**They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits** ; its width will be **one kubit and a half** ; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter** ; its width will be **two thirds of a meter** ; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)** ; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter** <sup>1</sup>; its width will be **two thirds of a meter** <sup>2</sup>; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter.**"

The footnotes would look like:

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter** <sup>1</sup>; its width will be **two thirds of a meter** <sup>2</sup>; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter.**"

The footnotes would look like:

[1] two and a half cubits  
[2] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: [Exodus 25:10](#); [25:17](#); [25:23](#); [26:2](#); [26:8](#); [26:13](#); [27:1](#); [27:9](#); [27:14](#); [27:18](#); [28:16](#); [36:15](#); [36:21](#); [37:1](#); [37:6](#); [37:10](#); [37:12](#); [37:25](#); [38:1](#); [38:9](#); [38:11](#); [38:13](#); [38:18](#); [39:9](#))

## Biblical Money

### Description:

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

### Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

### Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

### Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

1 The one owed **five hundred denarii**, and the other owed **fifty denarii**. (Luke 7:41 ULT)

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

1 "The one owed **five hundred denali**, and the other owed **fifty denali**."

(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

1 "The one owed **five hundred silver coins**, and the other owed **fifty silver coins**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

1 "The one owed **five hundred days' wages**, and the other owed **fifty days' wages**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

1 "The one owed **five hundred denarii** <sup>1</sup>, and the other owed **fifty denarii**. <sup>2</sup>"

The footnotes would look like:

1 [1] five hundred days's wages  
2 [2] fifty day's wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

1 "The one owed **five hundred denarii** <sup>1</sup>, and the other owed **fifty denarii**."  
(Luke 7:41 ULT)  
  
[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)  
[Translate Unknowns](#)

(Go back to: [Exodus 21:32](#); [30:13](#); [30:15](#); [38:28](#))

# Biblical Volume

## Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	letheq	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

## Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters”, readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters”.
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

## When the unit of measure is stated

### Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

**For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah.** (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

"For four hektares of vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**."

(2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **twenty-two liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **twenty-two liters**."

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **twenty-two liters**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only twenty quarts."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (twenty quarts)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters <sup>1</sup>, and 220 liters <sup>2</sup> of seed will yield only twenty-two liters <sup>3</sup>."

The footnotes would look like:



- [1] one bath
- [2] one homer
- [3] one ephah

## When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure”.

**whenever anyone came to the grainery for** twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

**whenever anyone came to the grainery for** twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty jars** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty liters** of wine, there were only **twenty liters**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

(Go back to: [Exodus 16:16](#); [16:32](#); [16:33](#); [16:36](#); [29:40](#); [30:24](#))

# Biblical Weight

## Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight”, and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

## Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms”, it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms”.
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

## Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

**The bronze from the offering weighed** seventy talents and 2,400 shekels

. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

"The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talentes and 2,400 sekeles.**"

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **2,400 kilograms.**"

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **5,300 pounds .**"

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talents (2,380 kilograms)** and **2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms).**"

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talentes and 2,400 shekels.**  
1 "

The footnote would look like:

[1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)  
[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [Exodus 25:39](#); [30:13](#); [30:15](#); [30:23](#); [30:24](#); [37:24](#); [38:24](#); [38:25](#); [38:26](#); [38:27](#); [38:29](#))

# Direct and Indirect Quotations

## Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks:"".

- John said, "**I** do not know at what time **I** will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would", to replace the future tense indicated by "will".

- John said that **he** did not know at what time **he** would arrive.

## Why this is a translation issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

## Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest...**"

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God would come**,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look here!**' or, '**Look there!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-quotations\]\]](#)

## Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

**He instructed him to tell no one, but told him,** “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.

” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him to tell no one, but ***to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.***”

- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

**He instructed him,** to tell no one

, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him, “***Tell no one.*** Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_quotations](http://ufw.io/figs_quotations).

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotesinquotes]]

(Go back to: [Exodus 7:9](#); [13:8](#); [13:14](#); [14:3](#); [14:12](#); [32:21](#); [32:24](#); [32:26](#); [36:5](#))

## Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

### Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not” such as the underlined parts of these words: “**un** happy,” “**im** possible,” and “use**less**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

It is **not** that we do **not** have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULT)

And this better confidence did **not** happen **without** the taking of an oath,... (Hebrews 7:20 ULT.)

Be sure of this—wicked people will **not** go **unpunished** (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

### Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, “I did not see no one”. It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one”. The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone”.
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent”.
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent”.
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent”.

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

### Examples from the Bible

...in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

This means “so that they will be fruitful”.

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.

## Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

■ **For we do** not

have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15 ULT)

■ “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

...**in order** not

to be unfruitful\*\*. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

■ “...so that they may be fruitful.”

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

■ **Be sure of this—wicked people will** not

go unpunished... (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

■ “Be sure of this—wicked people will **certainly** be punished...”

**All things were made through him and** without

him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

■ “All things were made through him. He made **absolutely** everything that has been made.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:21](#); [8:29](#); [12:30](#); [12:48](#); [20:7](#); [21:10](#); [22:22](#); [22:29](#); [23:15](#); [23:26](#); [28:28](#); [39:21](#))



# Doublet

## Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

## Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

## Examples from the Bible

King David was **old** and **advanced in years**. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

...he attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

...as of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect--not even one.

## Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

## Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare false

and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

■ **King David was** old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

■ “King David was **very old**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

■ **...a lamb** without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

■ “...a lamb **without any blemish at all**...”

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:10](#); [7:3](#); [15:16](#); [32:11](#); [34:9](#); [39:32](#))

# Ellipsis

## Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, ***nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.***  
(Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

...nor ***will*** sinners ***stand*** in the assembly of the righteous.

## There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

## Examples from the Bible

### Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf ***and Sirion like a young ox.*** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and ***he makes*** Sirion ***skip*** like a young ox.

But if we are afflicted, ***for your comfort and salvation;*** if we are comforted, ***for your comfort,***...  
(2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

But if we are afflicted, **we are afflicted** for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, **we are comforted** for your comfort,...

## Absolute Ellipsis

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **that I might receive my sight.**" (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

"Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight."

To Titus...**Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.** (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus...**May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our savior.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

...**the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor** sinners in the assembly

of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous

**...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight**

**."** (Luke 18:40-41)

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight."

**He makes Lebanon skip like a calf** and Sirion like a young ox

. (Psalm 29:6)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [Exodus 7:7](#); [12:18](#))

# Euphemism

## Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Definition

...they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

## Examples from the Bible

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself...(1 Samuel 24:3 ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

## Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself

. (1 Samuel 24:3 ULT) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to dig a hole**”  
 “...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to have some time alone**”

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

■ Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since ***I do not know a man?***" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

■ **they found Saul and his sons** fallen

on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

■ "they found Saul and his sons ***dead*** on Mount Gilboa."

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:25](#); [14:13](#); [19:15](#); [21:10](#); [22:16](#); [22:19](#))

## Exclamations

### Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people say helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25 ULT)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

### Reason this is a translation issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

### Examples from the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah". The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

**Oh**, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word "Ah" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "**Ah**, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why", even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

**How** unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULT)

### Translation Strategies

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are".
2. Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
5. If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are".

**You worthless person!** (Matthew 5:22 ULT)

"You **are** such a worthless person!"

**Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God!** (Romans 11:33 ULT)

"Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!"

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. The word "wow" below shows that they were astonished. The expression "Oh no" shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

**They were absolutely astonished, saying, "He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak."** (Mark 7:36 ULT)

"They were absolutely astonished, saying, '**Wow!** He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.'"

**Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!** (Judges 6:22 ULT)

"**Oh no**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

Ah

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me?** For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"  
**Help**, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

**How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering!** (Romans 11:33 ULT)

"His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!"

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

**Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "Ah**

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

"Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, "**Ah**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:6](#))



# First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you”. Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you”.

## Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you”. (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he”, “she”, “it” and “they”. (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

## Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you”.

## Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his”. He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,  
“...Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **him**? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him”. He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to **my Lord**, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you”. He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your”.

## Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant

used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s

? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **me**?”

**So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if** each of you

does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [Exodus 15:26](#); [23:25](#); [34:6](#); [34:7](#))

## Forms of You

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](http://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](http://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [Exodus 5:7](#); [5:10](#); [5:11](#); [11:1](#); [14:2](#); [14:13](#); [19:4](#); [19:11](#); [25:2](#); [25:9](#); [25:21](#); [25:22](#); [26:1](#); [26:31](#); [28:1](#); [28:2](#); [30:1](#); [30:6](#); [30:12](#); [30:18](#); [30:26](#); [30:36](#); [32:10](#); [33:14](#); [33:17](#); [34:10](#))

# Fractions

## Description

Fractions are a kind of number that refer to equal parts of a thing or to equal groups within a larger group of people or things. An item or a group of items is divided into two or more parts or groups, and a fraction refers to one or more of those parts or groups.

This page answers the question: *What are fractions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

For the drink offering, you must offer **a third** of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7 ULT)

A hin is a container used for measuring wine and other liquids. They were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts and fill up only one of those parts, and offer that amount.

**a third** of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9 ULT)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have “-th” added to the end of the number.

Number of parts the whole is divided into	Fraction
four	fourth
ten	tenth
one hundred	one hundredth
one thousand	one thousandth

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

Number of parts the whole is divided into	Fraction
two	half
three	third
five	fifth

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many are included in a group.

## Examples From the Bible

Now to **one half** of the tribe of Manasseh, Moses had given an inheritance in Bashan, but to the other **half**, Joshua gave an inheritance beside their brothers in the land west of the Jordan. (Joshua 22:7 ULT)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “one half of the tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

The four angels who had been prepared for that very hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released to kill **a third** of humanity. (Revelation 9:15 ULT)

If all the people in the world were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare **a fourth** of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULT)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

## Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
2. For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UST.
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

## Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

A third

of the ocean became red like blood (Revelation 8:8 ULT)

It was like they **divided** the ocean **into three parts**, and **one part** of the ocean became blood.

**then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of three tenths**

of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

...then you must **divide** an ephah of fine flour **into ten parts** and **divide** a hin of oil **into two parts**. Then mix **three of those parts** of the flour with **one of the parts** of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.

(2) For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

two thirds of a shekel

(1 Samuel 13:21 ULT)

**eight grams** of silver (1 Samuel 13:21 UST)

three tenths of an ephah

of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

**six and one-half liters** of finely ground flour mixed with **two liters** of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9 UST)

(3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

■ three tenths of an ephah

of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9, ULT)

■ **six quarts** of fine flour mixed with **two quarts** of oil.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Biblical Money](#)

(Go back to: [Exodus 16:36](#); [25:10](#); [25:17](#); [25:23](#); [29:40](#); [30:13](#); [30:15](#); [30:23](#); [30:24](#); [36:21](#); [37:1](#); [37:6](#); [37:10](#); [38:26](#))

## Generic Noun Phrases

### Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

This page answers the question: *What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?

So is **the man who goes into his neighbor's wife**;

**the one who has relations with her** will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28 ULT)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

### Examples from the Bible

The **one who does what is right** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

People curse **the man who refuses to sell them grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

### Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
3. Use the word “any”, as in “any person” or “anyone.”
4. Use the plural form, as in “people.”
5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

Yahweh gives favor to a good man

, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

“Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans.**”  
(Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.

**People curse** the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **a man** who refuses to sell them grain”

(3) Use the word “any, as in “any person” or “anyone.”

**People curse** the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **any man** who refuses to sell them grain.”

(4) Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).

**People curse** the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **men** who refuse to sell them grain”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

**People curse** the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **whoever** refuses to sell them grain.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations]]

(Go back to: [Exodus 15:1](#))



## Go and Come

### Description

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

### Examples from the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark" (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.  
Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land..."

Joseph and Mary **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 1:22 ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Joseph and Mary **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

Behold, there came a man named Jairus, and he was one of the leaders of the synagogue.  
Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet and implored him to **come** to his house, (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **go** out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Elizabeth did not **come** out in public.

### Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

1. Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.

2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come**

to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

**Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go**

out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **come** out in public for five months.

(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

**When you have** come

to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

“When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it...”

**Yahweh said to Noah, “Come**

, you and all your household, into the ark... (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

“Yahweh said to Noah, **“Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark...”

**Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go**

out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **appear** in public for five months.

(Go back to: [Exodus 15:17](#); [19:8](#))

# Hebrew Months

## Description

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

## List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

**Abib** - (This month is called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

**Ziv** - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

**Sivan** - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

**Tammuz** - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

**Ab** - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

**Elul** - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

**Ethanim** - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

**Bul** - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

**Kislev** - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.

**Tebeth** - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

**Shebat** - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

**Adar** - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

### Examples from the Bible

You are going out of Egypt on this day, in **the month of Abib**. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)

You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day **in the first month of the year**, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

### Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#).)

1. Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

**At that time, you will appear before me in the month of Abib**

, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15 ULT)

**It will always be a statute for you that in the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month,**  
you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29 ULT)

- (1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the first month of the year**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

- (2) Use the months that people know.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of March**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

It will always be a statute for you that **on the day I choose in late September** you must humble yourselves and do no work."

- (3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.

It will always be a statute for you that **in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work.

- (4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

It will always be a statute for you that in ***the day I choose in early autumn***  
<sup>1</sup> you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> The Hebrew says, “the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

(Go back to: [Exodus 12:2](#); [12:18](#); [13:4](#); [16:1](#); [19:1](#); [23:15](#); [34:18](#); [40:2](#); [40:17](#))

# How to Translate Names

## Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

## Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

## Examples from the Bible

You went over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the **Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called **Beerlahairoi**; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him **Moses** and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

**Saul** was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

## Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

**You went over the** Jordan

and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**

**Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because Herod**

wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because **King Herod** wants to kill you.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

**She named him** Moses

and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

She named him **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

**...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called** Beerlahairoi

; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

...she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

...a young man named **Paul**<sup>1</sup>

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

**But** Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

**But** Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

**It came about in Iconium that** Paul

and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:



<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)

**(Go back to:** [Introduction to Exodus](#); [Exodus 1:15](#); [2:21](#); [2:22](#); [4:25](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#); [6:16](#); [6:18](#); [6:21](#); [6:22](#); [6:23](#); [6:25](#); [13:4](#); [13:20](#); [14:2](#); [14:9](#); [15:20](#); [15:22](#); [15:23](#); [15:27](#); [Notes](#); [16:1](#); [Notes](#); [17:1](#); [17:7](#); [17:8](#); [17:10](#); [18:3](#); [18:4](#); [19:2](#); [23:15](#); [24:1](#); [24:9](#); [24:14](#); [31:2](#); [31:6](#); [34:18](#); [35:34](#); [36:1](#); [36:2](#); [36:8](#); [37:1](#); [38:21](#); [38:22](#); [38:23](#); [38:28](#); [39:2](#); [39:22](#))

# Hyperbole

## Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.
1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
  2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
  3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

**Hyperbole:** This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **one stone upon another** (Luke 19:44 ULT)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the learning of the Egyptians** (Acts 7:22 ULT)

- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

**Generalization:** This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

## Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Examples from the Bible

### Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about **all things** and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

### Examples of Generalization

**Can anything good come out of Nazareth?** (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

**A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich.** (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

### Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways  
and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

**The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops** as numerous as the sand on the seashore

. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.

**The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame...** (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

**In general**, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

**And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)

“And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

**The whole**

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

**Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”  
or:  
**Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

**The whole**

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

■ The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [Exodus 5:12](#); [7:24](#); [9:6](#); [16:2](#))

# Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining...,” “What if the sun stopped shining...,” “Suppose the sun stopped shining...,” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

## Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be one hundred years old, he would have seen his grandson's grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be one hundred years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be one hundred years old, he will see his grandson's grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

## Reason this Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

## Examples from the Bible

### Hypothetical situations in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.”  
(Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, ***if you had been here, my brother would not have died.***” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner, so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

### Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. ***If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed.*** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, ***if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?***” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

### Hypothetical situation in the future

***Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved;*** but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

### Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “***If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.*** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. ***I wish that you were either cold or hot!*** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

### Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.

- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_hypo](http://ufw.io/figs_hypo).

(Go back to: [Exodus 10:10](#))



## Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided”.

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should **enter under my roof**. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house”.

Let these words **go deeply into your ears**. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

**Purpose:** An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

## Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

the children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."  
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

...Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

he resolutely set his face

to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

**I am not worthy that you should enter** under my roof

. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

**Let these words** go deeply into your ears

(Luke 9:44 ULT)

**Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

"My eyes grow dim

from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:13](#); [2:24](#); [3:19](#); [8:15](#); [8:26](#); [10:29](#); [12:13](#); [12:48](#); [13:3](#); [22:8](#); [24:3](#); [25:2](#); [33:12](#); [33:13](#); [33:17](#); [34:9](#); [34:10](#))

# Imperatives - Other Uses

## Description

Imperative sentences are mainly used to express a desire or requirement that someone do something. In the Bible, sometimes imperative sentences have other uses.

This page answers the question: *What other uses are there for imperative sentences in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use an imperative sentence for some of the functions that they are used for in the Bible.

## Examples from the Bible

Speakers often use imperative sentences to tell or ask their listeners to do something. In Genesis 26, God spoke to Isaac and told him not to go to Egypt but to live where God would tell him to live.

Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, “**Do not go down** to Egypt; **live** in the land that I tell you to live in. (Genesis 26:2 ULT)

Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

## Imperatives that make things happen

God can make things happen by commanding that they happen. Jesus healed a man by commanding that the man be healed. The man could not do anything to obey the command, but Jesus caused him to be healed by commanding it. (In this context, the command “Be clean” means to “be healed” so that others around would know that it was safe to touch the man again.)

“I am willing. **Be clean.**” Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy. (Matthew 8:3 ULT)

In Genesis 1, God commanded that there should be light, and by commanding it, he caused it to exist. Some languages, such as the Hebrew of the Bible, have commands that are in the third person. English does not do that, and so it must turn the third-person command into a general second-person command, as in the ULT:

God said, “**Let there be** light,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

Languages that have third-person commands can follow the original Hebrew, which translates into English as something like, “light must be”.

## Imperatives that function as blessings

In the Bible, God blesses people by using imperatives. This indicates what his will is for them.

God blessed them and said to them, “**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.”

## Imperatives that function as conditions

An imperative sentence can also be used to tell the **condition** under which something will happen. The proverbs mainly tell about life and things that often happen. The purpose of Proverbs 4:6 below is not primarily to give a command, but to teach what people can expect to happen **if** they love wisdom.

...**do not abandon** wisdom and she will watch over you;  
**love** her and she will keep you safe. (Proverbs 4:6 ULT)

The purpose of Proverbs 22:6 below is teach what people can expect to happen if they teach their children the way they should go.

**Teach** a child the way he should go,  
and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

1. If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.
2. If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.
3. If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words "if" and "then."

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.

**Be clean.** (Matthew 8:3 ULT)

"You are now clean."  
"I now cleanse you."

**God said, "Let there be**

light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, "**There is now light** " and there was light.

**God blessed them and said to them, "Be fruitful**

, and multiply. Fill the earth, and subdue it. Have dominion over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth." (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

God blessed them and said to them, "**My will for you is that you be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **I want you to have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth."

(2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.

**God said, "Let there be light," and there was light.** (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, 'Let there be light,' **so** there was light.  
God said, "Light must be;" **as a result**, there was light.

(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words "if" and "then."

**Teach a child the way he should go,**  
**and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction.** (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translated as:

**"If** you teach a child the way he should go,  
**then** when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction."

(Go back to: [Exodus 10:4](#))

## Inclusive and Exclusive “We”

### Description

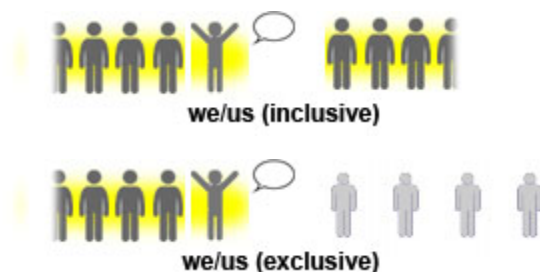
Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

This page answers the question: *What is inclusive and exclusive “we”?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Examples from the Bible

#### Inclusive

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

#### Exclusive

**we** have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

They said, “**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-exclusive\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:10](#))

# Introduction of a New Event

## Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events\]\]](#)

## Examples from the Bible

***In the days of Herod***, king of Judea, ***there was a certain priest named Zechariah***, from the division of Abijah. ***His wife was*** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first underlined phrase tells when it happened, and the next two underlined phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “One day” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

***One day*** while Zechariah was performing his duties as a priest before God in the order of his division, the priests followed their custom and chose him by lot to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

***The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way***. His mother Mary was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The underlined sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

***After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king***, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying,... (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened ***after*** Jesus was born.

***In those days*** John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying,... (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

***Then*** Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was a ***Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council***. This man came to Jesus at night time (John 3:1-2 ULT)



The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

<sup>6</sup> Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. <sup>7</sup> Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.  
(Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a summary of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

## Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies.

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

**Now there was a** Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council

. This man came to Jesus at night time and said to him... (John 3:1,2)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council.** One night he came to Jesus and said...

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council,** came to Jesus and said...

**As he passed by,** he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, who was sitting

at the tax collecting place, and he said to him... (Mark 2:14 ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collecting place. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

- (2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as: another time, someone.

**Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth.** (Genesis 7:6 ULT) - If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase "after that" can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

**After that**, when Noah was six hundred years old, the flood came upon the earth.

Again he began

to teach beside the lake. (Mark 4:1 ULT) - In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the lake.

**Another time** Jesus began to teach people again beside the lake.

Jesus went to the lake and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

**Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth.** (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.

**This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

**Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.** (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-background\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-participants\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:1](#))

# Merism

## Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULT)

I am the **Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

**Alpha and Omega** are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth...**, (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

**Heaven and earth** is a merism that includes everything that exists.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

## Examples from the Bible

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere”.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone”.

## Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth

... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**...

From the rising of the sun to its setting

, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

■ ***In all places***, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

■ **I praise you, Father, Lord of** heaven and earth

. (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

■ I praise you, Father, Lord of ***everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.***

**He will bless those who honor him, both** young and old

. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

■ He will bless ***all those*** who honor him, regardless of whether they are ***young or old.***

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:12; 23:25](#))

# Metaphor

## Description

A **metaphor** is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

## The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both *beautiful*. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a **metaphor** is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker's **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

## Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**", "family **tree**", "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

### Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going *down*,” and “I am feeling very *low*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

### Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...,” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

## Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

## Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you", the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet

. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

**It was because of your** hard hearts

that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law,



We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

■ **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay**

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

■ And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

■ **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you** to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

■ Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

■ **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay**

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

■ "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

■ "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

■ **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

■ Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

■ **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

■ Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

**Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you** to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

■ Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

**I will make you become** fishers of men

. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become **people who gather men**.  
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

(Go back to: Exodus 1:7; 1:14; 3:8; 3:17; 4:15; 4:21; 4:22; 4:25; 5:21; 7:3; 7:13; 7:14; 7:22; 8:19; 8:32; 9:12; 9:17; 9:34; 9:35; 10:1; 10:20; 10:21; 10:27; 11:10; 12:15; 12:19; 13:3; 13:9; 13:14; 14:4; 14:8; 14:17; 15:1; 15:3; 15:4; 15:6; 15:7; 15:10; 15:12; 15:15; 15:17; 15:21; 15:26; 16:4; 16:8; 16:12; 16:15; 16:29; 17:14; 18:8; 18:18; 18:19; 18:20; 18:21; 18:22; 18:25; 18:26; Notes; 19:4; 19:6; 19:7; 19:21; 19:24; 23:2; 23:33; 24:17; 30:14; 30:33; 30:38; 31:3; 31:13; 31:14; 31:16; 32:1; 32:8; 32:9; 32:10; 32:11; 32:12; 32:13; 32:21; 32:22; 32:26; 32:30; 33:9; 33:11; 33:12; 33:13; 33:17; 34:7; 34:9; 34:12; 34:15; 34:32; 35:21; 35:26; 35:31; 35:34; 35:35; 36:1; 36:2; 37:3; 37:13)

# Metonymy

## Description

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

## Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

## Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

## Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

...who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***This cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

"He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***The wine in this cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him ***the throne*** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

"The Lord God will give him ***the kingly authority*** of his father, David."

or:

"The Lord God will ***make him king*** like his ancestor, King David."

who warned you to flee from ***the wrath*** to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

"who warned you to flee from God's coming ***punishment?***"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

(Go back to: Exodus 1:1; 1:8; 1:16; 3:8; 3:17; 3:19; 3:20; 4:10; 4:12; 4:14; 4:15; 4:16; 4:22; 4:23; 5:2; 5:3; 5:21; 5:23; 6:1; 6:25; 7:4; 7:5; 8:19; 9:3; 9:4; 9:6; 9:15; 9:16; 10:17; 13:3; 13:9; 13:14; 14:5; 14:30; 15:2; 15:6; 15:9; 15:12; 15:16; 15:17; 15:22; 15:26; 16:3; 17:12; 17:13; 17:14; 17:16; 18:4; 18:8; 18:9; 18:10; 18:14; 19:3; 19:5; 19:8; 19:19; 20:6; 20:10; 20:24; 22:24; 23:13; 23:21; 23:22; 24:11; 24:16; 31:2; 32:11; 32:32; 32:33; 33:3; 33:12; 33:13; 33:14; 33:17; 33:19; 34:3; 34:5; 34:7; 34:9; 34:14; 34:20; 35:20)

# Numbers

## Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was **eighty-six** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about **three thousand** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

## Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

## Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands** (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

## Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

## Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

## Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals "130" instead of "one hundred thirty").

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Fractions](#)

**(Go back to:** [Exodus 1:5; 6:16; 6:18; 6:20; 7:7; 12:37; 12:40; 12:41; 13:6; 14:7; 15:27; 16:5; 16:22; 16:26; 16:29; 18:21; 18:25; 20:6; 22:30; 24:1; 24:18; 26:2; 26:7; 26:8; 26:16; 27:18; 30:13; 30:23; 31:15; 32:28; 34:18; 34:28; 36:13; 36:14; 36:15; 36:17; 36:18; 36:21; 36:24; 36:30; 38:9; 38:10; 38:11; 38:12; 38:13; 38:14; 38:18; 38:19; 38:24; 38:25; 38:26; 38:27; 38:28; 38:29; 39:6\)](#)

# Ordinal Numbers

## Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

## Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

## Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

## Examples from the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim, ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row



must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

## Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

**The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim,...**another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.  
There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim,...**the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

**A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four**

rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

**The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **twenty-four** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim,...Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [Exodus 12:2](#); [12:18](#); [16:1](#); [19:1](#); [20:5](#); [20:11](#); [35:2](#); [40:2](#); [40:17](#))

# Parallelism

## Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.  
This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

## Examples from the Bible

### (1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet  
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

### (2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,  
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

### (3) The second completes what is said in the first.

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,  
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

**(4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.**

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,  
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,  
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

## Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

**Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

“Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

**Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

“Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”

**For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

“For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”

- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

**Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

**you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULT)

“All you have done is lie to me.”

**Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [Exodus 9:2](#); [12:2](#); [13:9](#); [13:16](#); [23:22](#); [32:16](#))

# Personification

## Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

## Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

## Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

...sin crouches

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

...**sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

...**sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

...sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

...**even the** winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:10](#); [2:23](#); [3:9](#); [14:3](#); [15:7](#); [15:8](#); [15:12](#); [15:14](#); [23:8](#); [24:10](#); [37:9](#))

# Poetry

## Description

Poetry is one of the ways that people use the words and sounds of their language to make their speech and writing more beautiful and to express strong emotion. Through poetry, people can communicate deeper emotion than they can through simple non-poetic forms. Poetry gives more weight and elegance to statements of truth, such as proverbs, and is also easier to remember than ordinary speech.

This page answers the question: *What is poetry and how do I translate it into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

## Some things commonly found in poetry

- Many figures of speech such as Apostrophe
- Parallel lines (See [Parallelism](#) and Parallelism with the Same Meaning.)
- Repetition of some or all of a line

**Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his angel armies. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars.** (Psalm 148:2-3 ULT)

- Lines of similar length.

**Love is patient and kind; love does not envy or boast; it is not arrogant or rude.** (1 Corinthians 13:4 ULT)

- The same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines

“Twinkle, twinkle little **star**. How I wonder what you **are**.” (from an English rhyme)

- The same sound repeated many times > “Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater” (from an English rhyme)
- Old words and expressions
- Dramatic imagery
- Different use of grammar - including:
  - incomplete sentences
  - lack of connective words

## Some places to look for poetry in your language

1. Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children's games
2. Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors
3. Prayers, blessings, and curses
4. Old legends

## Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

## Reasons this is a translation issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language you may need to write it without the poetry.

- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

## Examples from the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching, and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely poetry.

for you saw my affliction;  
you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7 ULT)

This example of Parallelism with the Same Meaning has two lines that mean the same thing.

Yahweh, judge the nations;  
vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High.

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See [Parallelism](#).)

Keep your servant also from arrogant sins;  
let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13 ULT)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See [Personification](#).)

Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.  
Oh, give thanks to the God of gods, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.  
Oh, give thanks to the Lord of lords, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever. (Psalm 136:1-3 ULT)

This example repeats the phrases “give thanks” and “his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

## Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

1. Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
2. Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
3. Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

**Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked,  
or stand in the pathway with sinners,  
or sit in the assembly of mockers.  
But his delight is in the law of Yahweh,  
and on his law he meditates day and night.** (Psalm 1:1,2 ULT)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1,2.

(1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry. (The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

“Happy is the person not encouraged *to sin*  
Disrespect for God he will not *begin*  
To those who laugh at God, he is *no kin*.



God is his constant **delight**  
He does what God says **is right**  
He thinks of it all day **and night**

(2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people, or stop along the road to speak with sinners, or join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather he takes great joy in Yahweh's law, and he meditates on it day and night.

(3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or with those who do not respect God. They love to obey Yahweh's law, and they think about it all the time.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-symlanguage]]

(Go back to: [Exodus 15 General Notes](#))

# Predictive Past

## Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding;  
their leaders go hungry, and their masses have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is the predictive past?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

## Reason this is a translation issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

## Examples from the Bible

Now all the entrances to Jericho were closed because of the army of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;  
and the rule will be on his shoulder; (Isaiah 9:6 ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

And about these people also Enoch, the seventh in line from Adam, foretold, saying, "Look, the Lord came with tens of thousands of his holy ones, (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said "the Lord came."

## Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the future tense to refer to future events.
2. If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.
3. Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

**For to us a child** has been born

, to us a son has been given; (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

"For to us a child **will be born**, to us a son **will be given**;

(2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have handed

over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I **am about to hand** over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”

(3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have handed

over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I **am handing** over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”

(Go back to: [Exodus 15:17](#))

# Reflexive Pronouns

## Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using **reflexive pronouns**. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: "myself", "yourself", "himself", "herself", "itself", "ourselves", "yourselves", and "themselves". Other languages may have other ways to show this.

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

## Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

## Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

## Examples from the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If **I** should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

**Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULT)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place **by itself**. (John 20:6-7 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone”.
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

■ **If I should testify about** myself

alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)

■ “If I should **self-testify** alone, my testimony would not be true.”

**Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to** purify themselves

. (John 11:55)

■ “Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**.”

(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

■ He himself

took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

■ **“It was he who** took our sickness and bore our diseases.”

Jesus himself

was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

■ **“It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples were.”

(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

■ **Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he** himself

knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone”.

■ **When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain** by himself

. (John 6:15)

“When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain.”

(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

**He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place** by itself

. (John 20:6-7 ULT)

“He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying **in its own place.**”

(Go back to: [Exodus 5:11](#); [9:14](#))

## Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

### Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, ***"Is this how you insult God's high priest?"*** (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

### Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

***Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

***What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?*** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden...(Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

## Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? ***Of course not!*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

**Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULT)



Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

**This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed..."

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

**You should not insult God's high priest!**

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

**I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

**How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule

the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

**Or** what man among you is there who

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

**What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:18](#); [2:14](#); [2:20](#); [3:11](#); [4:11](#); [5:2](#); [5:4](#); [5:14](#); [5:22](#); [6:12](#); [6:30](#); [8:26](#); [10:7](#); [Notes](#); [14:5](#); [14:11](#); [14:12](#); [14:15](#); [15:11](#); [16:7](#); [16:8](#); [16:28](#); [Notes](#); [17:2](#); [17:3](#); [18:14](#); [22:27](#); [32:11](#); [32:12](#); [33:16](#))

# Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were **like sheep without a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as serpents** and harmless **as doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

## Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

## Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier of Christ Jesus**. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for **as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky**, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

**For the word of God is living and active and sharper** than any two-edged sword

. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**,

**How often did I long to gather your children together, just** as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

**If you have faith even as small** as a grain of mustard

, (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

**How often did I long to gather your children together, just** as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings  
, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:6](#); [4:16](#); [15:5](#); [15:7](#); [15:10](#); [15:16](#); [16:14](#); [24:10](#); [24:17](#))

# Symbolic Action

## Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No”. Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

## Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

## Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes”.

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

## Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and **knock**. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

**Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

**Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

**Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

**Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

**Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULT) - Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

**Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULT) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:31](#); [9:29](#); [9:33](#); [18:7](#))

# Synecdoche

## Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

**My soul** exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

**the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...” (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

## Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

## Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

“My soul

exalts the Lord.” (Luke 1:46 ULT)

“I exalt the Lord.”

...the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

...a representative of the Pharisees said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that my hands

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:21](#); [7:3](#); [7:13](#); [7:14](#); [7:22](#); [8:19](#); [8:32](#); [9:7](#); [9:12](#); [9:34](#); [9:35](#); [10:20](#); [10:26](#); [10:27](#); [10:28](#); [11:10](#); [12:23](#); [14:4](#); [14:8](#); [14:10](#); [14:17](#); [17:10](#); [17:11](#); [35:5](#); [35:21](#); [35:22](#); [35:26](#); [35:29](#); [35:34](#); [36:2](#))



# Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

## Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

We have here only five loaves of **bread** and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

## Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

## Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

## Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made **great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins...will be white like **snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

## Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

**Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves**

. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **are truly hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

**We have here only five** loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have here only five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

**your sins...will be white like** snow

(Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

your sins...will be white like **milk** your sins...will be white like **the moon**

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

**Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with** myrrh

. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

**We have here only five loaves of** bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

■ We have here only five loaves of ***baked crushed seed bread*** and two fish

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

■ **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for** jackals

(Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

■ I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for ***wild dogs***

**We have here only five** loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

■ We have here only five ***loaves of baked food*** and two fish

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

■ **to him who made** great lights

(Psalm 136:7 ULT)

■ to him who made ***the sun and the moon***

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:3](#); [15:20](#); [16:13](#); [16:14](#); [16:31](#); [19:18](#); [24:10](#); [25:6](#); [25:7](#); [28:9](#); [28:17](#); [28:20](#); [28:30](#); [28:33](#); [30:13](#); [30:23](#); [30:24](#); [39:10](#); [39:11](#); [39:12](#); [39:13](#))



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Version 14**

# Aaron

## Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the [priest](#) priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [priest](#), [Moses](#), [Israel](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 07:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 01:05
- Numbers 16:45

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:05** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:09** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:07** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:14; 4:27; 4:30; 5:20; 6:13; 6:20; 6:23; 6:25; 6:26; 7:8; 7:9; 7:10; 7:12; 7:19; 8:5; 8:6; 8:16; 8:17; 9:8; 10:8; 12:1; 12:50; 15:20; 16:2; 16:9; 16:10; 16:33; 16:34; 17:10; 18:12; 24:14; 27:21; 28:1; 28:3; 28:12; 28:29; 28:30; 28:35; 28:38; 28:40; 28:41; 28:43; 29:4; 29:5; 29:9; 29:10; 29:15; 29:19; 29:20; 29:21; 29:24; 29:32; 29:44; 30:7; 30:8; 30:10; 30:19; 30:30; 32:1; 32:2; 32:3; 32:5; 32:21; 32:22; 32:25; 32:35; 34:30; 34:31; 38:21; 40:12; 40:13](#))

## Abraham, Abram

### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 03:08
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:04
- Genesis 22:02
- James 02:23
- Matthew 01:02

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:24](#); [3:6](#); [3:15](#); [3:16](#); [4:5](#); [6:3](#))

## adversary, enemy

### Definition:

An "adversary" is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- The term "adversary" may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14
- Isaiah 09:11
- Job 06:23
- Lamentations 04:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

(Go back to: [Exodus 15:6](#); [15:9](#); [23:4](#); [23:22](#); [23:27](#))

## advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

### Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, wise)

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G1011, G1012, G1106, G4823, G4825

(Go back to: [Exodus 18:19](#))



## afflict, affliction, distress

### Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To "be afflicted with" means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To "afflict" someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
- A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
- When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
- Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
- The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:06
- Amos 05:12
- Colossians 01:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G2346, G2347, G3804

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:7](#); [4:31](#); [5:22](#); [5:23](#))

## alien, foreign, foreigner

### Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:17
- Acts 07:29-30
- Deuteronomy 01:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H312, H628, H776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G526, G915, G1854, G3581, G3927, G3941

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:22](#); [12:43](#); [18:3](#); [21:8](#))

# Almighty

## Facts:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful.” In the Bible, this term always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles “Almighty God” and “God Almighty” and “Lord Almighty” and “Lord God Almighty.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), power)

## Bible References:

- Exodus 06:2-5
- Genesis 17:01
- Genesis 35:11-13
- Job 08:03
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Revelation 01:7-8
- Ruth 01:19-21

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7706, G3841

(Go back to: [Exodus 6:3](#))

# altar

## Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

(Go back to: [Exodus 17:15](#); [20:24](#); [20:25](#); [20:26](#); [21:14](#); [24:4](#); [24:6](#); [27:1](#); [27:5](#); [27:7](#); [28:43](#); [29:12](#); [29:13](#); [29:16](#); [29:18](#); [29:20](#); [29:21](#); [29:25](#); [29:36](#); [29:37](#); [29:38](#); [29:44](#); [30:1](#); [30:18](#); [30:20](#); [30:27](#); [30:28](#); [31:8](#); [31:9](#); [32:5](#); [34:13](#); [35:15](#); [35:16](#); [37:25](#); [38:1](#); [38:3](#); [38:7](#); [38:30](#); [39:38](#); [39:39](#); [40:5](#); [40:6](#); [40:7](#); [40:10](#); [40:26](#); [40:29](#); [40:30](#); [40:32](#); [40:33](#))

# Amorite

## Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

## Bible References:

- Amos 02:09
- Ezekiel 16:03
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 09:10

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:08** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:8](#); [3:17](#); [13:5](#); [23:23](#); [33:2](#); [34:11](#))

## ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:16](#); [2:18](#); [3:6](#); [3:13](#); [3:15](#); [3:16](#); [4:5](#); [6:14](#); [6:25](#); [10:6](#); [12:3](#); [13:5](#); [13:11](#); [15:2](#); [18:4](#); [20:5](#); [20:12](#); [21:15](#); [21:17](#); [22:17](#); [34:7](#); [40:15](#))

## appoint, appointed

### Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4296, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:11](#); [2:3](#); [3:5](#); [3:22](#); [4:15](#); [8:22](#); [8:23](#); [9:5](#); [9:16](#); [14:21](#); [17:6](#); [17:12](#); [17:14](#); [18:21](#); [18:23](#); [19:7](#); [21:13](#); [21:21](#); [24:6](#); [26:15](#); [26:35](#); [28:12](#); [28:26](#); [28:37](#); [29:6](#); [29:24](#); [32:34](#); [33:10](#); [33:22](#); [36:20](#); [39:7](#); [39:19](#); [40:3](#); [40:5](#); [40:8](#); [40:18](#); [40:19](#); [40:20](#); [40:21](#); [40:24](#); [40:26](#); [40:28](#); [40:30](#))

## assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

### Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

### Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

### New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14
- Acts 07:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

(Go back to: [Exodus 9:19](#); [12:6](#); [16:3](#))



## atonement, atone, atoned

### Definition:

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserve because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone’s sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: atonement lid, forgive, propitiation, reconcile, [redeem](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 43:25-27
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Leviticus 04:20
- Numbers 05:08
- Numbers 28:22

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3722, H3725, G2643

(Go back to: [Exodus 30 General Notes](#); [30:15](#); [30:16](#))

## avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

### Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: punish, [just](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 018:47
- Romans 12:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G1556, G1557, G1558, G3709

(Go back to: [Exodus 22 General Notes](#))

# barley

## Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: grain, thresh, [wheat](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 07:14
- Numbers 05:15
- Revelation 06:06

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H8184, G2915, G2916

(Go back to: [Exodus 9:31](#))

## beast

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: authority, Daniel, [livestock](#), [nation](#), power, [reveal](#), Beelzebul)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 07:21
- Psalms 049:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H338, H929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G2226, G2341, G2342, G2934, G4968, G5074

(Go back to: [Exodus 9:25](#); [11:5](#); [11:7](#); [12:12](#); [12:29](#); [13:12](#); [13:15](#); [19:13](#); [22:10](#); [22:19](#))

# believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

## Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

### 1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

### 2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

### 3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

### 4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#), [faith](#), [trust](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- **43:01** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:03** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:09** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus. It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

(Go back to: [Exodus 4 General Notes](#))

## Benjamin, Benjamite

### Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), Paul, Rachel, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:08
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:04
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 03:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:3](#))

## bind, bond, bound

### Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), peace, prison, [servant](#), vow)

### Bible References:

- Leviticus 08:07

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

(Go back to: [Exodus 21:3](#); [21:22](#); [21:29](#); [21:34](#); [21:36](#); [22:8](#); [22:11](#); [22:14](#); [22:15](#); [24:14](#))



## bless, blessed, blessing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

(Go back to: [Exodus 12:32](#); [18:10](#); [20:11](#); [20:24](#); [23:25](#); [32:29](#); [39:43](#))

## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood is a metaphor for life, and when it is shed or poured out, it is a metaphor for the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: [flesh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:9](#); [4:25](#); [4:26](#); [7:17](#); [7:19](#); [7:20](#); [22:2](#); [22:3](#); [23:18](#); [24:8](#); [29:16](#); [34:25](#))

## blot out, wipe out

### Definition:

The terms “blot out” and “wipe out” are expressions that mean to completely remove or destroy something or someone.

- These expressions can be used in a positive sense, as when God “blots out” sins by forgiving them and choosing not to remember them.
- It is also often used in a negative sense, as when God “blots out” or “wipes out” a people group, destroying them because of their sin.
- The Bible talks about a person’s name being “blotted out” or “wiped out” of God’s Book of Life, which means that the person will not receive eternal life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, these expressions could be translated as “get rid of” or “remove” or “completely destroy” or “completely remove.”
- When referring to blotting someone’s name out of the Book of Life, this could be translated as “removed from” or “erased.”

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 29:20
- Exodus 32:30-32
- Genesis 07:23
- Psalm 051:01

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4229, H8045, G1813

(Go back to: [Exodus 17:14](#); [32:32](#); [32:33](#))

## bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:31](#); [12:27](#); [19:21](#); [21:18](#); [21:33](#); [32:28](#); [34:8](#))

## bread

### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), yeast)

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:20](#); [16:3](#); [16:4](#); [16:8](#); [16:12](#); [16:15](#); [16:22](#); [16:29](#); [16:32](#); [18:12](#); [23:25](#); [25:30](#); [29:2](#); [29:23](#); [29:32](#); [29:34](#); [34:28](#); [35:13](#); [39:36](#); [40:23](#))

# bridegroom

## Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the man who will marry the bride.

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the "Bridegroom" who will someday come for his "Bride," the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: bride)

## Bible References:

- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:15-16
- John 03:30
- Luke 05:35
- Mark 02:19
- Mark 02:20
- Matthew 09:15

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2860, G3566

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:25](#); [4:26](#))

# bronze

## Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: armor, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 02:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 01:15

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

(Go back to: [Exodus 26:11](#); [26:37](#); [27:2](#); [27:3](#); [27:4](#); [27:6](#); [27:10](#); [27:11](#); [27:17](#); [27:18](#); [27:19](#); [30:18](#); [35:16](#); [36:18](#); [36:38](#); [38:2](#); [38:3](#); [38:4](#); [38:5](#); [38:6](#); [38:8](#); [38:10](#); [38:11](#); [38:17](#); [38:19](#); [38:20](#); [38:30](#); [39:39](#))



# brother

## Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, [spirit](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:6](#); [2:11](#); [4:14](#); [4:18](#); [7:1](#); [7:2](#); [10:23](#); [16:15](#); [25:20](#); [28:1](#); [28:2](#); [28:4](#); [28:41](#); [32:27](#); [37:9](#))

## burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

### Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:03
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:04

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

(Go back to: [Exodus 5:9](#); [10:1](#); [20:12](#); [23:5](#))

## burnt offering, offering by fire

### Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:05
- Mark 12:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

(Go back to: [Exodus 10:25](#); [18:12](#); [20:24](#); [24:5](#); [29:18](#); [29:42](#); [30:9](#); [32:6](#))

## call, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:20](#); [15:23](#); [31:2](#); [35:30](#))

## Canaan, Canaanite

### Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ham, [Promised Land](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 09:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:07
- Genesis 47:02

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:05** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **04:06** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **04:09** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **05:03** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G5478

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:8](#); [3:17](#); [6:4](#); [6:15](#); [13:5](#); [13:11](#); [15:15](#); [16:35](#); [23:28](#); [33:2](#))

## captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

### Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, [exile](#), prison, seize)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:05
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 43:03
- Luke 04:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

(Go back to: [Exodus 12:29](#); [22:10](#))

## chariot, charioteers

### Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), Rome)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 08:29
- Acts 08:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G716, G4480

(Go back to: [Exodus 14:25](#); [15:4](#))



## children, child, offspring

### Definition:

The term "child" (plural "children") refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term "offspring" is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
- Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- Often in the Bible, "offspring" has the same meaning as "children" or "descendants."
- The term "seed" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as "children of God."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
- If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
- When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
- The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: descendant, [seed](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), beloved)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:28
- 3 John 01:04
- Galatians 04:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:05
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:07
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 05:25
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 12:34

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1081, G1085, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:17](#); [1:18](#); [2:3](#); [2:6](#); [2:7](#); [2:8](#); [2:9](#); [2:10](#))

## chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

### Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: [appoint](#), Christ)

### Bible References:

- 2 John 01:01
- Colossians 03:12
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:07
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 08:33

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H970, H972, H977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G3724, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

(Go back to: [Exodus 4 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

### Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This is a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Abraham, covenant](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48
- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 05:03

- Judges 15:18
- 2 Samuel 01:20
- Jeremiah 09:26
- Ezekiel 32:25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:03
- Acts 15:01
- Acts 11:03
- Romans 02:27
- Galatians 05:03
- Ephesians 02:11
- Philippians 03:03
- Colossians 02:11
- Colossians 02:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:03** "You must **circumcise** every male in your family."
- **05:05** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

(Go back to: [Exodus 6:12](#); [6:30](#); [12:44](#); [12:48](#))

# clan

## Definition:

The term "clan" refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses' father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- The term "clan" might also be translated as "family group" or "extended family" or "relatives."

(See also: [family](#), Jethro, [tribe](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:33-35
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 36:15-16
- Genesis 36:29-30
- Genesis 36:40
- Joshua 15:20
- Numbers 03:38-39

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H441, H1004, H4940

(Go back to: [Exodus 6:17](#); [6:25](#); [12:21](#))

## clean, wash

### Definition:

The term "clean" generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term "wash" refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be "clean" from sin.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
- "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
- Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29

- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- James 04:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

(Go back to: [Exodus 25:11](#); [25:17](#); [25:24](#); [25:29](#); [25:31](#); [25:36](#); [25:38](#); [25:39](#); [28:14](#); [28:22](#); [28:36](#); [29:4](#); [29:17](#); [Notes](#); [30:3](#); [30:19](#); [30:21](#); [30:35](#); [37:2](#); [37:6](#); [37:11](#); [37:16](#); [37:17](#); [37:22](#); [37:23](#); [37:24](#); [37:26](#); [37:29](#); [39:15](#); [39:25](#); [39:30](#); [40:12](#); [40:31](#))



## column, pillar

### Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), false god, image)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:04
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:09
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 09:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H352, H547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G4769

(Go back to: [Exodus 13:22](#); [27:10](#); [27:11](#); [38:19](#); [39:33](#))

## comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

### Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as, “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as, “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as, “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: encourage, Holy Spirit)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 01:04
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G302, G3870, G3874, G3875, G3888, G3890, G3931

(Go back to: [Exodus 13:17](#))

## command, commandment

### Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

### Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, [statute](#), law, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:22; 2:11; 2:13; 3:10; 3:16; 4:6; 4:7; 4:28; 4:31; 5:6; 5:10; 6:6; 6:13; 7:2; 7:4; 7:5; 7:6; 7:10; 7:20; 8:12; 8:30; 9:33; 10:6; 10:18; 11:8; 12:28; 12:50; 13:19; 15:20; 15:22; 15:26; 16:4; 16:16; 16:24; 16:28; 16:32; 16:34; 17:6; 17:9; 18:7; 18:23; 19:7; 19:17; 20:5; 20:6; 21:3; 21:11; 21:22; 23:15; 25:22; 27:20; 29:35; 31:6; 31:11; 32:8; 32:24; 32:34; 34:4; 34:7; 34:11; 34:18; 34:32; 34:34; 35:1; 35:4; 35:10; 35:20; 35:29; 36:1; 36:5; 36:6; 38:21; 38:22; 38:25; 39:1; 39:5; 39:7; 39:21; 39:26; 39:29; 39:31; 39:32; 39:42; 39:43; 40:16; 40:19; 40:21; 40:23; 40:25; 40:27; 40:29; 40:32](#))

## consecrate, consecrated, consecration

### Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or to “make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), pure, sanctify)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 04:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G1457, G5048

(Go back to: [Exodus 13:2](#); [19:22](#); [28:38](#); [Notes](#); [29:37](#); [29:44](#); [30:29](#); [31:13](#))

## consume, devour

### Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

### Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: [devour](#), wrath)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:09
- Numbers 11:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H398, H402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G355, G2618, G2654, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: [Exodus 5:13](#); [5:14](#); [33:3](#))

## court, courtyard

### Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as, “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: Gentile, judge, [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:09
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 03:26
- Psalms 065:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G833, G4259

(Go back to: [Exodus 27:9](#))

## covenant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12

- Mark 14:24
- Luke 01:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 07:08
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:06
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

(Go back to: [Exodus 1 General Notes](#); [2:24](#); [Notes](#); [6:4](#); [6:5](#); [Notes](#); [19:5](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [23:32](#); [Notes](#); [24:7](#); [24:8](#); [31:16](#); [Notes](#); [34:10](#); [34:12](#); [34:15](#); [34:27](#); [34:28](#))



## covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

### Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as "covenant faithfulness" was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: "faithful love;" "loyal, committed love;" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [grace](#), [Israel](#), [people of God](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezra 03:11
- Numbers 14:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

(Go back to: [Exodus 20 General Notes](#); [20:6](#); [34:6](#); [34:7](#))

# cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

## Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [yoke](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:03
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:09
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:05
- Hebrews 09:13

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H1241, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H5697, H6499, H6499, H6510, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8377, H8450, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022, G5022

(Go back to: [Exodus 12:32](#); [20:10](#); [20:24](#); [22:1](#); [24:5](#); [29:1](#))

## cry, cry out, outcry

### Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as, “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), plead)

### Bible References:

- Job 27:09
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G310, G349, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:23](#); [5:8](#); [14:15](#); [22:23](#); [22:27](#))

## curse, cursed, cursing

### Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed!**"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

(Go back to: [Exodus 18:22](#); [21:17](#); [22:28](#))

## cut off

### Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as, to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:06
- Proverbs 23:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:25](#); [8:9](#); [12:15](#); [12:19](#); [23:32](#); [24:8](#); [30:33](#); [30:38](#); [31:14](#); [34:10](#); [34:12](#); [34:13](#); [34:15](#); [34:27](#))

# darkness

## Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: corrupt, [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 01:06
- 1 John 02:08
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 01:13
- Isaiah 05:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 08:12

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

(Go back to: [Exodus 10:21](#); [10:22](#))

## declare, proclaim, announce

### Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), decree)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H262, H559, H816, H874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3870, G3955, G4296

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:18](#); [2:7](#); [2:8](#); [2:10](#); [2:22](#); [3:4](#); [7:11](#); [8:8](#); [8:25](#); [9:27](#); [10:24](#); [12:21](#); [12:31](#); [16:31](#); [17:7](#); [17:15](#); [19:3](#); [19:7](#); [19:20](#); [24:7](#); [24:16](#); [32:5](#); [33:7](#); [33:19](#); [34:5](#); [34:6](#); [34:15](#); [34:31](#); [36:2](#))

# deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

## Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), save)

## Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1560, G1659, G1807, G1929, G2673, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:17](#); [3:22](#); [5:23](#); [6:6](#); [12:36](#); [14:30](#); [18:4](#); [18:8](#); [33:6](#))



## desert, wilderness

### Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

### Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:03
- Matthew 04:01
- Matthew 11:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:18](#); [5:1](#); [5:3](#); [7:16](#); [8:27](#); [8:28](#); [14:11](#); [14:12](#); [15:22](#); [16:2](#); [16:32](#); [19:2](#))

## desolate, desolation, alone, deserted

### Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: [desert](#), devastate, ruin, waste)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 22:19
- Acts 01:20
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Lamentations 03:11
- Luke 11:17
- Matthew 12:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H490, H816, H910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7701, H7722, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G2048, G2049, G2050, G3443

(Go back to: [Exodus 23:29](#))

# destroy, destruction, annihilate

## Definition:

The term "destroy" means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term "destroyer" means, "a person who destroys."
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: angel, [Egypt](#), [firstborn](#), [Passover](#))

## Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Judges 16:24

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H622, H398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G355, G396, G622, G853, G1311, G1842, G2049, G2506, G2507, G2647, G2673, G2704, G3089, G3645, G4199, G5351, G5356

(Go back to: [Exodus 22:20](#))

# devour

## Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:08
- Amos 01:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:09

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:20](#); [3:2](#); [10:5](#); [10:12](#); [10:15](#); [12:7](#); [12:8](#); [12:9](#); [12:11](#); [12:15](#); [12:16](#); [12:18](#); [12:19](#); [12:20](#); [12:43](#); [12:44](#); [12:45](#); [12:46](#); [12:48](#); [13:3](#); [13:6](#); [13:7](#); [15:7](#); [16:12](#); [16:25](#); [16:32](#); [16:35](#); [21:28](#); [22:6](#); [22:31](#); [23:11](#); [23:15](#); [24:11](#); [24:17](#); [29:32](#); [29:33](#); [29:34](#); [34:15](#); [34:18](#); [34:28](#))

# die, dead, deadly, death,

## Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

### 1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

### 2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

## Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 02:15
- Colossians 02:20
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 05:10
- Romans 05:12
- Romans 06:10

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:6](#); [1:16](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [2:23](#); [4:23](#); [5:21](#); [8:13](#); [9:6](#); [9:19](#); [10:17](#); [11:5](#); [14:11](#); [16:3](#); [17:3](#); [21:12](#); [21:14](#); [21:20](#); [21:28](#); [21:29](#); [21:35](#); [22:2](#); [22:10](#); [23:7](#); [28:43](#); [32:12](#))

# dominion

## Definition:

The term "dominion" refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan's dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ's death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "authority" or "power" or "control."
- The phrase "have dominion over" could be translated as "rule over" or "manage."

(See also: authority, power)

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:10-11
- Colossians 01:13
- Jude 01:25

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G2634, G2904, G2961, G2963

(Go back to: [Exodus 21:8](#))

## donkey, mule

### Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:04
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G3678, G3688, G5268

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:20](#); [13:13](#); [20:17](#); [21:33](#); [22:4](#); [22:9](#); [22:10](#); [23:4](#); [23:5](#); [23:12](#); [34:20](#))



## drink offering

### Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [grain offering](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 25:29
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Genesis 35:14
- Jeremiah 07:16-18
- Numbers 05:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

(Go back to: [Exodus 29:40](#); [30:9](#))

## earth, earthen, earthly

### Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [metonymy](#))
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), world)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G4578, G5517

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:7; 1:10; 3:8; 3:17; 4:3; 4:20; 5:5; 5:12; 6:4; 6:8; 7:19; 7:21; 8:5; 8:6; 8:7; 8:14; 8:16; 8:17; 8:22; 8:24; 9:9; 9:14; 9:15; 9:16; 9:22; 9:23; 9:24; 9:25; 9:29; 9:33; 10:5; 10:12; 10:13; 10:14; 10:15; 10:21; 10:22; 11:6; 12:19; 12:25; 12:33; 12:48; 13:5; 13:11; 13:17; 15:12; 16:14; 16:35; 18:27; 19:5; 20:11; 23:10; 23:29; 23:30; 23:31; 31:17; 32:13; 33:1; 33:3; 34:8; 34:10; 34:12; 34:15; 34:24](#))

# Egypt, Egyptian

## Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:10
- Exodus 03:07
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 02:15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *\_Egypt\_* to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:1; 1:5; 1:8; 1:15; 1:17; 1:18; 1:19; 2:12; 2:14; 2:23; 3:7; 3:10; 3:11; 3:12; 3:16; 3:17; 3:18; 3:19; 4:18; 4:19; 4:20; 4:21; 5:4; 5:12; 6:5; 6:6; 6:7; 6:11; 6:13; 6:26; 6:27; 6:28; 6:29; 7:3; 7:4; 7:5; 7:11; 7:19; 7:21; 7:22; 8:5; 8:6; 8:7; 8:16; 8:17; 8:24; 9:4; 9:9; 9:18; 9:22; 9:23; 9:24; 9:25; 10:2; 10:7; 10:12; 10:13; 10:14; 10:15; 10:19; 10:21; 10:22; 11:1; 11:3; 11:4; 11:5; 11:6; 11:7; 11:9; 12:1; 12:12; 12:13; 12:17; 12:23; 12:27; 12:29; 12:30; 12:35; 12:36; 12:39; 12:40; 12:41; 12:42; 12:51; 13:3; 13:8; 13:9; 13:14; 13:15; 13:16; 13:17; 13:18; 14:5; 14:7; 14:8; 14:11; 14:12; 14:20; 14:25; 14:26; 14:27; 14:30; 14:31; 15:26; 16:1; 16:3; 16:6; 16:32; 17:3; 18:1; 18:9; 18:10; 19:1; 20:2; 22:21; 23:9; 23:15; 29:46; 32:1; 32:4; 32:7; 32:8; 32:11; 32:23; 33:1; 34:18](#))

## elder, older, old

### Definition:

The term "elder" or "older" refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish "elders" continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian "elders" gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:16](#); [4:29](#); [12:21](#); [17:6](#); [18:12](#); [19:7](#); [24:14](#))

# evil, wicked, unpleasant

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

(Go back to: [Exodus 7 General Notes](#); [10:10](#); [21:8](#); [22:9](#); [32:12](#); [32:14](#); [33:4](#))

# ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

## Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), shepherd)

## Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:19](#); [3:1](#); [25:5](#); [26:14](#); [29:22](#); [29:31](#); [34:3](#); [34:19](#); [35:7](#); [35:23](#); [36:19](#))

## exalt, exalted, exaltation

### Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), [glory](#), boast, [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 05:31
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 018:46

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

(Go back to: [Exodus 7:20](#); [15:2](#))



## exile, exiled

### Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian exile” (or “the exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “exile” could also be translated as to “send away” or to “force out” or to “banish.”
- The term “the exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: Babylon, Judah)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:14
- Daniel 02:25-26
- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G3927

(Go back to: [Exodus 20:26](#))

# face, facial

## Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:6](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [10:28](#); [10:29](#); [16:14](#); [20:3](#); [20:20](#); [23:15](#); [23:17](#); [25:20](#); [25:30](#); [25:37](#); [26:9](#); [28:25](#); [28:27](#); [28:37](#); [32:11](#); [32:12](#); [32:20](#); [33:11](#); [33:14](#); [33:15](#); [33:16](#); [33:19](#); [33:20](#); [33:23](#); [34:6](#); [34:20](#); [34:23](#); [34:24](#); [34:29](#); [34:30](#); [34:33](#); [34:35](#); [37:9](#); [39:18](#); [39:20](#))

# faith

## Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

(Go back to: [Exodus 14 General Notes](#))

## faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: adultery, [believe](#), disobey, [faith](#), [believe](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:1](#); [4:5](#); [4:8](#); [4:9](#); [18:21](#); [19:9](#))

## family, household

### Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of “family” to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: [clan](#), [ancestor](#), [house](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 01:21
- Joshua 02:12-13
- Luke 02:04

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

(Go back to: [Exodus 6:14](#); [6:15](#); [6:19](#); [6:24](#))

# famine

## Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 07:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:06
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 04:25
- Matthew 24:08

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042

(Go back to: [Exodus 16:3](#))

## favor, favorable, favoritism

### Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:07
- 2 Corinthians 01:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:05

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G1184, G3685, G4380, G4382, G5485, G5486

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:21](#); [11:3](#); [12:36](#); [33:12](#); [33:13](#); [33:16](#); [33:17](#); [34:9](#))



# fear, afraid, dread

## Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term "dread" refers to extreme or intense fear.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect;" or "deep respect;" "revere;" or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or, "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or, "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: marvel, awe, [Lord](#), power, [Yahweh](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:17](#); [1:21](#); [2:14](#); [3:6](#); [9:30](#); [14:10](#); [14:13](#); [14:31](#); [15:11](#); [20:20](#); [34:10](#); [34:30](#))

## feast, feasting

### Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G1062, G1173, G1859, G2165, G4910

(Go back to: [Exodus 9:5](#); [10:9](#); [12:14](#); [13:6](#); [13:10](#); [23:15](#); [23:18](#); [27:21](#); [28:43](#); [29:4](#); [29:10](#); [29:11](#); [29:30](#); [29:32](#); [29:42](#); [29:44](#); [30:16](#); [30:18](#); [30:20](#); [30:26](#); [30:36](#); [31:7](#); [32:5](#); [33:7](#); [34:18](#); [34:25](#); [35:21](#); [38:8](#); [38:30](#); [39:32](#); [39:40](#); [40:2](#); [40:6](#); [40:7](#); [40:12](#); [40:22](#); [40:24](#); [40:26](#); [40:29](#); [40:30](#); [40:32](#); [40:34](#); [40:35](#))

# fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

## Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: pure)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:2](#); [9:23](#); [9:24](#); [12:8](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [13:21](#); [13:22](#); [14:24](#); [19:18](#); [22:6](#); [29:14](#); [29:34](#); [32:20](#); [32:24](#); [35:3](#); [40:38](#))

## firstborn

### Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), [sacrifice](#), [son](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 02:6-7
- Revelation 01:05

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

(Go back to: [Exodus 4 General Notes](#); [4:22](#); [4:23](#); [6:14](#); [11:5](#); [12:12](#); [12:29](#); [13:2](#); [13:13](#); [13:15](#); [22:29](#); [34:20](#))

## firstfruits

### Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: [firstborn](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 01:18
- Jeremiah 02:03
- Psalms 105:36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G536

(Go back to: [Exodus 23:16](#); [23:19](#); [34:22](#); [34:26](#))

# flesh

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

## Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:7](#); [16:8](#); [16:12](#); [21:28](#); [28:42](#); [29:14](#); [29:31](#); [29:32](#); [30:32](#))

## flock, herd

### Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both sheep and cattle, then you may need to say "groups of sheep" where the Bible says only “flocks,” and "groups of cattle" where the Bible says only “herds.”

(See also: goat, [cow](#), pig, [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30
- Matthew 26:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:16](#); [2:17](#); [3:1](#); [10:24](#); [12:21](#); [12:32](#); [12:38](#); [20:24](#); [22:1](#))

## **forsake, forsaken, leave**

### **Definition:**

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 06:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 071:18

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:20](#); [23:5](#))



## found, founder, foundation

### Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: cornerstone, create)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H134, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

(Go back to: [Exodus 9:18](#))

## freewill offering

### Definition:

A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

- If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
- The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
- When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
- The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), Ezra, [feast](#), [grain offering](#), guilt offering, [law](#), [sin offering](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:06
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Leviticus 07:15-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5068, H5071

(Go back to: [Exodus 25:2](#); [35:21](#); [35:29](#); [36:3](#))

## fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

### Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces--”that is children.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural, “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 01:11
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 03:08
- Matthew 07:17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

(Go back to: [Exodus 10:15](#))

## fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

### Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), Christ, minister, [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:07** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:05** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:07** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:05** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

(Go back to: [Exodus 1 General Notes](#))

# Gad

## Facts:

Gad was one of the sons of Jacob. Jacob was also named Isreal.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The names of the cities Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: census, [prophet](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:18
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:11
- Joshua 01:12
- Joshua 21:38

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G1045

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:4](#))

## gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

### Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the gate cannot be opened from the outside.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4439, G4440

(Go back to: [Exodus 20:10](#); [32:26](#); [35:17](#); [38:18](#); [38:31](#); [40:8](#); [40:33](#))

# generation

## Definition:

The term “generation” generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

## Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: descendant, [evil](#), [ancestor](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:07
- Mark 08:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:15](#); [12:14](#); [12:17](#); [12:42](#); [16:32](#); [16:33](#); [17:16](#); [27:21](#); [29:42](#); [30:8](#); [30:10](#); [30:21](#); [30:31](#); [31:13](#); [31:16](#); [40:15](#))



## **gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around**

### **Definition:**

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: loins)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 01:13
- Job 38:03

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H640, H247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G328, G1241, G4024

(Go back to: [Exodus 12:11](#))

## **glean, gleanings**

### **Definition:**

The term “glean” means to go through a field or orchard and pick up whatever grain or fruit the harvesters have left behind.

- God commanded the Israelites to let the widows, poor people, and foreigners glean the leftover grain in order to provide food for themselves.
- Sometimes the owner of the field would allow the gleaners to go directly behind the harvesters to glean, which enabled them to glean much more of the grain. A clear example of how this worked is in the story of Ruth, who was generously allowed to glean among the harvesters in the fields of her relative Boaz.
- Other ways to translate “glean” can be “pick up” or “gather” or “collect.”

(See also: Boaz, grain, [harvest](#), Ruth)

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Isaiah 17:4-5
- Job 24:06
- Ruth 02:02
- Ruth 02:15

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3950, H3951, H5953, H5955

(Go back to: [Exodus 16:4](#); [16:5](#); [16:16](#); [16:17](#); [16:18](#); [16:21](#); [16:22](#); [16:26](#); [16:27](#))

## glory, glorious, glorify

### Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

### Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh's presence in a particular location.

### New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God's greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God's greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, [exalt](#), obey, [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28

- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:19
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:05
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glor**y to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glor**y and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glor**y of God.”
- **37:08** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glor**y if you believe in me?”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2744, G4888

(Go back to: [Exodus 16:7](#); [16:10](#); [24:16](#); [24:17](#); [33:18](#); [33:22](#); [Notes](#))

# God

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”  
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

(Go back to: Exodus 1:17; 1:20; 1:21; 2:23; 2:24; 2:25; 3:1; 3:4; 3:6; 3:11; 3:12; 3:13; 3:14; 3:15; 3:16; 3:18; 4:5; 4:16; 4:20; 4:27; 5:1; 5:3; 5:8; 6:2; 6:7; 7:1; 7:16; 8:10; 8:19; 8:25; 8:26; 8:27; 8:28; 9:1; 9:13; 9:28; 9:30; 10:3; 10:7; 10:8; 10:16; 10:17; 10:25; 10:26; 12:12; 13:17; 13:18; 13:19; 14:19; 15:2; 15:26; 16:12; 17:9; 18:1; 18:4; 18:5; 18:11; 18:12; 18:15; 18:16; 18:19; 18:21; 18:23; 19:3; 19:17; 20:1; 20:2; 20:3; 20:5; 20:7; 20:10; 20:12; 20:19; 20:20; 20:21; 20:23; 21:6; 22:8; 22:9; 22:20; 22:28; 23:13; 23:19; 23:24; 23:25; 23:33; 24:10; 24:11; 24:13; 29:45; 29:46; 31:3; 31:18; 32:1; 32:4; 32:8; 32:11; 32:16; 32:23; 32:27; 32:31; 34:15; 34:16; 34:17; 34:23; 34:24; 34:26; 35:31)

## godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

### Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “the godly” could be translated as “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: nominaladj)
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase “in a godly manner” could be translated as “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”
- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also [evil](#), honor, obey, [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- Job 27:10
- Proverbs 11:09
- Acts 03:12
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 1 Timothy 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:12
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- 1 Peter 04:18
- Jude 01:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G516, G763, G764, G765, G2124, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2316, G2317

(Go back to: [Exodus 18 General Notes](#))

## gold, golden

### Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), ark of the covenant, false god, [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:22; 11:2; 12:35; 20:23; 25:3; 25:11; 25:12; 25:13; 25:17; 25:18; 25:24; 25:25; 25:26; 25:28; 25:29; 25:31; 25:36; 25:38; 25:39; 26:6; 26:29; 26:32; 26:37; 28:5; 28:6; 28:8; 28:11; 28:13; 28:14; 28:15; 28:20; 28:22; 28:23; 28:24; 28:26; 28:27; 28:33; 28:34; 28:36; 30:3; 30:4; 30:5; 31:4; 32:2; 32:3; 32:24; 32:31; 35:5; 35:22; 35:32; 36:13; 36:34; 36:36; 36:38; 37:2; 37:3; 37:4; 37:6; 37:7; 37:11; 37:12; 37:13; 37:15; 37:16; 37:17; 37:22; 37:23; 37:24; 37:26; 37:27; 37:28; 38:24; 39:2; 39:3; 39:5; 39:6; 39:8; 39:13; 39:15; 39:16; 39:17; 39:19; 39:20; 39:25; 39:30; 39:38; 40:5; 40:26](#))



## good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

### Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), profit, [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.

- **28:01** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:2](#); [3:8](#); [14:12](#); [18:17](#); [33:19](#))

## grace, gracious

### Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 04:33
- Acts 06:08
- Acts 14:04
- Colossians 04:06
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:07
- John 01:16
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

(Go back to: [Exodus 22:27](#))

## grain offering

### Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), guilt offering , [sacrifice](#), [sin offering](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 02:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(Go back to: [Exodus 30:9](#); [40:29](#))

## grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

### Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: bury, [death](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:06
- Genesis 50:05
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 03:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:04** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:06** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:07** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:09** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:04** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:05** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

(Go back to: [Exodus 14:11](#))

# hand

## Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

## Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), honor, power)

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G5495, G5496, G5497

(Go back to: Exodus 2:5; 2:19; 3:8; 3:19; 3:20; 4:2; 4:4; 4:6; 4:7; 4:13; 4:17; 4:20; 4:21; 5:21; 6:1; 6:8; 7:4; 7:5; 7:15; 7:17; 7:19; 8:5; 8:6; 8:17; 9:3; 9:15; 9:22; 9:29; 9:33; 9:35; 10:12; 10:21; 10:22; 10:25; 12:11; 13:3; 13:9; 13:14; 13:16; 14:8; 14:16; 14:21; 14:26; 14:27; 14:30; 15:9; 15:17; 15:20; 16:3; 17:5; 17:9; 17:11; 17:12; 17:16; 18:9; 18:10; 19:13; 21:16; 21:20; 21:24; 22:4; 22:8; 22:11; 23:1; 23:31; 24:11; 26:17; 26:19; 28:41; 29:9; 29:10; 29:15; 29:19; 29:20; 29:24; 29:25; 29:29; 29:33; 29:35; 30:19; 30:21; 32:4; 32:11; 32:15; 32:19; 32:29; 33:22; 33:23; 34:4; 34:29; 35:25; 35:29; 36:22; 36:24; 37:16; 38:21; 40:31)

## harvest, reap

### Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as, to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: [firstfruits](#), festival, good news)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 05:7-8
- Leviticus 19:09
- Matthew 09:38
- Ruth 01:22
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G270, G2325, G2326, G2327

(Go back to: [Exodus 23:16](#); [34:22](#))



# head

## Definition:

The word "head" refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including "top," "first," "beginning," "source," and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term "head" include:

- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression "head of a mountain" refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term "head" refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase "You have made me the head over nations" means "You have made me the ruler..." or "You have given me authority over...."

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "authority" or "ruler" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include "top" or "beginning" or "source" or "leader."

(See also: grain)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

(Go back to: [Exodus 6:14](#); [6:25](#); [12:2](#); [12:9](#); [17:9](#); [17:10](#); [18:25](#); [19:20](#); [24:17](#); [26:24](#); [28:32](#); [29:6](#); [29:7](#); [29:10](#); [29:15](#); [29:17](#); [29:19](#); [30:12](#); [30:23](#); [34:2](#); [36:29](#); [36:38](#); [38:17](#); [38:19](#); [38:28](#))

# heart

## Definition:

The term "heart" refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

## Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: hard)

## Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:14](#); [4:21](#); [7:3](#); [7:13](#); [7:14](#); [7:22](#); [7:23](#); [8:15](#); [8:19](#); [8:32](#); [9:7](#); [9:12](#); [9:14](#); [9:21](#); [9:34](#); [9:35](#); [10:1](#); [10:20](#); [10:27](#); [11:10](#); [14:4](#); [14:5](#); [14:8](#); [14:17](#); [15:8](#); [25:2](#); [28:3](#); [28:29](#); [28:30](#); [31:6](#); [35:5](#); [35:10](#); [35:21](#); [35:22](#); [35:25](#); [35:26](#); [35:29](#); [35:34](#); [35:35](#); [36:1](#); [36:2](#); [36:8](#))

# heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

## Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

## Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(Go back to: [Exodus 9:8](#); [9:10](#); [9:22](#); [9:23](#); [10:21](#); [10:22](#); [16:4](#); [17:14](#); [20:4](#); [20:11](#); [20:22](#); [24:10](#); [31:17](#); [32:13](#))

# Hittite

## Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: descendant, Esau, [foreigner](#), Ham, [mighty](#), Solomon, Uriah)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 01:4-5
- Nehemiah 09:08
- Numbers 13:27-29

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

(Go back to: [Exodus 23:28](#))

## Hivite

### Facts:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

- All these groups, including the Hivites, were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
- Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
- When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Hamor, Noah, Shechem)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 08:7-8
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 34:02
- Joshua 09:1-2
- Judges 03:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2340

(Go back to: [Exodus 23:23](#); [23:28](#); [33:2](#))

## holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, [consecrate](#), sanctify, [set apart](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38

- Acts 07:33
- Acts 11:08
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:22
- 1 Thessalonians 03:13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

(Go back to: [Exodus 3 General Notes](#); [3:5](#); [Notes](#); [12:16](#); [15:13](#); [16:23](#); [Notes](#); [19:6](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [22:31](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [26:33](#); [26:34](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [28:2](#); [28:4](#); [28:29](#); [28:35](#); [28:36](#); [28:38](#); [Notes](#); [29:6](#); [29:29](#); [29:31](#); [29:33](#); [29:34](#); [29:37](#); [30:10](#); [30:13](#); [30:24](#); [30:25](#); [30:29](#); [30:31](#); [30:32](#); [30:35](#); [30:36](#); [30:37](#); [31:10](#); [31:14](#); [31:15](#); [35:2](#); [35:19](#); [35:21](#); [36:1](#); [36:3](#); [36:4](#); [36:6](#); [37:29](#); [38:24](#); [38:25](#); [38:26](#); [38:27](#); [Notes](#); [39:1](#); [39:30](#); [39:41](#); [40:9](#); [40:10](#); [40:13](#))

## honey, honeycomb

### Definition:

“Honey” is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God’s words and decrees are said to be “sweeter than honey.” (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person’s words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, [Philistines](#), Samson)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 06:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 05:06
- Proverbs 05:03

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G3192

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:8](#); [3:17](#); [13:5](#); [33:3](#))



## horse, warhorse, horseback

### Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), Solomon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:04
- 2 Kings 02:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 06:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:20](#); [9:3](#); [14:9](#); [14:23](#); [15:1](#); [15:19](#); [15:21](#))

# horseman

**Definition:**

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- The Israelites believed that using horses in battle placed too much emphasis on their own strength rather than on Yahweh, so they did not have many horsemen.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: [chariot](#), [horse](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 01:05
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6571, H7395, G2460

(Go back to: [Exodus 14:9](#); [14:23](#))

# house

## Definition:

The term "house" refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as "household" or "descendants," etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshipped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: David, descendant, house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:1](#); [1:21](#); [2:1](#); [3:22](#); [6:14](#); [7:23](#); [8:13](#); [8:21](#); [8:24](#); [9:19](#); [9:20](#); [10:6](#); [12:3](#); [12:4](#); [12:7](#); [12:13](#); [12:15](#); [12:22](#); [12:23](#); [12:27](#); [12:30](#); [12:46](#); [13:3](#); [13:14](#); [16:31](#); [19:3](#); [20:2](#); [20:17](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#); [23:19](#); [25:11](#); [25:27](#); [26:29](#); [26:33](#); [28:26](#); [30:4](#); [34:26](#); [36:34](#); [37:2](#); [37:14](#); [37:27](#); [38:5](#); [39:19](#); [40:38](#))

## humble, humbled, humility

### Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- James 01:21
- James 03:13
- James 04:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:04
- Matthew 23:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** “God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

(Go back to: [Exodus 10:3](#))

# inherit, inheritance, heir

## Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An "inheritance" is the thing(s) that is received, and an "heir" is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

## Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "inherited blessings."

(See also: heir, [Canaan](#), [Promised Land](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

(Go back to: [Exodus 15:17](#))

# iniquity

## Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), transgress, trespass)

## Bible References:

- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

(Go back to: [Exodus 20:5](#); [28:38](#); [28:43](#); [34:7](#))

# innocent

## Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, “blood” can represent “killing,” so “innocent blood” refers to “killing people who did not deserve to die.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- “To shed innocent blood” can be translated as “to kill people who did not deserve to die.”

(See also: guilt)

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:04
- 1 Samuel 19:05
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:07
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 09:23
- Romans 16:18

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:04** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:08** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G121

(Go back to: [Exodus 21:28](#))

## Israel, Israelite, Jacob

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), deceive, Esau, Isaac, [Israel](#), Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:1](#); [1:5](#); [2:24](#); [3:6](#); [3:15](#); [4:5](#); [6:3](#); [19:3](#))



## Israel, Israelites

### Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:01** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *Israel* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel* peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished *Israel* again for worshiping idols.
- **43:06** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:1; 1:7; 1:9; 1:12; 1:13; 2:23; 2:25; 3:9; 3:10; 3:11; 3:13; 3:14; 3:15; 3:16; 3:18; 4:22; 4:29; 4:31; 5:1; 5:2; 5:14; 5:15; 5:19; 6:5; 6:6; 6:9; 6:11; 6:12; 6:13; 6:14; 6:26; 6:27; 7:2; 7:4; 7:5; 9:4; 9:6; 9:7; 9:26; 9:35; 10:20; 10:23; 11:7; 11:10; 12:3; 12:6; 12:15; 12:19; 12:21; 12:27; 12:28; 12:31; 12:35; 12:37; 12:40; 12:42; 12:47; 12:50; 12:51; 13:2; 13:18; 13:19; 14:2; 14:3; 14:5; 14:8; 14:10; 14:15; 14:16; 14:19; 14:20; 14:22; 14:25; 14:29; 14:30; 14:31; 15:1; 15:19; 15:22; 16:1; 16:2; 16:3; 16:6; 16:9; 16:10; 16:12; 16:15; 16:17; 16:31; 16:35; 17:1; 17:5; 17:6; 17:7; 17:8; 17:11;](#)

18:1; 18:8; 18:9; 18:12; 18:25; 19:1; 19:2; 19:3; 19:6; 20:22; 24:1; 24:4; 24:5; 24:9; 24:10; 24:11; 24:17; 25:2; 25:22;  
27:20; 27:21; 28:1; 28:9; 28:11; 28:12; 28:21; 28:29; 28:30; 28:38; 29:28; 29:43; 29:45; 30:12; 30:16; 30:31; 31:13;  
31:16; 31:17; 32:4; 32:8; 32:20; 32:27; 33:5; 33:6; 34:23; 34:27; 34:30; 34:32; 34:34; 34:35; 35:1; 35:4; 35:20; 35:29;  
35:30; 36:3; 39:6; 39:7; 39:14; 39:32; 39:42; 40:36; 40:38)

## Jebus, Jebusite

### Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Ham, Jerusalem, Melchizedek)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:14
- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Judges 01:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:8](#); [3:17](#); [13:5](#); [23:23](#); [33:2](#); [34:11](#))

## Joseph (OT)

### Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Jacob](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 04:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:02 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **08:04** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **08:05** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **08:07** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **08:09 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **09:02** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G2500, G2501

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:6](#); [1:8](#); [13:19](#))

# Joshua

## Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Jericho](#), [Moses](#), [Promised Land](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
- Deuteronomy 03:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 01:03
- Numbers 27:19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:04** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **14:08** Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G2424

(Go back to: [Exodus 17:9](#); [17:10](#); [17:13](#); [17:14](#); [32:17](#); [33:11](#))

## joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

### Definition:

#### joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

#### rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: [metonymy](#))

### Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7

- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:14](#))

# Judah

## Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah." When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah, which includes the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem.

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), Jew, Judah, [Judea](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:09
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:02
- Luke 03:33
- Ruth 01:02

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:2](#))



# Judea

## Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Galilee, Edom, [Judah](#), Judah, Samaria)

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2453

(Go back to: [Exodus 31:2](#); [35:30](#); [38:22](#))

## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, [just](#), law, [law](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:14](#); [5:21](#); [18:13](#); [18:16](#); [18:22](#); [18:26](#); [23:6](#); [28:15](#); [28:30](#))

# just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

## Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."
- Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."
- The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
- The term "unjustly" could be translated as, "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."
- Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly." (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."
- The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: forgive, guilt, [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16

- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:03
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 03:8
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:03
- Luke 18:08
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:04
- Romans 04:1-3
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Galatians 03:11
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Titus 03:6-7
- Hebrews 06:10
- James 02:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

(Go back to: [Exodus 21 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

# king, kingdom, kingship

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

## Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:06** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:8](#); [1:15](#); [1:17](#); [1:18](#); [2:23](#); [3:18](#); [3:19](#); [5:4](#); [6:11](#); [6:13](#); [6:27](#); [6:29](#); [14:5](#); [14:8](#))

# kingdom

## Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(Go back to: [Exodus 19:6](#))



## know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Definition:

The term "know" and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), wise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G4267, G4894

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:5](#); [1:8](#); [2:14](#); [2:25](#); [3:7](#); [3:11](#); [3:19](#); [4:14](#); [5:2](#); [6:3](#); [6:7](#); [6:26](#); [7:5](#); [7:15](#); [7:17](#); [8:10](#); [8:20](#); [8:22](#); [8:29](#); [9:14](#); [9:29](#); [9:30](#); [10:2](#); [10:7](#); [10:26](#); [11:4](#); [11:7](#); [11:8](#); [12:17](#); [12:22](#); [12:31](#); [12:39](#); [12:41](#); [12:46](#); [12:51](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:9](#); [13:14](#); [13:16](#); [14:4](#); [14:8](#); [14:18](#); [16:3](#); [16:6](#); [16:12](#); [16:15](#); [16:27](#); [16:29](#); [18:1](#); [18:11](#); [18:16](#); [18:20](#); [20:2](#); [21:2](#); [21:3](#); [21:4](#);

21:5; 21:7; 21:36; 22:6; 23:9; 23:15; 25:32; 29:46; 32:1; 32:11; 32:12; 32:22; 32:23; 33:5; 33:7; 33:12; 33:13; 33:16;  
33:17; 34:18; 34:29; 34:34; 37:18)

## **lamb, Lamb of God**

### **Definition:**

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), shepherd)

### **Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 12:03
- Ezra 08:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 01:29
- John 01:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:03
- Revelation 15:3-4

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **05:07** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:08** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.
- **48:08** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- **48:09** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7716, G721, G2316

(Go back to: [Exodus 29:38](#))

## law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

### Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
  - all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: instruct, [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, lawful, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\

- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws.**"\

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

(Go back to: [Introduction to Exodus](#); [Exodus 12:49](#); [Notes](#); [13:9](#); [Notes](#); [16:4](#); [18:16](#); [18:20](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## Levi, Levite, Levitical

### Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:32

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:2](#); [2:1](#); [4:14](#); [6:16](#); [6:19](#); [6:25](#); [32:26](#); [32:28](#); [38:21](#))

# life, live, living, alive

## Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

### 1. Physical life

- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

### 2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives" could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term "life" could be translated in the following ways: "eternal life" or "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

## Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14



## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were *\_living\_* in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:5](#); [1:17](#); [1:18](#); [1:22](#); [4:18](#); [4:19](#); [12:4](#); [12:16](#); [15:9](#); [16:16](#); [19:13](#); [21:23](#); [21:30](#); [21:35](#); [22:4](#); [22:18](#); [23:9](#); [30:12](#); [30:15](#); [30:16](#))

# light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten

## Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

## Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [righteous](#), [true](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 John 02:08
- 2 Corinthians 04:06
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 02:05
- John 01:05
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 06:23
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

(Go back to: [Exodus 13:21](#))

## livestock, animals

### Facts:

The term “livestock” refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This term could also be translated as “farm animals.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cow](#), [ox](#), [donkey](#), goat, [horse](#), [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 03:15-17
- Genesis 30:29
- Joshua 01:14-15
- Nehemiah 09:36-37
- Numbers 03:41

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H929, H4399, H4735

(Go back to: [Exodus 8:17](#); [8:18](#); [9:10](#); [13:2](#))

# locust

## Facts:

The term “locust” refers to a type of large, flying grasshopper that sometimes flies with many other of its kind in a very destructive swarm that eats all vegetation.

- Locusts and other grasshoppers are large, straight-winged insects with long, jointed back legs that give them the ability to jump a long distance way.
- In the Old Testament, swarming locusts were referred to figuratively as a symbol or picture of the overwhelming devastation that would come as a result of Israel's disobedience.
- God sent locusts as one of the ten plagues against the Egyptians.
- The New Testament says that locusts were a main source of food for John the Baptist while he was living in the desert.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [captive](#), [Egypt](#), [Israel](#), John (the Baptist), plague)

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:28
- Deuteronomy 28:38-39
- Exodus 10:3-4
- Mark 01:06
- Proverbs 30:27-28

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H697, H1357, H1462, H1501, H2284, H3218, H5556, H6767, G200

(Go back to: [Exodus 10:13](#); [10:14](#); [10:19](#))

## lord, Lord, master, sir

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09

- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:01
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 02:01
- 1 Peter 01:03
- Jude 01:05
- Revelation 15:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:10](#); [4:13](#); [5:22](#); [15:17](#); [21:4](#); [21:5](#); [21:6](#); [21:8](#); [32:22](#); [34:9](#))

# love, beloved

## Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
  - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
  - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
  - In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
  - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
  - The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.
3. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:07
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:06
- Jeremiah 02:02
- John 03:16

- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:09
- Song of Solomon 01:02

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

(Go back to: [Exodus 20:6](#); [21:5](#))



# manna

## Definition:

Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

- Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
- The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
- On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they wouldn't have to gather it on their day of rest.
- The word "manna" means "what is it?"
- In the Bible, manna is also referred to as "bread from heaven" and "grain from heaven."

## Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could include "thin white flakes of food" or "food from heaven."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [bread](#), [desert](#), grain, [heaven](#), [Sabbath](#))

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:3
- Exodus 16:27
- Hebrews 09:3-5
- John 06:30-31
- Joshua 05:12

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4478, G3131

(Go back to: [Exodus 16:31](#); [16:33](#); [16:35](#))

## messenger

### Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27
- Matthew 11:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:2](#); [14:19](#); [23:20](#); [23:23](#); [32:34](#); [33:2](#))

## might, mighty, mighty works

### Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H46, H47, H117, H202, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

(Go back to: [Exodus 14:21](#))

# miracle, wonder, sign

## Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, [prophet](#), apostle, [sign](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:17
- Acts 04:22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:01
- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:58

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,, G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:20](#); [Notes](#); [7:3](#); [7:9](#); [11:9](#); [34:10](#))

## Moab, Moabite

### Facts:

The term "Moab" refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendants of a man named "Moab," who was the son of Lot's elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a "Moabite woman" because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Judea](#), Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4124, H4125

(Go back to: [Exodus 15:15](#))

# Moses

## Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, [Promised Land](#), Ten Commandments)

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:21
- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:10
- Exodus 09:01
- Matthew 17:04
- Romans 05:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:05** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:10](#); [2:11](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [2:17](#); [2:21](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:6](#); [3:11](#); [3:13](#); [3:14](#); [3:15](#); [4:1](#); [4:3](#); [4:4](#); [4:10](#); [4:18](#); [4:19](#); [4:20](#); [4:21](#); [4:27](#); [4:28](#); [4:29](#); [4:30](#); [5:1](#); [5:4](#); [5:20](#); [5:22](#); [6:1](#); [6:2](#); [6:9](#); [6:10](#); [6:12](#); [6:13](#); [6:20](#); [6:27](#); [6:28](#); [6:29](#); [6:30](#); [7:1](#); [7:6](#); [7:8](#); [7:10](#); [7:14](#); [7:19](#); [7:20](#); [8:1](#); [8:5](#); [8:9](#); [8:12](#); [8:13](#); [8:16](#); [8:20](#); [8:25](#); [8:26](#); [8:29](#); [8:30](#); [8:31](#); [9:1](#); [9:8](#); [9:10](#); [9:11](#); [9:12](#); [9:13](#); [9:22](#); [9:23](#); [9:29](#); [9:33](#); [9:35](#); [10:1](#); [10:3](#); [10:8](#); [10:9](#); [10:12](#); [10:13](#); [10:21](#); [10:22](#); [10:24](#); [10:25](#); [10:29](#); [11:1](#); [11:3](#); [11:4](#); [11:9](#); [12:1](#); [12:21](#); [12:28](#); [12:35](#); [12:43](#); [12:50](#); [13:1](#); [13:3](#); [13:19](#); [14:1](#); [14:11](#); [14:13](#); [14:15](#); [14:21](#); [14:26](#); [14:27](#); [15:1](#); [15:22](#); [15:24](#); [16:2](#); [16:4](#); [16:6](#); [16:8](#); [16:9](#); [16:11](#); [16:15](#); [16:19](#); [16:20](#); [16:24](#); [16:25](#); [16:28](#); [16:32](#); [16:33](#); [16:34](#); [17:2](#); [17:3](#); [17:4](#); [17:5](#); [17:6](#); [17:9](#); [17:10](#); [17:11](#); [17:12](#); [17:14](#); [17:15](#); [18:1](#); [18:2](#); [18:5](#); [18:6](#); [18:7](#); [18:8](#); [18:12](#); [18:13](#); [18:14](#); [18:15](#); [18:17](#); [18:24](#); [18:25](#); [18:26](#); [18:27](#); [19:7](#); [19:8](#); [19:9](#); [19:10](#); [19:14](#); [19:17](#); [19:19](#); [19:20](#); [19:21](#); [19:23](#); [19:25](#); [20:19](#); [20:20](#); [20:22](#); [24:1](#); [24:2](#); [24:3](#); [24:4](#); [24:6](#); [24:8](#); [24:9](#); [24:12](#); [24:13](#); [24:15](#); [24:16](#); [24:18](#); [25:1](#); [30:11](#); [30:17](#); [30:22](#); [30:34](#); [31:1](#); [31:12](#); [31:18](#); [32:1](#); [32:7](#); [32:9](#); [32:11](#); [32:15](#); [32:17](#); [32:19](#); [32:21](#); [32:23](#); [32:25](#); [32:26](#); [32:28](#); [32:29](#); [32:30](#); [32:31](#); [32:33](#); [33:1](#); [33:5](#); [33:8](#); [33:9](#); [33:11](#); [33:12](#); [33:17](#); [34:1](#); [34:4](#); [34:8](#); [34:27](#); [34:29](#); [34:30](#); [34:31](#); [34:33](#); [34:34](#); [34:35](#); [35:1](#); [35:4](#); [35:20](#);

35:29; 35:30; 36:2; 36:3; 36:5; 36:6; 38:21; 38:22; 39:1; 39:5; 39:7; 39:21; 39:26; 39:29; 39:31; 39:32; 39:33; 39:42;  
39:43; 40:1; 40:16; 40:18; 40:19; 40:21; 40:23; 40:25; 40:27; 40:29; 40:31; 40:32; 40:33; 40:35)



## mourn, mourner, weeping

### Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11
- Genesis 23:02
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H56, H57, H60, H205, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G2354, G2875, G3602, G3996, G3997

(Go back to: [Exodus 33:4](#))

## name

### Definition:

The term "name" refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term "name" is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved." (See: [metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:1](#); [1:15](#); [2:10](#); [2:22](#); [3:13](#); [3:15](#); [5:23](#); [6:16](#); [9:16](#); [15:3](#); [16:31](#); [17:7](#); [17:15](#); [18:3](#); [20:7](#); [20:24](#); [23:21](#); [28:9](#); [28:10](#); [28:11](#); [28:12](#); [28:21](#); [28:29](#); [31:2](#); [33:12](#); [33:17](#); [33:19](#); [34:5](#); [34:14](#); [35:30](#); [39:6](#); [39:14](#))

# nation

## Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, [Canaan](#), Gentile, Greek, [people group](#), [Philistines](#), Rome)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

(Go back to: [Exodus 9:24](#); [32:10](#); [33:13](#); [34:10](#); [34:24](#))

## new moon

### Definition:

The term “new moon” refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

- In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram’s horn.
- The Bible also refers to this time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: month, [earth](#), festival, horn, [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 1 Samuel 20:05
- 2 Kings 04:23-24
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Isaiah 01:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, G3376, G3561

(Go back to: [Exodus 12:2](#); [40:2](#))

## noble, nobleman, royal official

### Definition:

The term “noble” refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A “nobleman” is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A man “of noble birth” is one who was born a nobleman.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term “nobleman” could also be translated by, “king’s official” or “government officer.”

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- Daniel 04:36
- Ecclesiastes 10:17
- Luke 19:12
- Psalm 016:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H1419, H2715, H3358, H3513, H5057, H5081, H6440, H6579, H7261, H8282, H8269, G937, G2104

(Go back to: [Exodus 15:10](#))

## **oath, swear, swearing, swear by**

### **Definition:**

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), vow)

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

(Go back to: [Exodus 13:5](#); [13:11](#); [13:19](#); [22:11](#); [32:13](#); [33:1](#))

# oil

## Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21
- Exodus 29:02
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

(Go back to: [Exodus 30:24](#); [35:8](#))

# olive

## Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:11
- James 03:12
- Luke 16:06
- Psalms 052:08

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

(Go back to: [Exodus 25:6](#); [27:20](#); [29:7](#); [29:23](#); [30:24](#); [30:25](#); [30:31](#); [31:11](#); [35:14](#); [35:15](#); [37:29](#); [39:37](#); [39:38](#); [40:9](#))



## ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

### Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), decree, [law](#), ordain, [statute](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 08:31-33
- Malachi 03:6-7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [Exodus 21:1](#); [21:9](#); [21:31](#); [24:3](#); [26:30](#); [28:29](#); [28:30](#))

# palm

## Definition:

The term “palm” refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a “date.” The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: [donkey](#), Jerusalem, peace)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:29-30
- Ezekiel 40:14-16
- John 12:12-13
- Numbers 33:09

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3712, H8558, H8560, H8561, G5404

(Go back to: [Exodus 15:27](#))

## Passover

### Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:07
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:02
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 06:21-22
- John 13:01
- Joshua 05:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 09:03

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:01** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:04** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:09** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G3957

(Go back to: [Exodus 12 General Notes](#); [12:21](#); [12:43](#); [Notes](#); [34:25](#))

## people of God

### Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the "Church," meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the "sons of God" or "children of God."
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God’s people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:02
- Acts 07:34
- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- Joel 03:16-17
- Micah 06:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

(Go back to: [Exodus 4 General Notes](#))

## people, people group,

### Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, [nation](#), [tribe](#), world)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:07
- Deuteronomy 28:09
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 01:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere.”

- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, “Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**” and, “The fields are ripe for harvest!”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

(Go back to: Exodus 1:9; 1:20; 1:22; 3:7; 3:10; 3:12; 3:21; 4:16; 4:21; 4:30; 4:31; 5:1; 5:4; 5:5; 5:6; 5:7; 5:10; 5:12; 5:16; 5:22; 5:23; 6:7; 7:4; 7:14; 7:16; 8:1; 8:8; 8:20; 8:21; 8:22; 8:23; 8:29; 8:32; 9:1; 9:7; 9:13; 9:15; 9:17; 9:27; 10:3; 10:4; 11:2; 11:3; 11:8; 12:27; 12:31; 12:33; 12:34; 12:36; 13:3; 13:17; 13:18; 13:22; 14:5; 14:6; 14:13; 14:31; 15:13; 15:14; 15:16; 15:24; 16:4; 16:27; 16:30; 17:1; 17:2; 17:3; 17:4; 17:5; 17:6; 17:13; 18:1; 18:10; 18:13; 18:14; 18:15; 18:18; 18:19; 18:21; 18:22; 18:23; 18:25; 18:26; 19:5; 19:7; 19:8; 19:9; 19:10; 19:11; 19:12; 19:14; 19:15; 19:16; 19:17; 19:21; 19:23; 19:24; 19:25; 20:18; 20:20; 20:21; 21:8; 22:25; 22:28; 23:11; 23:27; 24:2; 24:3; 24:7; 24:8; 30:33; 30:38; 32:1; 32:3; 32:6; 32:7; 32:9; 32:11; 32:12; 32:14; 32:17; 32:21; 32:22; 32:25; 32:28; 32:30; 32:31; 32:34; 32:35; 33:1; 33:3; 33:4; 33:5; 33:8; 33:10; 33:12; 33:13; 33:16; 34:9; 34:10; 36:5; 36:6)

# perish

## Definition:

The term "perish" means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

## Spiritual Meaning of "Perish:"

- People who are "perishing" are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who "perish" will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God's punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When "perish" is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "be lost from God's people," "die eternally," "be punished in hell," or "be destroyed."
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean "die physically" or "cease to exist."

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:23
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 049:18-20
- Zechariah 09:5-7
- Zechariah 13:08

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

(Go back to: [Exodus 10:7](#))

## Perizzite

### Facts:

The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

- The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament Book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
- Note that the clan of Perez, called the “Perezites,” was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), false god)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 08:7-8
- Exodus 03:16-18
- Genesis 13:07
- Joshua 03:9-11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6522

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:8](#); [3:17](#); [23:23](#); [33:2](#); [34:11](#))



## persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue

### Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: Christian, church, oppress, Rome)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 05:10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 03:06

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:02** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **46:04** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

(Go back to: [Exodus 15:9](#))

# Pharaoh, king of Egypt

## Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as "Pharaoh."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [egypt](#), [king](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 07:13
- Acts 07:21
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 40:07
- Genesis 41:25

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **08:08 Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **09:02** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **09:13** "I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt."
- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** *that he is more powerful than* **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt's gods.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4714, H6547, G5328

(Go back to: [Exodus 14:4](#); [14:17](#); [14:18](#))

# Philistia

## Definition:

Philistia is the name of a large region in the land of Canaan, located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea.

- The region was located along the very fertile coastal plain reaching from Joppa in the north to Gaza in the south. It was about 64 km long and 16 km wide.
- Philistia was occupied by the "Philistines," a powerful people group who were frequent enemies of the Israelites.

(See also: [Philistines](#), Gaza, Joppa)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:9-10
- Joel 03:04
- Psalms 060:8-9

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H776 H6429 H6430

(Go back to: [Exodus 15:14](#))

# Philistines

## Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, David, Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Goliath, Salt Sea)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:04
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 056:1-2

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6429, H6430

(Go back to: [Exodus 13:17](#); [23:31](#))

## pomegranate

### Facts:

A pomegranate is a kind of fruit that has a thick, tough skin filled with many seeds that are covered with edible red pulp.

- The outer rind is reddish in color and the pulp surrounding the seeds is shiny and red.
- Pomegranates are very commonly grown in countries with a hot, dry climate, such as Egypt and Israel.
- Yahweh promised the Israelites that Canaan was a land with abundant water and fertile soil so that food was plentiful there, including pomegranates.
- The construction of Solomon's temple included bronze decorations in the shape of pomegranates.

(See also: [bronze](#), [Canaan](#), [Egypt](#), Solomon, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:16-17
- Deuteronomy 08:7-8
- Jeremiah 52:22-23
- Numbers 13:23-24
- Numbers 20:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7416

(Go back to: [Exodus 28:33](#); [39:24](#))

## praise, praised, praiseworthy

### Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 02:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46
- Luke 01:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:08** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:07** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:08** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, G2980, G3853

(Go back to: [Exodus 15:11](#))

## pray, prayer

### Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:6](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [3:13](#); [4:10](#); [4:11](#); [4:23](#); [7:17](#); [8:2](#); [8:28](#); [8:29](#); [17:9](#); [19:9](#); [20:2](#); [20:5](#); [23:20](#); [32:18](#); [32:31](#); [34:10](#); [34:11](#))

## preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:06** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.



- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

### Word Data:

- Strong's:
  - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
  - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: [Exodus 12:12](#); [12:23](#); [13:12](#); [34:6](#); [36:6](#))

## priest, priesthood

### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), chief priests, high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was

sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.

- **19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:16](#); [3:1](#); [18:1](#); [Notes](#); [19:6](#); [19:22](#); [19:24](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [29:30](#); [Notes](#); [31:10](#); [35:19](#); [38:21](#); [39:41](#))

# prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

## Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, [lord](#), power, ruler, Satan, Savior, [spirit](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H117, H324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G3175

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:11](#); [2:14](#); [18:21](#); [18:25](#); [34:31](#))

## profane, profaned

### Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to “profane” could be translated as to “treat as unholy” or to “be irreverent toward” or to “dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: defile, [holy](#), [clean](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:09
- Malachi 01:10-12
- Matthew 12:05
- Numbers 18:30-32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G952, G953

(Go back to: [Exodus 20:25](#))

## promise, promised

### Definition:

When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

### Translation Suggestions:


- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), vow)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children." 
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's **promise**.
- **05:04** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**."
- **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(Go back to: [Exodus 24 General Notes](#))

## Promised Land

### Facts:

The term “Promised Land” only occurs in the Bible stories, not the Bible text. It is an alternate way of referring to the land of Canaan which God had promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.

- When Abram was living in the city of Ur, God commanded him to go live in the land of Canaan. He and his descendants, the Israelites, lived there for many years.
- When a severe famine caused there to be no food in Canaan, the Israelites moved to Egypt.
- Four hundred years later, God rescued the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and brought them back to Canaan again, the land God had promised to give them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Promised Land” can be translated as the “land that God said he would give to Abraham” or “land that God promised to Abraham” or “land God promised to his people” or “land of Canaan.”
- In the Bible text, this term occurs as some form of “the land God promised.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:1-2
- Ezekiel 07:26-27

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:01** They (Israelites) were no longer slaves, and they were going to the **Promised Land**!
- **14:01** After God had told the Israelites the laws he wanted them to obey as part of his covenant with them, God began leading them from Mount Sinai toward the **Promised Land**, which was also called Canaan.
- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the **Promised Land** to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there.
- **14:14** Then God led the people to the edge of the **Promised Land** again.
- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the **Promised Land**.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the **Promised Land**.
- **20:09** This period of time when God’s people were forced to leave the **Promised Land** is called the Exile.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H776, H3068, H3423, H5159, H5414, H7650

(Go back to: [Exodus 1 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, [fulfill](#), [law](#), vision)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.



- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

(Go back to: [Exodus 7:1](#); [15:20](#))

## prosper, prosperity, prosperous

### Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are “prosperous,” it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing “prosperity.”

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:06
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 001:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

(Go back to: [Exodus 14:4](#); [14:17](#); [14:28](#); [18:21](#); [18:25](#))

## prostrate, worship

### Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), honor)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:31](#); [11:8](#); [12:27](#); [18:7](#); [20:5](#); [23:24](#); [24:1](#); [32:8](#); [33:10](#); [34:8](#); [34:14](#); [Notes](#))

## proud, pride, prideful

### Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [joy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 01:51

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426

(Go back to: [Exodus 18:11](#); [21:14](#))

# purple

## Facts:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: ephod, Philippi, royal, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:13-14
- Daniel 05:7
- Daniel 05:29-31
- Proverbs 31:22-23

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H710, H711, H713, G4209, G4210, G4211

(Go back to: [Exodus 25:4](#); [26:1](#); [26:31](#); [26:36](#); [27:16](#); [28:6](#); [28:8](#); [28:15](#); [28:33](#); [35:6](#); [35:23](#); [36:8](#); [36:35](#); [36:37](#); [38:18](#); [39:2](#); [39:5](#); [39:8](#); [39:24](#); [39:29](#))

# rebuke

## Definition:

The term "rebuke" refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
- The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
- "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also admonish, disobey)

## Bible References:

- Mark 01:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 08:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G1649, G1651, G1969, G2008, G3679

(Go back to: [Exodus 17:2](#))

## redeem, redeemer, redemption

### Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 01:13-14
- Ephesians 01:7-8
- Ephesians 05:16
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Galatians 04:05
- Luke 02:38
- Ruth 02:20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G59, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

(Go back to: [Exodus 6:6](#); [13:13](#); [13:15](#); [15:13](#); [15:16](#); [21:2](#); [34:20](#))

## repent, repentance

### Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: forgive, [sin](#), turn)

### Bible References:

- Acts 03:19-20
- Luke 03:3
- Luke 03:8
- Luke 05:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 03:11
- Matthew 04:17
- Romans 02:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:02** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:05** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

(Go back to: [Exodus 35 General Notes](#))



## rest, rested, restless

### Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, [Sabbath](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

(Go back to: [Exodus 10:14](#); [17:11](#); [20:11](#); [23:12](#); [33:14](#))

## restore, restoration

### Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:10
- Acts 03:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:22
- Leviticus 06:5-7
- Luke 19:08
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 080:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:7](#); [4:19](#); [4:21](#); [21:34](#); [22:26](#); [23:4](#); [24:14](#); [32:12](#))

# return

## Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

## Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:7](#); [4:18](#); [4:20](#); [5:22](#); [10:8](#); [13:17](#); [14:2](#); [14:26](#); [14:27](#); [14:28](#); [15:19](#); [19:8](#); [32:27](#); [32:31](#); [33:11](#); [34:31](#); [34:35](#))

# Reuben

## Facts:

Reuben was the firstborn son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- When his brothers were planning to kill their younger brother Joseph, Reuben spared Joseph's life by telling them to put him into a pit instead.
- Reuben came back later to rescue Joseph, but the other brothers had sold him as a slave to merchants passing by.
- Reuben's descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), Leah, twelve tribes of Israel)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 29:32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:22
- Genesis 42:37

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7205, H7206, G4502

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:2](#); [6:14](#))

## reveal, revealed, revelation

### Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: good news, good news, dream, vision)

### Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:05
- Galatians 01:12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 03:15
- Revelation 01:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

(Go back to: [Exodus 3 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

### Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, [just](#), law, [law](#), obey, pure, [righteous](#), [sin](#), unlawful)

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

(Go back to: [Exodus 23:8](#))

## robe, robed

### Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H145, H155, H899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G1746, G2067, G2440, G4749, G4016, G5511

(Go back to: [Exodus 28:4](#))



# Sabbath

## Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

## Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [rest](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:06
- Leviticus 19:03
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 02:27
- Matthew 12:02
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:03** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

(Go back to: [Exodus 16 General Notes](#); [16:23](#); [16:25](#); [16:26](#); [16:29](#); [20:8](#); [20:10](#); [20:11](#); [Notes](#); [31:13](#); [31:14](#); [31:15](#); [31:16](#); [35:2](#); [35:3](#))

## sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

### sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.

### offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [drink offering](#), false god, fellowship offering, [freewill offering](#) peace offering, [priest](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.

- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

(Go back to: [Exodus 5:8](#); [5:17](#); [8:25](#); [8:26](#); [10:25](#); [12:27](#); [13:15](#); [22:20](#); [23:18](#); [24:5](#); [25:2](#); [29:28](#); [30:13](#); [30:14](#); [30:15](#); [34:25](#); [35:5](#); [35:21](#); [35:24](#); [36:6](#))

# sandal

## Definition:

A sandal is a simple shoe with a flat sole that is held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- In ancient Israel, a sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property. One person would take off a sandal and give it to the other person to show that the transaction was legal and binding.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which was a normal task for the servant or slave with the lowest status in a Jewish household.

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:33
- Deuteronomy 25:10
- John 01:27
- Joshua 05:15
- Mark 06:7-9

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G4547, G5266

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:5](#); [12:11](#))

## seed, semen

### Definition:

A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term "seed" is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called "semen."
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of "seed." Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: descendant, offspring)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

(Go back to: [Exodus 32:13](#))

## seek, search, look for

### Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is "sought." This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to "attempt" or "make an effort" to do something or to ask for something.

- To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
- To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
- To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
- To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
- To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
- To "seek favor" means to "urgently ask for favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2052, G2212

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:15](#); [4:24](#); [10:11](#); [18:15](#); [33:7](#))

## **servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women**

### **Definition:**

The term "serve" generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a "servant:" a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a "servant" and a "slave" than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: commit, enslave, household, [lord](#), obey, [righteous](#), [covenant](#), law,)

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8

- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

### Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257
- (Serve) H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

(Go back to: Exodus 1:14; 2:5; 2:6; 3:12; 4:10; 5:15; 5:16; 5:18; 5:21; 6:5; 7:10; 7:20; 8:3; 8:4; 8:24; 9:20; 9:21; 9:30; 9:34; 10:1; 10:6; 10:7; 10:8; 10:24; 10:26; 11:3; 11:5; 11:8; 12:30; 12:31; 12:44; 13:3; 13:14; 14:5; 14:12; 14:31; 20:2; 20:5; 20:9; 20:10; 20:17; 21:2; 21:5; 21:7; 21:20; 21:26; 21:27; 21:32; 23:12; 23:24; 23:33; 24:5; 24:13; 32:13; 33:11; 34:21)



## set apart

### Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [sanctify](#), [appoint](#))

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 03:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 03:11-13
- Philippians 01:1-2
- Romans 01:01

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

(Go back to: [Exodus 19:10](#); [19:14](#); [19:23](#); [20:8](#); [20:11](#); [26:33](#); [28:3](#); [28:41](#); [29:1](#); [29:21](#); [29:27](#); [29:33](#); [29:36](#); [29:37](#); [29:43](#); [29:44](#); [30:29](#); [30:30](#); [40:9](#); [40:10](#); [40:11](#); [40:13](#))

## shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

### Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

### Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, [rebuke](#), false god, [humble](#), Isaiah, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8

- Psalms 006:8-10
- Psalms 123:03
- 1 Timothy 05:7-8
- 1 Timothy 06:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G149, G152, G153, G410, G422, G423, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3059, G3679, G3680, G3681, G3856, G5014, G5195, G5196, G5484

(Go back to: [Exodus 32:1](#))

## sign, proof, reminder

### Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can help people to remember a promise that God has made:
  - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
  - In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will “confirm” his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
  - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), apostle, Christ, [covenant](#), [circumcise](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14
- Genesis 09:12
- John 02:18
- Luke 02:12
- Mark 08:12
- Psalms 089:5-6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

(Go back to: [Exodus 7:3](#); [10:1](#); [10:2](#); [31:13](#); [31:17](#))

# silver

## Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:22](#); [11:2](#); [12:35](#); [12:44](#); [20:23](#); [21:11](#); [21:21](#); [21:32](#); [21:34](#); [21:35](#); [22:7](#); [22:17](#); [22:25](#); [25:3](#); [26:19](#); [26:21](#); [26:25](#); [26:32](#); [27:10](#); [27:11](#); [27:17](#); [30:16](#); [35:5](#); [35:24](#); [36:24](#); [36:26](#); [36:30](#); [36:36](#); [38:10](#); [38:11](#); [38:12](#); [38:17](#); [38:19](#); [38:25](#); [38:27](#))

## sin offering

### Definition:

The “sin offering” was one of several sacrifices that God required the Israelites to offer.

- This offering involved sacrificing a bull, burning its blood and fat on the altar, and taking the rest of the animal’s body and burning it on the ground outside the Israelite camp.
- The complete burning up of this animal sacrifice shows how holy God is and how terrible sin is.
- The Bible teaches that in order for there to be a cleansing from sin, blood must be shed to pay the cost for the sin that was committed.
- Animal sacrifices could not permanently bring about forgiveness of sin.
- Jesus’ death on the cross paid the penalty for sin, for all time. He was the perfect sin offering.

(See also: [altar](#), [cow](#), forgive, [sacrifice](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 29:20-21
- Exodus 29:35-37
- Ezekiel 44:25-27
- Leviticus 05:11
- Numbers 07:15-17

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2401, H2402, H2398, H2403

(Go back to: [Exodus 34:9](#))

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23

- Romans 08:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

(Go back to: [Exodus 5:16](#); [9:27](#); [10:16](#); [10:17](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [20:20](#); [23:33](#); [29:14](#); [29:36](#); [30:10](#); [32:30](#); [32:31](#); [32:32](#); [32:33](#); [32:34](#); [Notes](#))



## slaughter, slaughtered

### Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: angel, [cow](#), disobey, Ezekiel, [servant](#), slay)

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 07:01
- Isaiah 34:02
- Jeremiah 25:34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G2871, G4967, G4969

(Go back to: [Exodus 12:6](#); [12:21](#); [29:11](#); [29:16](#); [29:20](#))

## son

### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person's father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, descendant, [ancestor](#), [firstborn](#), Son of God, sons of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** “Is this the **son** of Joseph?” they said.

# **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

(Go back to: Exodus 1:1; 1:7; 1:9; 1:12; 1:13; 1:16; 1:22; 2:2; 2:10; 2:22; 2:23; 2:25; 3:9; 3:10; 3:11; 3:13; 3:14; 3:15; 3:22; 4:20; 4:22; 4:23; 4:25; 4:29; 4:31; 5:14; 5:15; 5:19; 6:5; 6:6; 6:9; 6:11; 6:12; 6:13; 6:14; 6:15; 6:16; 6:17; 6:18; 6:19; 6:21; 6:22; 6:24; 6:25; 6:26; 6:27; 7:2; 7:4; 7:5; 7:7; 9:4; 9:6; 9:26; 9:35; 10:2; 10:9; 10:20; 10:23; 11:7; 11:10; 12:5; 12:24; 12:26; 12:27; 12:28; 12:31; 12:35; 12:37; 12:40; 12:42; 12:43; 12:50; 12:51; 13:2; 13:8; 13:13; 13:14; 13:15; 13:18; 13:19; 14:2; 14:3; 14:8; 14:10; 14:15; 14:16; 14:22; 14:29; 15:1; 15:19; 16:1; 16:2; 16:3; 16:6; 16:9; 16:10; 16:12; 16:15; 16:17; 16:35; 17:1; 17:3; 17:7; 18:3; 18:5; 18:6; 19:1; 19:3; 19:6; 20:5; 20:10; 20:22; 21:4; 21:5; 21:9; 21:31; 22:24; 22:29; 23:12; 24:5; 24:11; 24:17; 25:2; 25:22; 27:20; 27:21; 28:1; 28:4; 28:9; 28:11; 28:12; 28:21; 28:29; 28:30; 28:38; 28:40; 28:41; 28:43; 29:1; 29:4; 29:8; 29:9; 29:10; 29:15; 29:19; 29:20; 29:21; 29:24; 29:27; 29:28; 29:29; 29:30; 29:32; 29:35; 29:38; 29:43; 29:44; 29:45; 30:12; 30:14; 30:16; 30:19; 30:30; 30:31; 31:2; 31:6; 31:10; 31:13; 31:16; 31:17; 32:2; 32:20; 32:26; 32:28; 32:29; 33:5; 33:6; 33:11; 34:7; 34:16; 34:20; 34:30; 34:32; 34:34; 34:35; 35:1; 35:4; 35:19; 35:20; 35:29; 35:30; 35:34; 36:3; 38:21; 38:22; 38:23; 38:26; 39:6; 39:7; 39:14; 39:27; 39:32; 39:41; 39:42; 40:12; 40:14; 40:31; 40:36)

## spirit, spiritual

### Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives"

(See also: angel, demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: [Exodus 6:9](#); [10:13](#); [10:19](#); [14:21](#); [15:10](#); [28:3](#); [31:3](#); [35:21](#); [35:31](#))

## statute

### Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), decree, [law](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:02

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G1345

(Go back to: [Exodus 5:14](#); [15:25](#); [15:26](#); [18:16](#); [18:20](#); [30:21](#))

## strength, strengthen, strong

### Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

### Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, right hand, save)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

(Go back to: [Exodus 3:19](#); [4:21](#); [6:1](#); [9:2](#); [9:16](#); [10:19](#); [13:9](#); [14:17](#); [15:6](#); [19:16](#); [32:11](#))



## sword, swordsmen

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), [tongue](#), word of God)

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(Go back to: [Exodus 5:3](#); [5:21](#); [15:9](#); [17:13](#); [20:25](#); [22:24](#); [32:27](#))

# tabernacle

## Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The word “tabernacle” means “dwelling place.” Other ways to translate it could include, “sacred tent” or “tent where God was” or “God’s tent.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “temple.”

(See also: [altar](#), altar of incense, ark of the covenant, [temple](#), tent of meeting)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:30
- 2 Chronicles 01:2-5
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 07:45
- Exodus 38:21
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G4633, G4634, G4636, G4638

(Go back to: [Introduction to Exodus](#); [Exodus 25 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## temple

### Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), Solomon, Babylon, Holy Spirit, [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), Zion, [house](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485

(Go back to: [Exodus 8:3](#); [12:19](#); [12:29](#); [12:46](#))

## terror, terrorize, terrify, frightened, panic

### Definition:

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [fear](#), [judge](#), [plague](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 02:25
- Exodus 14:10
- Luke 21:09
- Mark 06:48-50

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1205, H1763, H2111, H2113, H2189, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, G1629, G1630, G2258, G4422, G4426, G5401

(Go back to: [Exodus 15:16](#); [23:27](#))

## testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

### Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, [judge](#), [prophet](#), [testimony](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07

- John 03:33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 01:09
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:12
- Revelation 12:11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(Go back to: [Exodus 19:19](#); [19:21](#); [19:23](#); [20:16](#); [21:29](#); [22:13](#); [23:1](#); [23:2](#))

## throne, enthroned

### Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: authority, power, [king](#), reign)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 01:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 05:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 01:4-6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

(Go back to: [Exodus 11:5](#); [12:29](#))



## tongue, language

### Definition:

The term "tongue" refers to the organ inside a person's mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean "language" or "speaking." There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
- Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
- In the book of Acts, the expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated as "language" or "supernatural language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as "language."
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
- The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
- The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tell lies" or "people who lie."
- Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: gift, Holy Spirit, [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 03:18
- 2 Samuel 23:02
- Acts 02:26
- Ezekiel 36:03
- Philippians 02:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3956, G1100, G1258, G2084

(Go back to: [Exodus 14:14](#))

## tremble, stagger

### Definition:

The term "tremble" means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning "to be very afraid."

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G1790, G5141, G5156, G5425

(Go back to: [Exodus 15:14](#))

## tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 02:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:4](#); [24:4](#); [28:21](#); [31:2](#); [31:6](#); [35:30](#); [35:34](#); [38:22](#); [38:23](#); [39:14](#))

## tribute, contribution, fined

### Definition:

The term “tribute” refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations. A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.

- In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
- Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “tribute” could be translated as “official gifts” or “special tax” or “required payment.”

(See also: [gold](#), [king](#), ruler, tax)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 2 Kings 17:03
- Luke 23:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1093, H4061, H4503, H4530, H4853, H6066, H7862, G5411

(Go back to: [Exodus 1:11](#))

# trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

## Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

## Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), [persecute](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G3636, G3926, G3930, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

(Go back to: [Exodus 18:8](#))

## true, truth

### Definition:

The term "truth" refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), obey, [prophet](#), [understand](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:09
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20

- Revelation 15:3-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *true* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *true* God.
- **31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

(Go back to: [Exodus 34:6](#))

## trumpet, trumpeters

### Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, [assembly](#), [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), wrath)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 06:02
- Matthew 24:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

(Go back to: [Exodus 19:16](#); [19:19](#); [20:18](#))



## trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), confidence, [faith](#), [faithful](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:09
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 031:05
- Titus 03:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:06** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

(Go back to: [Exodus 4 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## understand, understanding, thinking

### Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), wise)

### Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

(Go back to: [Exodus 36:1](#))

## unleavened bread

### Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), yeast)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:03
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 06:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 06:21
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Luke 22:01

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G106

(Go back to: [Exodus 12 General Notes](#); [12:15](#); [12:18](#); [12:20](#); [12:39](#); [13:6](#); [13:7](#); [23:15](#); [29:2](#); [34:18](#))

# **vineyard**

## **Definition:**

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as "grapevine garden" or "grape plantation."

(See also: grape, [Israel](#), vine)

## **Bible References:**

- Genesis 09:20-21
- Luke 13:06
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:02
- Matthew 21:40-41

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G290

(Go back to: [Exodus 22:5](#))

# virgin, virginity

## Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: Christ, Isaiah, Jesus, Mary)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 01:27
- Luke 01:35
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 25:02

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:04** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:05** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:01** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G3932, G3933

(Go back to: [Exodus 22:16](#); [22:17](#))

## voice

### Definition:

The term "voice" refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

### Translation Suggestions

- The expression "to hear someone's voice" can mean either "to hear someone speaking" or "to heed what someone says."
- The Bible describes God as "speaking" and having a "voice," even though God doesn't have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term "voice" sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert...." (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word "voice" is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a "voice" that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), [splendor](#).)

### Bible References:

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42
- Luke 09:35
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 12:19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

(Go back to: [Exodus 4:1](#); [5:2](#); [18:19](#); [19:5](#); [19:19](#); [23:21](#); [23:22](#))

## walk, walked

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4198, G4748

(Go back to: [Exodus 2:5; 2:8; 2:9; 3:10; 3:11; 3:16; 3:18; 3:21; 4:12; 4:18; 4:19; 4:27; 5:3; 5:4; 5:7; 5:8; 5:11; 5:17; 5:18; 7:15; 8:25; 8:27; 10:8; 10:9; 10:11; 10:24; 10:26; 10:28; 13:21; 14:29; 15:19; 18:20; 19:10; 19:19; 19:24; 23:23; 32:1; 32:7; 32:23; 32:34; 33:1; 33:14; 33:15; 34:9](#))

## watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1492, G2334, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5438

(Go back to: [Exodus 10:28](#); [19:12](#); [21:29](#); [21:36](#); [23:13](#); [23:15](#); [23:21](#); [31:13](#); [34:11](#); [34:12](#); [34:18](#))



# wheat

## Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#), chaff, grain, [seed](#), thresh, winnow)

## Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Matthew 13:26

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G4621

(Go back to: [Exodus 29:2](#); [34:22](#))

## wine, wineskin, new wine

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, [vineyard](#), winepress)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23
- Genesis 09:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

(Go back to: [Exodus 29:40](#))

## wise men, advisor

### Definition:

The term "wise men" simply means people who are wise. In the Bible, however, the term "wise men" often refers to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served in a king's royal court as advisors to the king or other high officials.

### Old Testament

- Sometimes the term "wise men" is explained in the text as "prudent men" or "men with understanding." This refers to men who act wisely and righteously because they obey God.
- The "wise men" who served pharaohs or other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky. Sometimes "wise men" also practiced divination of performed acts of magic, probably by the power of evil spirits.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.

### New Testament

- The group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called "magi," which is often translated as "wise men," since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "wise men" could be translated using the term "wise" or with a phrase such as "gifted men" or "educated men" or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.
- When the term "wise men" simply means people who are wise, the word "wise" should be translated in the same or similar way to how it is translated elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, divination, magic, Nebuchadnezzar, ruler, wise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- Daniel 02:1-2
- Daniel 02:10-11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G4680

(Go back to: [Exodus 7:11](#); [28:3](#); [31:6](#); [35:10](#); [35:25](#); [36:1](#); [36:2](#); [36:8](#))

# Yahweh

## Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

## Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:07
- Daniel 09:03
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:04
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:04
- Isaiah 38:08
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 01:09
- Lamentations 01:05
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 03:04
- Micah 02:05
- Micah 06:05
- Numbers 08:11

- Psalm 124:03
- Ruth 01:21
- Zechariah 14:5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(Go back to: Exodus 3 General Notes; 3:2; 3:4; 3:7; 3:15; 3:16; 3:18; 4:1; 4:2; 4:4; 4:5; 4:6; 4:10; 4:11; 4:14; 4:19; 4:21; 4:22; 4:24; 4:27; 4:28; 4:30; 4:31; 5:1; 5:2; 5:3; 5:17; 5:21; 5:22; 6:1; 6:2; 6:3; 6:6; 6:7; 6:8; 6:10; 6:12; 6:13; 6:26; 6:28; 6:29; 6:30; 7:1; 7:5; 7:6; 7:8; 7:10; 7:13; 7:14; 7:16; 7:17; 7:19; 7:20; 7:22; 7:25; 8:1; 8:5; 8:8; 8:12; 8:13; 8:15; 8:16; 8:19; 8:20; 8:22; 8:24; 8:26; 8:27; 8:28; 8:29; 8:30; 8:31; 9:1; 9:3; 9:4; 9:5; 9:6; 9:8; 9:12; 9:13; 9:20; 9:21; 9:22; 9:23; 9:27; 9:28; 9:29; 9:30; 9:33; 9:35; 10:1; 10:2; 10:3; 10:7; 10:8; 10:9; 10:10; 10:11; 10:12; 10:13; 10:16; 10:17; 10:18; 10:19; 10:20; 10:21; 10:24; 10:25; 10:26; 10:27; 11:1; 11:3; 11:4; 11:7; 11:9; 11:10; 12:1; 12:11; 12:12; 12:14; 12:23; 12:25; 12:27; 12:28; 12:29; 12:31; 12:36; 12:41; 12:42; 12:43; 12:48; 12:50; 12:51; 13:1; 13:3; 13:5; 13:6; 13:8; 13:9; 13:11; 13:12; 13:14; 13:15; 13:16; 13:21; 14:1; 14:4; 14:8; 14:10; 14:13; 14:14; 14:15; 14:18; 14:21; 14:24; 14:25; 14:26; 14:27; 14:30; 14:31; 15:1; 15:3; 15:6; 15:11; 15:16; 15:17; 15:18; 15:19; 15:21; 15:25; 15:26; 16:3; 16:4; 16:6; 16:7; 16:8; 16:9; 16:10; 16:11; 16:12; 16:15; 16:16; 16:23; 16:25; 16:28; 16:29; 16:32; 16:33; 16:34; 17:1; 17:2; 17:4; 17:5; 17:7; 17:14; 17:16; 18:1; 18:8; 18:9; 18:10; 18:11; 19:3; 19:7; 19:8; 19:9; 19:10; 19:11; 19:18; 19:20; 19:21; 19:22; 19:23; 19:24; 20:2; 20:5; 20:7; 20:10; 20:11; 20:12; 20:22; 22:11; 22:20; 23:17; 23:19; 23:25; 24:1; 24:2; 24:3; 24:4; 24:5; 24:7; 24:8; 24:12; 24:16; 24:17; 25:1; 27:21; 28:12; 28:29; 28:30; 28:35; 28:36; 28:38; 29:11; 29:18; 29:23; 29:24; 29:25; 29:26; 29:28; 29:41; 29:42; 29:46; 30:8; 30:10; 30:11; 30:12; 30:13; 30:14; 30:15; 30:16; 30:17; 30:20; 30:22; 30:34; 30:37; 31:1; 31:12; 31:13; 31:15; 31:17; 32:5; 32:7; 32:9; 32:11; 32:14; 32:26; 32:27; 32:29; 32:30; 32:31; 32:33; 32:35; 33:1; 33:5; 33:7; 33:11; 33:12; 33:17; 33:19; 33:21; 34:1; 34:4; 34:5; 34:6; 34:10; 34:14; 34:23; 34:24; 34:26; 34:27; 34:28; 34:32; 34:34; 35:1; 35:2; 35:4; 35:5; 35:10; 35:21; 35:22; 35:24; 35:29; 35:30; 36:1; 36:2; 36:5; 38:22; 39:1; 39:5; 39:7; 39:21; 39:26; 39:29; 39:30; 39:31; 39:32; 39:42; 39:43; 40:1; 40:16; 40:19; 40:21; 40:23; 40:25; 40:27; 40:29; 40:32; 40:34; 40:35; 40:38)

# Contributors

## unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki  
Cheryl Stieben  
Cheryl Warren  
Christian Berry  
Christine Harrison  
Clairmene Pascal  
Connie Bryan  
Connie Goss  
Craig Balden  
Craig Lins  
Craig Scott  
Cynthia J Puckett  
Dale Hahs  
Dale Masser  
Daniel Lauk  
Daniel Summers  
Darlene M Hopkins  
Darlene Silas  
David Boerschlein  
David F Withee  
David Glover  
David J Forbes  
David Mullen  
David N Hanley  
David Sandlin  
David Shortess  
David Smith  
David Whisler  
Debbie Nispel  
Debbie Piper  
Deborah Bartow  
Deborah Bush  
Deborah Miniard  
Dennis Jackson  
Dianne Forrest  
Donna Borkenhagen  
Donna Mullis  
Douglas Hayes  
Drew Curley  
Ed Davis  
Edgar Navera  
Edward Kosky  
Edward Quigley  
Elaine VanRegenmorter  
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas  
Ellen Lee  
Emeline Thermidor  
Emily Lee  
Esther Roman  
Esther Trew  
Esther Zirk  
Ethel Lynn Baker  
Evangeline Puen  
Evelyn Wildgust  
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble  
Gail Spell  
Gary Greer  
Gary Shogren  
Gay Ellen Stulp  
Gene Gossman  
George Arlyn Briggs  
Gerald L. Naughton  
Glen Tallent  
Grace Balwit  
Grace Bird  
Greg Stoffregen  
Gretchen Stencil  
Hallie Miller  
Harry Harriss  
Heather Hicks  
Helen Morse  
Hendrik deVries  
Henry Bult  
Henry Whitney  
Hilary O'Sullivan  
Ibrahim Audu  
Ines Gipson  
Irene J Dodson  
Jackie Jones  
Jacqueline Bartley  
James Giddens  
James Pedersen  
James Pohlig  
James Roe  
Janet O'Herron  
Janice Connor  
Jaqueline Rotruck  
Jeanette Friesen  
Jeff Graf  
Jeff Kennedy  
Jeff Martin  
Jennifer Cunneen  
Jenny Thomas  
Jerry Lund  
Jessica Lauk  
Jim Frederick  
Jim Lee  
Jimmy Warren  
Jim Rotruck  
Jim Swartzentruber  
Jody Garcia  
Joe Chater  
Joel Bryan  
Joey Howell  
John Anderson  
John Geddis  
John D Rogers  
John Hutchins  
John Luton



John Pace  
John P Tornifolio  
Jolene Valeu  
Jon Haahr  
Joseph Fithian  
Joseph Greene  
Joseph Wharton  
Joshua Berkowitz  
Joshua Calhoun  
Joshua Rister  
Josh Wondra  
Joy Anderson  
Joyce Jacobs  
Joyce Pedersen  
JT Crowder  
Judi Brodeen  
Judith Cline  
Judith C Yon  
Julia N Bult  
Patty Li  
Julie Susanto  
Kahar Barat  
Kannah Sellers  
Kara Anderson  
Karen Davie  
Karen Dreesen  
Karen Fabean  
Karen Riecks  
Karen Smith  
Karen Turner  
Kathleen Glover  
Kathryn Hendrix  
Kathy Mentink  
Katrina Geurink  
Kay Myers  
Kelly Strong  
Ken Haugh  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Kristin Butts Page  
Kristin Rinne  
Kwesi Opoku-debrah  
Langston Spell  
Larry Sallee  
Lawrence Lipe  
Lee Sipe  
Leonard Smith  
Lester Harper  
Lia Hadley  
Linda Buckman  
Linda Dale Barton  
Linda Havemeier  
Linda Homer  
Linda Lee Sebastien  
Linn Peterson  
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box  
Luis Keelin  
Madeline Kilmore  
Maggie D Paul  
Marc Nelson  
Mardi Welo  
Margo Hoffman  
Marilyn Cook  
Marjean Swann  
Marjorie Francis  
Mark Albertini  
Mark Chapman  
Mark Thomas  
Marselene Norton  
Mary Jane Davis  
Mary Jean Stout  
Mary Landon  
Mary Scarborough  
Megan Kidwell  
Melissa Roe  
Merton Dibble  
Meseret Abraham-Zemedet  
Michael Bush  
Michael Connor  
Michael Francis  
Michael Geurink  
Mike Tisdell  
Mickey White  
Miel Horrilleno  
Monique Greer  
Morgan Mellette  
Morris Anderson  
Nancy C. Naughton  
Nancy Neu  
Nancy VanCott  
Neal Snook  
Nicholas Scovil  
Nick Dettman  
Nils Friberg  
Noah Crabtree  
Pamela B Johnston  
Pamela Nungesser  
Pamela Roberts  
Pam Gullifer  
Pat Ankney  
Pat Giddens  
Patricia Brougher  
Patricia Carson  
Patricia Cleveland  
Patricia Foster  
Patricia Middlebrooks  
Paul Mellema  
Paula Carlson  
Paula Oestreich  
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser  
Peggy Anderson  
Peggyrose Swartzentruber  
Peter Polloni  
Phillip Harms  
Phyllis Mortensen  
Priscilla Enggren  
Rachel Agheyisi  
Rachel Ropp  
Raif Turner  
Ray Puen  
Reina Y Mora  
Rene Bahrenfuss  
Renee Triplett  
Rhonda Bartels  
Richard Beatty  
Richard Moreau  
Richard Rutter  
Richard Stevens  
Rick Keaton  
Robby Little  
Robert W Johnson  
Rochelle Hook  
Rodney White  
Rolaine Franz  
Ronald D Hook  
Rosario Baria  
Roxann Carey  
Roxanne Pittard  
Ruben Michael Garay  
Russell Isham  
Russ Perry  
Ruth Calo  
Ruth E Withee  
Ruth Montgomery  
Ryan Blizek  
Sam Todd  
Samuel Njuguna  
Sandy Anderson  
Sandy Blanes  
Sara Giesmann  
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)  
Sharon Johnson  
Sharon Peterson  
Sharon Shortess  
Shelly Harms  
Sherie Nelson  
Sherman Sebastien  
Sherry Mosher  
Stacey Swanson  
Steve Gibbs  
Steve Mercier  
Susan Langohr  
Susan Quigley  
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards  
Sylvia Thomas  
Sze Suze Lau  
Tabitha Price  
Tammy L Enns  
Tammy White  
Teresa Everett-Leone  
Teresa Linn  
Terri Collins  
Theresa Baker  
Thomas Jopling  
Thomas Nickell  
Thomas Warren  
Tim Coleman  
Tim Ingram  
Tim Linn  
Tim Lovestrand  
Tim Mentink  
Tom Penry  
Tom William Warren  
Toni Shuma  
Tracie Pogue  
Tricia Coffman  
Vicki Ivester  
Victoria G DeKraker  
Victor M Prieto  
Vivian Kamph  
Vivian Richardson  
Ward Pyles  
Warren Blaisdell  
Wayne Homer  
Wendy Coleman  
Wendy Colon  
Wilbur Zirk  
Wil Gipson  
William Carson  
William Cline  
William Dickerson  
William Smitherman  
William Wilder  
Yvonne Tallent

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
David Trombold  
Dean Ropp  
Gene Mullen  
James Vigen  
Leonard Smith  
Nicholas Alsop  
Michael Francis  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors**

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
David Trombold  
Dean Ropp  
Gene Mullen  
James Vigen  
Leonard Smith  
Nicholas Alsop  
Michael Francis  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors**

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology  
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics  
Bev Staley  
Carol Brinneman  
Jody Garcia  
Kara Anderson  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Lizz Carlton  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher  
David Book  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Lizz Carlton  
Jan Zanutto  
Matthew Latham  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Richard Joki  
Door43 World Missions Community